

Махия Н. В., Ланських О. Б., Куроченко Ю. С.

# АНГЛІЙСЬКА БЕЗ КОРДОНІВ

## **FREEWAY ENGLISH**

for students of non-linguistic specialities  
(intermediate level)

підручник з англійської мови  
для здобувачів освітнього ступеня «бакалавр»  
нефілологічних спеціальностей  
(середній рівень)

УДК 811.111(075.8)  
ББК 81.2Англ-923  
М36

**Freeway English** for students of non-linguistic specialties obtaining bachelor degree (intermediate level) / N. Makhynia, O. Lanskykh, Yu. Kurochenko. – Черкаси : 224 с. – Англ та укр. мовами.

Підручник містить актуальні для повсякденного спілкування теми, детальні словники, різноманітні лексичні та мовні вправи та діалоги. Текстовий та ілюстративний матеріал адаптований із сучасних зарубіжних та вітчизняних друкованих видань, що сприяє розвитку усних та писемних навичок, засвоєнню культурологічних особливостей країн, мова яких вивчається у межах дисципліни «Англійська мова».

Видання рекомендується для студентів вищих навчальних закладів.

# CONTENTS

<b>PREFACE</b>	
<b>INTRODUCTORY PHONETIC-ORTHOEPIC COURSE</b>	
<b>PART I. BASIC TOPICS</b>	
INTRODUCTION. Getting acquainted. Communicative phrases	
LESSON 1. Family Relations	
LESSON 2. Appearance and Character	
LESSON 3. House. Flat	
LESSON 4. Time and Dates	
LESSON 5. Weather and Seasons	
LESSON 6. Communication and Technology	
LESSON 7. Shops and Shopping	
LESSON 8. Meals	
LESSON 9. At the Doctor's	
LESSON 10. Hobbies and Entertainment	
LESSON 11. In the Town	
LESSON 12. Traveling	
LESSON 13. At the Hotel	
LESSON 14. Holidays and Traditions	
LESSON 15. Ukraine	
LESSON 16. English-speaking Countries	
<b>PART II. GRAMMAR THEORY</b>	
The article	
Noun. Plural of Nouns	
Adjective. Degrees of Comparison of Adjectives	
Pronoun	
Verb. Verbs to be, to have, to do	
Construction there is / there are	
Indefinite Group of Tenses:	
Present Indefinite	
Past Indefinite	
Future Indefinite	
Continuous Group of Tenses:	
Present Continuous	
Past Continuous	
Future Continuous	
Perfect Group of Tenses:	
Present Perfect	
Past Perfect	
Future Perfect	
Perfect Continuous Group of Tenses:	
Present Perfect Continuous	
Past Perfect Continuous	
Future Perfect Continuous	
Passive Voice	
Sequence of Tenses. Indirect Speech	
Conditional Clauses	
Modals and their equivalents	

<b>PART III. GRAMMAR PRACTICE (EXERCISES)</b>	
The article	
Noun. Plural of Nouns	
Adjective. Degrees of Comparison of Adjectives	
Pronoun	
Verb. Verbs to be, to have, to do	
Indefinite group:	
Present Indefinite	
Past Indefinite	
Future Indefinite	
Continuous group:	
Present Continuous	
Past Continuous	
Future Continuous	
Perfect Group:	
Present Perfect	
Past Perfect	
Future Perfect	
Perfect Continuous group:	
Present Perfect Continuous	
Past Perfect Continuous	
Future Perfect Continuous	
Passive Voice	
Sequence of Tenses. Indirect Speech	
Conditional Clauses	
Modals and their equivalents	
<b>SUPPLEMENTARY READING</b>	
<b>LITERATURE</b>	

## A WORD TO THE READER



If you're holding this book it means you're searching for success in life, in communication, in business, in private relations. Welcome to the world of profound knowledge and numerous opportunities. Here you will find everything in the way of grammar, vocabulary, information and pleasant sights while studying English. We hope that our book will appeal to you much.

Thank you for choosing us!

Authors.

# ПЕРЕДМОВА

Сучасний етап розвитку міжнародних відносин, активізує потребу українського суспільства у нових, модернізованих підручниках та посібниках для вивчення іноземних мов. Пропонована книга призначена для студентів усіх напрямів підготовки нефілологічних спеціальностей. Мета посібника – розвиток усних і писемних навичок, ознайомлення та засвоєння культурологічних особливостей країн, мову яких вивчають у межах дисципліни “Англійська мова”. Цей посібник знадобиться всім, хто прагне оволодіти англійською мовою.

Тематичне наповнення посібника, детальні словники, різноманітні лексичні й мовні вправи та діалоги представляють актуальні для повсякденного спілкування теми. Текстовий та ілюстративний матеріал посібника адаптовано із сучасних зарубіжних і вітчизняних друкованих та Інтернет-видань. Матеріали посібника активно та успішно використовують викладачі кафедри іноземних мов під час викладання дисципліни “Англійська мова”.

Посібник складається з трьох частин: лексично-розмовної, теоретичної та практичної граматики, що дає змогу оптимізувати навчальний процес, покращити засвоєння окремих аспектів мовної діяльності.

Лексично-розмовна частина висвітлює розмовні теми загального характеру обсягом у 16 уроків, яким передує вступна частина. Кожний урок містить різнопланові завдання на тренування лексики, діалогічного та монологічного мовлення. Усі уроки містять базовий текст та завдання до нього, розроблені відповідно до лексичного наповнення уроку.

У теоретичній частині з'ясовано основні аспекти курсу граматики англійської мови з поясненнями та прикладами. Матеріал викладено доступно, із урахуванням різнорівневих знань студентів.

Практична граматична частина містить тренувальні вправи з граматики англійської мови та має на меті закріплення теоретичного матеріалу, висвітленого в другій частині посібника.

Урокам передує вступний фонетико-орфоепічний курс, де подано англійський алфавіт, основні правила читання звуків і букв англійської мови; з'ясовано особливості наголосу, інтонації та порядку слів у реченні. У кінці посібника розміщені тексти для читання, розраховані як для самостійного опрацювання студентами, так і для роботи на заняттях.

Матеріал посібника доступний в електронному вигляді й може бути використаний для курсу дистанційного навчання. Електронний варіант посібника є зручною та доступною альтернативою друкованого примірника та уможливлює вибіркове використання лексичного й граматичного матеріалу.

Автори будуть вдячні за зауваження та пропозиції, висловлені за адресою [jugreen@ukr.net](mailto:jugreen@ukr.net)

\*\*\*\*\*

Автори висловлюють глибоку подяку колективу кафедри іноземних мов за допомогу в доборі матеріалів видання, слушні зауваги та практичну апробацію книги в навчальному процесі; ректорові Черкаського державного технологічного університету Григору О.Г. за сприяння у виданні посібника.

*Автори*

# INTRODUCTORY PHONETIC-ORTHOEPIC COURSE

(Вступний фонетико-орфоепічний курс)

Англійський алфавіт

Aa	Jj	Ss
Bb	Kk	Tt
Cc	Ll	Uu
Dd	Mm	Vv
Ee	Nn	Ww
Ff	Oo	Xx
Gg	Pp	Yy
Hh	Qq	Zz
Ii	Rr	

## 1. Звуки і букви

Фонетична будова англійської мови відрізняється від фонетичної будови української мови, оскільки має суттєві відмінності в артикуляції органів мовлення (у вимові звуків). Фонетичними і графічними особливостями англійської мови є те, що в ній один звук передають на письмі різними буквами і сполученнями літер і, навпаки, одна і та сама буква може позначати різні звуки, тобто читатися по-різному. Особливо це характерно для англійських голосних букв, кожна з яких має від 5 до 10 звукових значень. Наприклад, буква *a*: *fate* [feit], *fare* [fæə], *far* [fɑ:], *fat* [fæt], *again* [ə'gein].

Це призводить до того, що в англійській мові наявна велика невідповідність між написанням і вимовою слів. 26 букв англійського алфавіту передають 44 звуки (20 голосних і 24 приголосні).

Окремі звуки передають на письмі різними буквами і буквосполученнями. Наприклад, звук *k* передають на письмі буквами *k, c, ck, ch*.

Для графічного зображення фонем (звуків) використовують особливі знаки фонетичної транскрипції, де кожній фонемі відповідає певний знак. Знаки фонетичної транскрипції звичайно беруть у квадратні дужки. Надзвичайно важливо дотримуватися довготи і напруженості голосного звука, оскільки зміна його довготи зумовлює зміну значення слова. Наприклад, *beat* [bi:t] – бити і *bit* [bit] – шматочок, *dark* [dɑ:k] – темний і *duck* [dʌk] – качка.

## 2. Порядок слів у реченні, наголос та інтонація

Для англійської мови характерний сталий порядок слів. Порядок слів, за якого підмет стоїть перед присудком, а прямий додаток – після присудка, є типовим для англійського розповідного речення, наприклад: *She loves children. I've read a lot recently.*

Англійська інтонація відрізняється від української характером піднесення і пониження тону голосу, ритмом і розподілом фразового наголосу.

В англійській мові є два основні тони – низхідний (спадний) і висхідний. Англійський низхідний тон виражає смислову завершеність висловлювання. Йому властивий більш різкий і глибокий спад, ніж український. Англійський звичайний низхідний тон схожий на український низхідний тон, який уживають, виражаючи категоричний наказ або команду, наприклад: *“Геть звідси!”* або *“Раз, два, три!”*.

Англійський висхідний тон свідчить про незавершеність висловлювання. Він не такий різкий і стрімкий, як в українській мові, починається з більш низького тону, підвищення в

ньому відбувається поступово. Графічно англійський низхідний тон зображають знаком ↓, а висхідний – ↑, які ставлять перед наголошеним складом.

Кожне слово в англійській мові має свій постійний наголос, але не всі слова в мовному потоці виділяють наголосом. Виділення окремих слів у мовленні, порівняно з іншими, називають фразовим наголосом.

В англійському реченні наголошеними, як правило, бувають лише однозначні слова: іменники, прикметники, смислові дієслова, числівники, прислівники, питальні та вказівні займенники. Ненаголошеними звичайно є службові слова (артиклі, сполучники, прийменники, допоміжні й модальні дієслова, особові та присвійні займенники). Графічно наголос зображають вертикальною лінією перед наголошеним складом, наприклад, *sentence* ['sentəns].

### 3. Типи складів, буквосполучення, дифтонги. Способи їх вимови

Вимова голосного в англійській мові залежить від наголосу та її положення щодо інших букв. В англійській мові, на відміну від української, існують не два типи складів (відкритий і закритий), а чотири, унаслідок впливу букви *r* на вимову голосного, що стоїть перед нею.

В англійській мові є дифтонги, у яких, на противагу українським дифтонгам, зв'язок між елементами тісніший: [ai], [iə], [əu] тощо.

Усі англійські приголосні в будь-якій позиції вимовляють без пом'якшення.

Англійські дзвінки приголосні в кінці слів не оглушуються. Оглушення кінцевого дзвінкого приголосного в англійській мові призводить до зміни значення слова: *bed* [bed] – ліжко, *bet* [bet] – заклад, парі, *side* [said] – сторона, *sie* [sai] – місцезнаходження, будівельний майданчик, інтернет-сторінка.

Кінцеві англійські глухі приголосні вимовляють енергійніше й виразніше, ніж у рідній мові. Дзвінки приголосні в кінці слів вимовляють без голосного призвуку. Наприклад, *cap* [kæp], *coat* [kəʊt], але *bed* [bed], *tag* [tæg].

В англійській мові є кілька звуків, яких немає в українській мові, наприклад, [h], [w], [θ], [ð], [ŋ].

#### Читання голосних у чотирьох типах складів

Буква	Закритий склад	Відкритий склад	Голосний+r+приголосний	Голосний+r+голосний
<b>a</b>	rat [ræt]	rate [reit]	star [sta:]	stare [stæə]
<b>o</b>	hot [ho:t]	hope [həʊp]	sport [spo:t]	more [mo:]
<b>u</b>	bus [bʌs]	use [ju:s]	turn [tɜ:n]	pure [pjʊə]
<b>e</b>	ten [ten]	Pete [pi:t]	her [hɜ:]	here [hiə]
<b>i</b>	still [stil]	smile [smaɪl]	bird [bɜ:d]	fire [faɪə]
<b>y</b>	system [sɪstəm]	type [taɪp]	myrtle [mɜ:tl]	tyre [taɪə]

#### Читання голосних буквосполучень

Деякі приголосні в англійській мові впливають на вимову голосних, які стоять поряд

Буквосполучення	Читання	Приклади
<b>a+s+приголосний</b>	[ɑ:]	ask, fast, pass
<b>a+l+приголосний</b> – у закритому складі під наголосом	[o:]	small, salt, tall
<b>a+l+k</b> (l не читають)	[o:]	talk, chalk



<b>wa, qua+r</b> +приголосний ( <b>r</b> не читають)	[o:]	war, warm, quarter
<b>wa, qua</b> +(крім <b>r, l</b> )	[o]	want, quantity
<b>wa, qua</b> – у відкритому складі	[ei]	wave, quake
<b>ai, ay</b> – під наголосом	[ei]	stain, day
<b>au, aw</b>	[o:]	author, law
<b>ea, ee</b>	[i:]	sea, steel
<b>ear</b> – під наголосом, якщо за цим сполученням не стоїть приголосний	[iə]	dear
<b>ear</b> – перед приголосним	[ɜ:]	learn, early
<b>eer</b> – під наголосом	[iə]	engineer
<b>ew</b> – якщо не стоїть після <b>l, r, j</b>	[ju:]	few, dew
<b>ew</b> – після <b>l, r, j</b>	[u:]	flew, drew, jewel
<b>i+ld</b>	[αi]	mild
<b>i+nd</b>	[αi]	find
<b>i+gh</b>	[αi]	flight
<b>o+ld</b>	[əu]	old, gold
<b>oo+k</b>	[u]	took, look
<b>oo</b> +приголосний	[u:]	mood, shoot, foot
<b>oa</b>	[əu]	road, load
<b>ou, ow</b>	[αu] [Λ] [u]	out, town, loud country group
<b>u</b> – після <b>r, l, j</b> , а також перед голосним	[u:]	rule, blue, June
<b>ui</b>	[ju:]	suit
<b>ui</b> після <b>r, l, j</b>	[u:]	fruit, juice

### Вимова деяких приголосних та їх сполучень

Буквосполучення	Читання	Приклади
<b>c+e, i, y</b>	[s]	place, pencil, icy
<b>c</b> – в інших випадках	[k]	crystal, cubic, can
<b>g+e, i, y</b>	[dʒ]	page, giant, Egypt
<b>g</b> – в інших випадках	[g]	go, big, gave
<b>j</b>	[g] [dʒ]	get, give jet, just
<b>s</b> – у кінці слова, після голосного та дзвінкого приголосного, усередині слова між голосними	[z]	his, plans, because
<b>s</b> – в інших випадках	[s]	so, stand, lamps
<b>th</b>	[θ] [ð]	think, thin, thank this, that, with
<b>sh</b>	[ʃ]	show, ship
<b>ch, tch</b>	[tʃ]	inch, match
<b>ph</b>	[f]	physics, telephone
<b>w</b> – перед <b>r</b> на початку слова не читають		write, wrong

<b>qu</b>	[kw]	quick, equipment
<b>wh</b> +голосний (крім <b>o</b> )	[w]	what, when, why
<b>wh+o</b>	[h]	who, whom, whose
<b>ture</b> – у ненаголошеній позиції	[tʃə]	lecture, culture
<b>tion, ssion</b> – у ненаголошеній позиції	[ʃn]	motion, session
<b>ci</b> +ненаголошений голосний	[ʃ]	social, electrician

### Читання дифтонгів

Буквосполучення	Читання	Приклади
<b>ai</b>	[eɪ]	say, baby, train, plate, table, waiter, Spain
<b>oa, or, ow</b>	[əʊ]	no, smoke, those, motor, only, Poland, hotel, oak, coat, foam, grow
<b>igh, ild, ind</b>	[aɪ]	five, nine, ice, eye, my, side, night, sight, mild, find
<b>ow, ou</b>	[aʊ]	how, count, flower, cloud, hour, now
<b>ow</b>	[oi]	boy, noise, boil, voice, choice, toy
<b>ear, ier, eer</b>	[iə]	dear, clear, beer, really, ear, cheer, tier, pierce, engineer
<b>eir</b>	[ɛə]	where, there, their, chair, hair, care
<b>ure, oor</b>	[ʊə]	sure, poor, moor
<b>ia</b>	[aɪə]	diamond, giant
<b>our</b>	[aʊə]	sour, flour, hour

# PART I

## BASIC TOPICS

### INTRODUCTION

#### *Getting acquainted. Communicative phrases*



*A hug is worth a thousand words.*

*I love hugging.*

*I wish I was an octopus, so I could hug ten people at a time.*

### TOPICAL VOCABULARY

1. General	1. Загальна лексика
to get (got; got), to become acquainted with smb / to meet (met; met) smb	познайомитися
acquaintance, <i>n</i>	знайомий
to address(ed) smb	звернутися до когось
to know (knew; known) smb	бути знайомим із кимось
to know smb by sight	знати когось в обличчя
visiting / calling card	візитівка
to spell (spelt; spelt) one's name	вимовити чиєсь ім'я по буквах
to make (made; made) friends with smb	потоваришувати з кимось
2. Greeting and good-byes / attracting attention	2. Привітання і до побачення / як привернути увагу
<i>Every day:</i>	<i>Щоденні звертання:</i>
How do you do!	Здрастуйте (при знайомстві)!
Good morning! / Morning! (until 12 p.m.)	Доброго ранку!
Good afternoon! / Afternoon! (until 5-6 p.m.)	Добрий день!
Good evening! / Evening! (until 10-11 p.m.)	Доброго вечора!
Hello! How are you?	Здрастуйте! Як ви?
Hello! How are you getting on?	Здрастуйте! Як життя?
Hello! Nice to meet you!	Здрастуйте! Радий зустрічі!
Hi!	Привіт!
Thanks, I'm very well / fine / all right / not bad / so-so / a bit tired.	Дякую, у мене все гаразд / добре / нормально / непогано / так собі / трохи стомлений.
Thank you! – Not at all / It's all right / Don't mention it!	Дякую! – Немає за що.
You're welcome.	Будь ласка.
It's very kind of you.	Дуже люб'язно з Вашого боку.
Give my best regards to / Remember me to / Say "Hello" to (your mum / friend / relatives).	Передай привіт (мамі / другу / родичам).
Good bye! (Bye!)	До побачення!
Good night! (Night!)	На добраніч!
See you later / tomorrow!	Побачимося пізніше / до завтра!
Have a nice evening!	Приємного вечора!

Excuse me, please.	Вибачте, будь ласка!
Look here! / Look! / Watch out!	Стережися!
<b>Special Days:</b>	<b>Особливі дні:</b>
Happy Birthday! / Merry Christmas! / Happy New Year!	З днем народження! / Щасливого різдвя! / Щасливого нового року!
Good luck! / Congratulations! / Well done!	Щастя! (настанова до дій) / Вітання! / Гарна робота (Молодець)!
<b>3. Conversational openings</b>	<b>3. Як розпочати розмову</b>
Have we met before?	Ми вже знайомі, чи не так?
Your face seems familiar to me.	Ваше обличчя мені знайоме.
Your name sounds familiar.	Ваше ім'я мені знайоме.
I've heard much about you.	Я багато про Вас чув.
<b>4. Forms of address</b>	<b>4. Форми звертання</b>
Mister Hunter (Mr.) / Missis Hunter (Mrs./ Ms) / Miss Brown (Ms) / Sir / Madame / Doctor / Professor / Ladies and Gentlemen / Officer	містер Хантер (до чоловіка) / місіс Хантер (до заміжньої жінки) / міс Браун (до дівчини) / сер (до літнього чоловіка, незнайомця або військового офіцера) / мадам / лікар (до медпрацівника) / професор (до професора в університеті) / пані та панове (до аудиторії) / офіцер (до поліцейського)

## INTRODUCTORY TEXT\*

### Body Language

#### Notes to the text:

body language – мова тіла	uneven eye contact – уривчастий зоровий контакт
species – біологічний вид, порода	intense / prolonged – наполегливий / тривалий
polite greeting – ввічливе вітання	to maintain(ed) – підтримувати
personal space – особистий простір	invasion of privacy – завоювання особистого простору
reserved – стриманий, відлюдний, замкнений	sign of embarrassment – ознака збентеження
male and female – чоловіки та жінки	to point(ed) – показувати пальцем
firm handshake – міцне рукоштовнання	chin / palm – підборіддя / долоня
to bow(ed) – кланятися	to touch(ed) bodies – торкатися тіл
to kiss(ed) on the cheek – цілувати у щок	

You might think **body language** is universal. After all, we're the same **species**, right? But basics like what is considered a **polite greeting** and definitions of "**personal space**" vary widely from culture to culture. Americans, for instance, are considered rather **reserved** in the way they greet friends, and they define personal space more broadly than most other cultures. Knowing how another culture's basic body language differs from yours may be of great importance to you.

1) Mind how you meet and greet. Americans and Canadians, **male and female**, tend to greet each other with a nice **firm handshake**. In Asian countries, the polite form of greeting is **to bow**, and the lower you bow, the deeper respect you have for the person you are bowing to. In Spain, Portugal, Italy and Eastern Europe, men **kiss** each other **on the cheek**.

2) Be careful about **eye contact**. In America, **uneven** eye contact is preferable in a conversation – unless it's someone you care deeply for. In Middle Eastern countries, **intense prolonged** eye contact is the norm, and the person you're speaking with will move very close to you **to maintain** it. The Japanese, on the other hand, consider it an **invasion of privacy**, and rarely look another person in the eye.

3) Americans, in general, smile when they meet or greet someone. Koreans, however, think it's rude for adults to smile in public – to them, smiling in public is a **sign of embarrassment**.

\*Тут і далі для укладання та ілюстрування тестів і вибірки крилатих висловів використано інформацію з електронних джерел. – Прим. авт.

4) Don't **point**. Most Americans think nothing of pointing at an object or another person. Native Americans consider it extremely rude to point with a finger, and instead they point with their **chin**. It's also rude to point with a finger in China; the polite way is to use the whole hand, **palm** facing up.

5) Give the right amount of space. In Asian cultures, particularly China, the concept of personal space is nearly nonexistent. Strangers regularly **touch bodies** when standing in line for, say, movie tickets. People in Scandinavian countries, on the other hand, need more personal space than we do.

### 1. Comprehension questions.

1. Is body language universal?
2. What is specific about meeting and greeting in different countries?
3. Where is uneven eye contact preferable?
4. Where is smile considered a sign of embarrassment?
5. How do Native Americans point to objects?
6. Describe the amount of space.

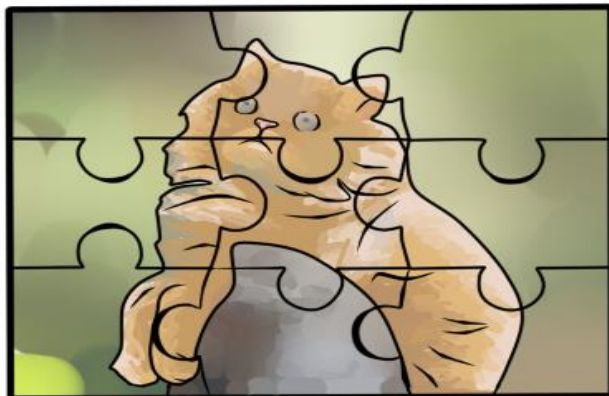
### 2. Find in the text English equivalents to the following.

Черга за квитками в кіно, Азіатські культури, ввічливий спосіб, грубий, посміхатися на людях, розмова, глибока повага, мати важливе значення, варіюватися.

### VOCABULARY PRACTICE

#### 1. Find the vocabulary words and cross them out.

J I M S O R R Y C I P  
T H A N K Y O U V T L  
R M T X P B A D K S E  
P A R D O N M E O O A  
N I A C D N P E T K I  
P E X C U S E M E B M  
L I F W E L C O M E G  
E S T H I D G O N P L  
Y O U R E G R E A T A  
S U I P L E A S E R D



#### 2. Choose a suitable phrase to fit the dialogues.

1. (sneezes) Atchoo!	<i>Thanks, I'm not bad.</i>
2. I'm taking my driving test today!	<i>Happy Birthday!</i>
3. I passed my driving test!	<i>Good luck!</i>
4. Goodbye!	<i>Hi!</i>
5. It's my birthday today!	<i>Thank you!</i>
6. How are you?	<i>See you soon / later / tomorrow!</i>
7. Hello!	<i>Congratulations! / Well done!</i>
8. Here's your tea.	<i>Bless you!</i>

#### 3. What do you say? Choose a phrase from the topical vocabulary.

1. You want to order a coffee. The waiter is reading the newspaper.
2. A friend buys you a drink.
3. A child says 'Goodnight' to you.
4. You answer the phone at work. It is 10.30 a.m.

5. You answer the phone at work. It is 3 p.m.
6. It is 2 a.m. on January 1<sup>st</sup>. You meet a friend on the street.
7. A friend spoke too quickly. You don't understand.
8. It is 24<sup>th</sup> December. You meet your boss on the bus.

#### 4. Read the dialogues.

*Sandra:* Hello, I'm Sandra. What's your name?

*Sam:* My name's Sam.

*Sandra:* Hello, Sam.

\*\*\*\*\*

*Sandra:* John, this is Sam Brown. Sam, this is John Mason.

*Sam:* Hello, John.

*John:* Hello, Sam.

\*\*\*\*\*

*A:* Hi, Jim. How are you?

*B:* Fine, thanks, Rebecca. And you?

*A:* I'm OK, thanks.

#### 5. Complete the conversations. Check the example (1).

1. <i>A:</i> Hello. <b>My</b> name's Anna. <b>What's</b> your name? <i>B:</i> Ben.	2. <i>B:</i> ....., Anna. .... are you? <i>A:</i> Fine, thanks, Ben. .... ? <i>B:</i> ..... well, thanks.
3. <i>C:</i> Hello. My ..... Carla. What's ..... name? <i>D:</i> ..... name's David.	4. <i>D:</i> Hi, Carla. .... you? <i>C:</i> ....., thanks. .... ? <i>D:</i> OK, .....

#### 6. Put the lines in the conversation into the correct order.

- Fine, thanks.
- I'm OK, thanks. And you?
- Hello. My name's Rita. What's your name?
- Hello, Tina. Hello, Mary.
- I'm Tina, and this is Mary.
- Hello, Rita. How are you?

#### 7. Read the text and complete the activities that follow.

The handshake has become a common form of communication all around the world. It is used to say "hello", "goodbye", "we agree", as a greeting upon first acquaintance, and as a mutual sign of goodwill and peace. A handshake can establish a first impression with someone, whether it is good and firm, limp and clammy. It has made its way to the highest levels of government and society where agreements between nations are sealed. This ritual has "become perhaps our most important non-verbal communicative innovation".



The most widely accepted theory is that handshaking originated in medieval Europe where knights would extend their hand to other knights in order to show that they had no weapons hidden or concealed behind their back. This seems to fit quite nicely with the modern version of a handshake – two people using one single gesture to convey friendship, openness and non-harming.

Regardless of its origins, the handshake has become a solid part of modern life and culture. People of all races, shapes, sizes and status use the handshake as a way to greet a person, make an agreement or say goodbye.

Why is our handshake so important? The way you shake hands speaks volumes about who you are as a person. For some people a handshake is just a useless formality but to others it is a massive indication of a person's depth of character, trustworthiness and strength. When you shake hands with a person you are doing much more than saying "hello". You are saying "this is who I am".

If you are a business person your handshake can be the maker or breaker of a big contract or deal. If you are a doctor or health care provider your handshake can fill a patient with confidence and trust. It is extremely important for all people to learn how to shake hands with meaning.

**a. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?**

1. The handshake has become a common form of communication all around the world.
2. This ritual has "become perhaps our most boring verbal communicative innovation".
3. Handshaking originated in medieval Europe.
4. People of all races, shapes, sizes and status kiss each other to make an agreement or say goodbye.

**b. Fill in the blanks with appropriate words.**

1. The way you shake hands speaks volumes about .....
2. When you shake hands with a person you .....
3. If you are a business person your handshake can be .....
4. For some people a handshake is ..... but to others it is a .....

**c. Complete the following phrases using the text.**

*Common form of ....., ..... acquaintance, mutual ....., non-verbal ..... innovation, medieval ....., ..... hidden, to convey ....., to greet a ....., to fill a patient with .....*

**8. Writing options. Try to make a story on the offered topics.**

1. What makes it easy to talk to someone? What traits do you look for in a conversation partner?
2. Have you ever had a great conversation with a complete stranger?
3. What are peculiarities about men and women conversations?
4. What topics are taboos for your culture / personally?
5. Why do people like to learn bad words in another language?
6. Would you like to have a career that requires you to talk to a lot of people? Why?

**HUMOUR TIME**

Last night I hugged my pillow and dreamt of you... I wish that someday I'd dream about my pillow and I'd be hugging you.

# LESSON 1

## Family Relations



*It is not flesh and blood but the heart which makes us fathers and sons.*

*Family faces are magic mirrors.*

*Looking at people who belong to us, we see the past,  
present, and future.*

*Treat your family like friends and your friends like family.*

### TOPICAL VOCABULARY

1. Name	1. Ім'я
name / first name / Christian name	ім'я
patronymic / middle name	по батькові
surname / second name / family name / last name	прізвище
maiden name / nickname	дівоче прізвище / прізвисько
to call(ed) smb after	назвати когось на честь
2. Age	2. Вік
to be (was / were; been) born	народитися
generation	покоління
teenager	підліток
grown up / adult	дорослий
middle aged (elderly) person	літня людина
to die(ed) of an illness / for one's country	померти через хворобу / за країну
3. Origin	3. Походження
to have roots at / to be / to come from	мати коріння з / походити від
countryman	співвітчизник
4. Family	5. Сім'я
relatives close / distant	родичі близькі / далекі
ancestors	пращури (предки)
spouse: husband / wife	один із подружжя: чоловік / дружина
parents: father (dad, daddy) / mother (mum)	батьки: батько / мати
child (children, <i>pl.</i> ): son / daughter	дитина (діти, <i>мн.</i> ): син / дочка
first-born / baby / toddler	первісток / новонароджена дитина / дитина, яка починає ходити
the only child / twins / triplets	єдина дитина / близнюки / трійнята
grandfather (grandpa / granddad) / grandmother (granny / grandma)	дідусь / бабуся
grandparents / great grandparents	дідусь і бабуся (разом) / прабатьки (прадідусь і прабабуся)
grandson / granddaughter	онук / онучка
uncle / aunt	дядько / тітка
cousin	двоюрідний брат / сестра
nephew / niece	племінник (небіж) / племінниця (небога)
in-laws	родичі чоловіка / жінки



father-in-law / mother-in-law	тесть, свекор / теща, свекруха
son-in-law / daughter-in-law	зять / невістка
to adopt(ed)	усиновити / удочерити
orphan / orphanage	сирота / притулок для дітей
step(foster) child / half brother(sister)	нерідна дитина / зведений брат (сестра)
step(foster) parents	нерідні батьки
to christen(ed) a child	охрестити дитину
godfather / godmother	хрещений / хрещена
godson / goddaughter	хрещеник / хрещениця
to be pregnant / carry(ed) a child / to expect(ed) a baby	бути вагітною / очікувати дитину
to give birth to a child	народити дитину
to bring (brought; brought) up / to raise(ed)	виховувати дитину
to take after / to resemble(d)	бути схожим (на)
to inherit(ed)	успадкувати
<b>5. Marriage</b>	<b>6. Шлюб</b>
date / to date(ed) / to go out with	побачення / ходити на побачення / зустрічатись із кимось
single / married	неодружений (незаміжня) / одружений (заміжня)
bachelor / spinster	парубок (холостяк) / стара діва
to become engaged with smb / engagement	заручитися з кимось / заручини
to propose (proposal)	освідчитися (освідчення)
to marry(ied) smb / to get married with	одружитися (вийти заміж)
wedding (civil / church)	весілля (цивільне / вінчання)
bridegroom (fiancé) / bride (fiancée)	наречений / наречена
best-man / bridesmaid	боярин / дружка
newly-weds / just married / happy couple	щойно одружені / щаслива пара
to go on a honeymoon	поїхати в медовий місяць
to divorce(d) / divorce	розлучитися / розлучення
ex-husband / ex-wife	колишній чоловік / дружина
widow / widower	вдова / вдівець

## INTRODUCTORY TEXT

### English Family Life

#### Notes to the text:

the affairs of the home – домашні справи	to be more involved – приймати активнішу участь
castle – фортеця, замок	increased leisure facilities – збільшення можливостей для відпочинку
used to – <i>тут</i> : раніше (позначає дії, що були звичними в минулому)	opportunities – можливості
to be caused – спричинитися	family holiday – сімейний відпочинок
new laws – нові закони	older generation – старше покоління
to increase – зростати, збільшуватися	pensioners – пенсіонери
one marriage in every three – одне із трьох одружень	entirely independently – повністю незалежно
to take responsibility – брати відповідальність	to support the increasing number of elderly – підтримувати зростаючу кількість людей похилого віку
to keep in touch – підтримувати зв'язок	private or state owned – у приватній чи державній власності
to treat their children as equals – ставитися до дітей як до рівних собі (за віком)	
to make decisions – приймати рішення	

The English are a nation of stay-at-home. "There is no place like home," they say. And when the man is not working he is at home in the company of his wife and children and busies himself with **the affairs of the home**. "The Englishman's home is his **castle**," is a saying known all over the world. And it is true.

A "typical" British family **used to** consist of mother, father and two children, but in recent years there have been many changes in family life. Some of these **have been caused by new laws** and others are the result of changes in society. For example, since the law made it easier to get a divorce, the number of divorces has **increased**. In fact **one marriage in every three** now ends in divorce. This means that there are a lot of one-parent families. Society is now more tolerant than it used to be of unmarried people, unmarried couples and single parents.

You might think that marriage and the family are not so popular as they once were. However, the majority of divorced people marry again, and they sometimes **take responsibility** for a second family.

Members of a family – grandparents, aunts, uncles, cousins – **keep in touch**, but they see less of each other than they used to. This is because people often move away from their home town to work, and so the family becomes less united. Christmas is the traditional season for reunions.

Relationships within the family are different now. Parents **treat their children more as equals** than they used to, and children have more freedom to **make** their own **decisions**. The father **is more involved** with bringing up children, often because the mother goes out to work. **Increased leisure facilities** and more money mean that there are greater **opportunities** outside the home. Although the **family holiday** is still an important part of family life (usually taken in August, and often abroad) many children have holidays away from their parents, often with a school party or other organized group.

Who looks after the **older generation**? There are about 10 million old-age **pensioners** in Britain, of whom about 750,000 cannot live **entirely independently**. The government gives financial help in the form of a pension but in the future it will be more and more difficult for the nation economy **to support the increasing number of elderly**. At the present time, more than half of all old people are looked after at home. Many others live in Old Peoples' Homes, which may be **private or state owned**.

### 1. Comprehension questions.

1. What type of nation are the English?
2. What caused family changes in Britain?
3. What's the traditional season for relatives' reunion?
4. What changes can be observed in relationships between children and parents?
5. How and by whom is older generation looked after?

### 2. Find in the text English equivalents to the following.

Нація домосидів, зайнятий домашніми справами, приказка, зміни у суспільстві, розлучитися, неповноцінна сім'я, толерантний, неодружені пари, покинути домівки, традиційний час возз'єднання, мати більше свободи, виховання дітей, доглядати літніх людей, надавати фінансову допомогу, притулок для людей похилого віку.

## VOCABULARY PRACTICE

### 1. Fill in the missing vowels into the words expressing relations in the family.

- |                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. a h _ sb _ nd      | 10. tw _ ns             |
| 2. an _ ncl _         | 11. gr _ ndp _ r _ nts  |
| 3. a st _ pm _ th _ r | 12. a m _ rr _ _ g _    |
| 4. an _ _ nt          | 13. _ nc _ st _ rs      |
| 5. a d _ _ ght _ r    | 14. a h _ n _ _ m _ _ n |
| 6. a n _ ph _ w       | 15. an _ rph _ n        |

7. a n \_ \_ c \_

8. a f \_ th \_ r \_ \_ n - l \_ w

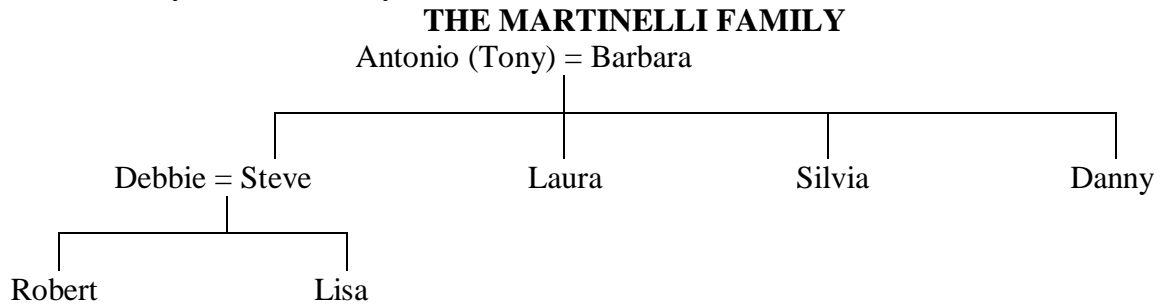
9. a c \_ \_ s \_ n

16. d \_ st \_ nt r \_ l \_ t \_ v \_ s

17. a sp \_ nst \_ r

18. a h \_ lf - br \_ th \_ r

## 2. Study Laura's family tree.



### a) Complete the sentences about Laura's family.

- 1) Tony and Barbara are Laura's ... and ...
- 2) They've got two ... and two ...
- 3) Steve is Debbie's ...
- 4) Debbie is Steve's ...
- 5) They've got two ..., a boy called Robert and a baby girl called Lisa.
- 6) Laura's got two ... and one ...
- 7) Her ... are called Tony and Barbara.

### b) Use the words below and describe relationships in Laura's family.

*Grandmother / grandfather   aunt / uncle   niece / nephew   cousin*

Laura to Lisa

Lisa to Danny

Danny to Lisa

Barbara to Robert

Robert to Lisa

Tony to Lisa

**Example:** *Laura is Lisa's aunt.*

### c) Rewrite the paragraph putting in the correct punctuation (full stops and capital letters).

*'my name's laura and i'm twenty-two years old i come from california in america but i'm in york at the moment i'm a student at the university york is a very beautiful old city and i like living here very much'*

## 3. Read about Cher, a famous American singer and film star, and answer the questions.

- 1) What nationality were her ancestors?
- 2) What was her first husband's name?
- 3) What was the name of their first hit record?
- 4) How many children has she got?

### **Cher - Actress, Singer, Oscar Winner**

Cher's real name is Cherilyn La Pierre. Her family ancestors were French, Turkish, Armenian and Cherokee Indian. Her first husband was called Sonny Bono and together, as 'Sony and Cher', their record *Got You, Babe*, was a big hit in 1965. Cher won Oscar for Best Actress in the film *Moonstruck* in 1988. She has got two children, a daughter called Chastity by her first husband and a son called Elijah Blue by her second husband.



#### 4. Read and translate the following dialogues.

A.: Do you want to see my family album?

B.: With pleasure.

A.: These are my parents. Here they are very young. This is their wedding.

B.: You look a lot like your mother. You have the same eyes and smile.

A.: You think so? All relatives of my father say that I look a lot like him. We have the same nose. Look: this is my grandma. Here she is 25 years old.

B.: What a cutie! It's hard to believe that we will be 70 some day too.

A.: I prefer not to think about it.

B.: Who is this attractive guy?

A.: This is my brother. He is a sailor. The uniform looks good on him, doesn't it?

B.: Very much. And where is he now?

A.: He's sailing on the Mediterranean sea. He's coming on holiday soon. We'll have a party to celebrate his arrival. Are you coming?

B.: For sure!

\*\*\*\*\*

A: Hi, Dan! We are making a survey on family ties. Can I ask you some questions?

B: Yes, please.

A: What makes home a comfortable, pleasant place to live in?

B: I think that kind and good relations between people make their home a pleasant place for them. When you feel love and support you cope with any difficulty.

A: Who supported you and helped you to find the way out of difficulties in your life?

B: My parents and friends tried to help me in such situations.

A: Whom do you admire in your family? What have you learnt to do from this person?

B: My grandmother. She is a wonderful person. Her life wasn't easy, but she always had a positive attitude to the events that happened. She taught me to be patient and tolerant to other people.

A: Do you agree that your family is the most wonderful treasure you have?

B: Yes, sure.

#### 5. Read the text below and decide which answer (A, B, C, D) best fits each space.

##### Family Helping

Do you (0) *feel* depressed? Do you and your brothers or sisters (1) \_\_\_\_\_ to argue all the time and you don't understand why? Does your brother or sister (2) \_\_\_\_\_ you, or is everything perfect?

Statistics show that there are times in every family when things just (3) \_\_\_\_\_ out of control. It's nobody's (4) \_\_\_\_\_, but everybody's responsibility. At times (5) \_\_\_\_\_ that, *Family Helpline* can help. Here at *Family Helpline*, we care (6) \_\_\_\_\_ families. We want to help you make your family work. Our trained counselors deal (7) \_\_\_\_\_ people just like you every day. We are not always successful, but we (8) \_\_\_\_\_ help many families to live together again in peace.

Our counselors help you to stop (9) \_\_\_\_\_ each other of causing the problem. You all want to (10) \_\_\_\_\_ a solution and sometimes talking to somebody outside the family makes a difference. We're here to listen call our operators on 555-26515. They're available 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

0. A be

B behave

C feel

D act

1. A seem

B look

C resemble

D involve

2. A argue

B complain

C annoy

D mind

3. A go

B get

C come

D turn

4. A fault

B blame

C cause

D reason

5. A such

B as

C similar

D like

- |                |           |               |            |
|----------------|-----------|---------------|------------|
| 6. A over      | B about   | C with        | D of       |
| 7. A for       | B with    | C at          | D by       |
| 8. A do        | B are     | C try         | D agree    |
| 9. A attacking | B blaming | C criticizing | D accusing |
| 10. A make     | B find    | C get         | D do       |

**6. Write one word in each gap.**

**Arranged Marriages**

The usual western idea of marriage is that you meet someone, (1) \_\_\_\_\_ in love, and then decide to marry each other. For those born (2) \_\_\_\_\_ some cultures, however, marriage may have quite a different meaning. In an arranged marriage, it is the parents who choose the partner and it's possible (3) \_\_\_\_\_ the young person getting married not to meet their future bride or groom (4) \_\_\_\_\_ person until the day of the wedding. Indeed, a young person might be promised to another (5) \_\_\_\_\_ a child, many years before the wedding day.

Amongst communities that practice arranged marriage, it's not unusual for a generation (6) \_\_\_\_\_ to open up between parents and children, with many young people refusing to accept an arranged marriage. However, if the parents treat each other (7) \_\_\_\_\_ respect and recognize that they are both (8) \_\_\_\_\_ equal value, there doesn't seem to be any real barrier to having a happy married life.

**7. There are many patterns of family relations. Study some of them, add to their characteristics. Think about the ideal family type.**

A friendly family	Members of family always help each other.
A caring family	Members of family take care of each other.
A hospitable family	They like to invite guests.
A conservative family	Parents don't allow their children go out late.
An ideal family	?

**8. Writing options. Try to make a story on the offered topics.**

1. What are some qualities that you think are important in a spouse or a partner?
2. Do you think it is better to be single or married?
3. Do you think arranged marriages are a good idea? Why or why not?
4. Do you want a husband or wife who is older, younger or the same age as you?
5. What makes a happy marriage?
6. Can you name a famous happily married couple?
7. Where do you want to go for your honeymoon?
8. What are some of the main reasons people get divorced?

**HUMOUR TIME**

Fred: Have you ever seen one of those machines that can tell when someone is telling a lie?  
Joe: Seen one? I married one!

\*\*\*\*\*

- So you want to become my son-in-law?
- Not exactly. I just want to marry your daughter.

\*\*\*\*\*

Dad: Son, what do you want for your 18th birthday?  
Son: Just a radio, dad... With a sports car around it.

\*\*\*\*\*

My new girlfriend is as pretty as a flower. A cauliflower.



## LESSON 2

### Appearance and Character



*The best mirror is an old friend.*

*A little man often cast a long shadow.*

*Don't judge men by their appearance.*

*Nothing shows a man's character more than what he laughs at.*

*Character is the result of two things: mental attitude and the way we spend our time.*

#### TOPICAL VOCABULARY

1. The human body	1. Людське тіло
attractive / unattractive	привабливий / непривабливий
good-looking / pleasant-looking / beautiful / charming / lovely / pretty	приємної зовнішності / красивий / чарівний / милий / гарненький
common / plain / usual / ordinary	звичайний / простий
ugly / handsome	негарний (потворний) / гарний (про чоловіків)
height / shape	зріст / статура (форма)
tall / short / middle-sized (medium / average)	високий / низький / середнього зросту
to look like	виглядати, бути схожим
What does he look like? / What is he like?	Як він виглядає? / Який він (про характер)?
2. Build (frame) / figure	2. Тулуб / фігура
large / heavy / powerful / stocky / fat / stout	великий / важкий / могутній / коренастий / товстий / повний
small / slim (lean) / slender / graceful	маленький / худий / стрункий / граційний
well-made / clumsy figure	добре складений / незграбна фігура
3. Parts of the body	3. Частини тіла
head / neck / forehead / mouth / jaw / ears	голова / шия / чоло / рот / щелепа / вуха
moustache / beard	вуса / борода
broad / narrow shoulders	широкі / вузькі плечі
chest / waist	грудна клітка / талія
leg / foot (pl. feet)	нога (від стегна до п'яти) / стопа (мн. стопи)
arm / hand / elbow / palm	рука / рука (кисть і пальці) / лікоть / долоня
<b>fingers:</b> thumb / index (forefinger) / middle / ring / little	<b>пальці:</b> великий палець / вказівний / середній / безіменний / мізинець
toe / nail	палець на нозі / ніготь
<b>hair</b> (color): red / fair / blond / chestnut / grey / black (dark) / brown / brunette	<b>волосся</b> (колір): руде / світле / блондин(ка) / каштанове / сиве / чорне (темне) / шатен(ка) / брюнет(ка)
<b>hair</b> (type): thin / thick / straight / short / long / wavy / curly / curled / bold-headed	<b>волосся</b> (тип): тонке / товсте / пряме / коротке / довге / хвилясте / кучеряве / лисий
hair-cut / hair-do (hair-style) / fringe / plait	стрижка / зачіска / чубчик / коса
<b>face:</b> oval / square / long / round / wrinkled / freckled / scar / mole	<b>обличчя:</b> овальне / квадратне / довге / кругле / у зморшках / у ластовинні / шрам / родимка
<b>nose:</b> straight / aquiline / hooked (turned up)	<b>ніс:</b> прямий / орлиний / кирпатий / курносий

<i>lips</i> : full (thick) / thin / well-cut	<i>зуби</i> : повні / тонкі / чітко окреслені
<i>teeth</i> : (un)even / perfect / false teeth	<i>зуби</i> : (не)рівні / ідеальні / вставні
<i>cheeks</i> : clean-shaven / stubby / with dimples	<i>щоки</i> : поголені / неголені / з ямочками
<i>chin</i> : double / massive / pointed	<i>підборіддя</i> : подвійне / масивне / загострене
<i>eyes</i> : blue / brown / hazel / grey / bulging / cross-eyed / short-sighted / long-sighted	<i>очі</i> : блакитні / темно-карі / світло-карі / сірі / витрішкуваті / косоокий / короткозорий / далекозорий
<i>eyebrows</i> : bushy / arched / thin	<i>брови</i> : густі / дугою / тонкі
to raise / frown(ed) one's brows	дивуватися / хмурити брови
eyelashes / eyelids	віії / повіки
<b>4. Traits of character</b>	<b>4. Риси характеру</b>
behavior / to behave oneself	поведінка / поводитися
self-esteem / manners	самооцінка / манери
sleepyhead / sweet-tooth / chatter-box / big mouth / big-head	сонько / ласун / балакун / базікало / хвастун
to lose (lost; lost) one's temper	вийти з себе
<i>emotional states</i> :	<i>емоційний стан</i> :
<b>1) positive:</b>	<b>1) позитивний:</b>
cheerful (merry) / calm / serious / easy-going / trustworthy / proud / obedient / happy (glad) / in high spirits (in a good mood) / excited / dedicated	веселий / спокійний / серйозний / легкий у спілкуванні / надійний / гордий / слухняний / щасливий (радісний) / в хорошому настрої / схвилюваний (піднесений) / відданий
<b>2) negative:</b>	<b>2) негативний:</b>
bore (to be bored – I'm bored) / nuisance / irritable / hot-tempered / disobedient / superstitious / boastful / touchy / villain / self-confident / upset (sad) / in low spirits (in a bad mood) / disappointed / depressed (distressed) / jealous	нудний (мені нудно) / надокучливий / дратівливий / запальний / неслухняний / забобонний / хвалько / образливий / негідник / самовпевнений / засмучений / у поганому настрої / розчарований / пригнічений (у відчаї) / ревнивий (заздрісний)
<i>powers of mind</i> :	<i>розумові здібності</i> :
smart (clever, bright, intelligent) / wise / witty / stupid (dull, silly, fool) / well (ill)-bred / educated / gifted (talented)	розумний / мудрий / кмітливий / дурний / добре (погано) вихований / освічений / обдарований (талановитий)
<i>volitional powers</i> :	<i>вольові якості</i> :
<b>1) positive:</b>	<b>1) позитивні:</b>
brave / courageous / hard-working / modest / attentive / responsible / generous / tactful / polite / reliable / sociable / honest (frank, sincere) / fair / independent / strong-willed / flexible / persistent	хоробрий / відважний / працьовитий / скромний / уважний / відповідальний / щедрий / тактовний / увічливий / надійний / дружельюбний / чесний (відвертий) / справедливий / незалежний / вольовий / гнучкий / наполегливий
<b>2) negative:</b>	<b>2) негативні:</b>
coward / shy / stubborn / weak-willed / lost / foxy (cunning) / unreliable / rude / strict / selfish / impolite / greedy / irresponsible / lazy (idle)	боягуз / сором'язливий / упертий / безхарактерний / розгублений / хитрий / ненадійний / грубий / суворий / егоїст / невічливий / жадібний / безвідповідальний / лінивий



## INTRODUCTORY TEXT

### *People Around the World*

#### Notes to the text:

pale complexion – блідий колір обличчя  
Mediterranean countries – країни  
Середземномор'я  
flattish nose – приплюснутий ніс  
slanting eyes – розкосі очі  
to get in touch with – контактувати (з)

repulse people – відштовхувати людей  
to depend on – залежати (від)  
plump person – пухка (повненька) особа  
features of character – риси характеру  
double nature – подвійна природа  
too reticent – занадто стримані  
vice versa – навпаки

People from different countries don't look the same. For example, people from countries such as Denmark, Norway and Sweden are usually tall. They have fair hair, blue eyes and a **pale complexion**.

Most people in **Mediterranean countries** such as Italy, Spain and Greece are rather short. They have usually got dark wavy hair, brown eyes and light brown skin.

Most people from central and southern parts of Africa have got black curly hair and very dark skin. They have also got dark brown eyes, full lips and a wide, **flattish nose**.

The Chinese are quite short, with thick black hair and dark, **slanting eyes**. They have got a small nose and a yellowish complexion.

Those who live in hot countries wear light clothes like shorts, T-shirts and sandals. People from northern countries such as Canada, Russia and Finland wear too much clothes in winter – coats, hats, scarves, winter boots and other warm things.

During our life we **get in touch with** many people. We all know a proverb: "So many characters, so many people" and it is really true. Character is the most important thing in a person which attracts or **repulses other people**. In general, character doesn't **depend on** appearance. So, a very beautiful girl can be angry, nervous person who hates everybody and everything. But an ugly **plump person** can be really nice and friendly.

Each of us has good and bad **features of character**. We can say: "He is a bad man as he is rude or unreliable. And he is a good man because he is courageous, generous, kind-hearted."

Some features have **double nature**. For example: modesty, stubbornness, persistency and others. Modest people are usually polite, but sometimes they tend to be **too reticent**.

A lot of things can change person's character. If you are a kind man and you have grown up with rude, cruel people you can become the like of them or **vice versa**. Some people have a strong character and they can try to change themselves.



#### 1. Comprehension questions.

1. Do people from different countries look the same?
2. People from Denmark have a yellowish complexion, don't they?
3. What countries belong to Mediterranean ones? How do people living there look?
4. Are the Chinese short or tall?
5. What do people in hot countries wear?
6. Why do people from northern countries wear too much clothes in winter?
7. What features of character can be of double nature? Why?
8. What can change a person's character?



**2. Find the following words and word combinations in the text, translate them.**

Виглядати однаково, досить низький, кучеряве волосся, повні губи, темна шкіра, носити легкий одяг, приказка, приваблювати людей, залежати від зовнішності, нервова людина, ненавидіти, неприваблива людина, гарні риси характеру, добросердний, скромність, змінити характер, жорстокий, стати схожим на них, намагатися змінитися.

**VOCABULARY PRACTICE**

**1. Find the topic-connected words among jumbled letters in the box.**

H	E	A	D	H	A	N	D	M
S	H	O	U	L	D	E	R	O
F	O	O	T	N	O	S	E	U
I	E	Y	E	F	W	I	G	S
N	L	E	G	H	C	K	A	T
G	B	A	N	A	H	N	C	A
E	O	R	Y	I	I	E	D	C
R	W	R	E	R	N	E	S	H
G	L	A	S	S	E	S	S	E

**2. Match the synonyms in two columns.**

- |            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| 1. frank   | A. silly       |
| 2. clever  | B. wavy        |
| 3. stupid  | C. well-built  |
| 4. curly   | D. intelligent |
| 5. slender | E. honest      |
| 6. sad     | F. awful       |
| 7. ugly    | G. boring      |



**3. Match the antonyms in two columns.**

- |                |             |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1. weak        | A. ugly     |
| 2. pretty      | B. lazy     |
| 3. false       | C. strong   |
| 4. industrious | D. active   |
| 5. calm        | E. honest   |
| 6. sad         | F. kind     |
| 7. cruel       | G. cheerful |



**4. Find the description to the adjective.**

- |                |                                                                 |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. honest      | A. doesn't like to work or exercise, feels happy doing nothing  |
| 2. funny       | B. positive person and positive about the future                |
| 3. lazy        | C. thinks things will end badly, the opposite of optimistic     |
| 4. jealous     | D. tells the truth                                              |
| 5. optimistic  | E. doesn't say much, prefers to listen                          |
| 6. quiet       | F. doesn't like to talk about his achievements                  |
| 7. rude        | G. makes people laugh                                           |
| 8. pessimistic | H. wants what other people have, doesn't like others to succeed |
| 9. modest      | I. shares what he has with other people                         |
| 10. generous   | J. not polite and offends people                                |

### 5. Read and translate the dialogues.

A.: My friend Rich is coming to town next week. Have you ever met him?

B.: No, I haven't.

A.: He's kind of crazy, but a great guy.

B.: Yeah, why do you say so? What's he like?

A.: He's really hard-working, but very much a loner. He's pretty talented and can do just about anything.

B.: Sounds interesting. Is he married?

A.: No, he isn't.

B.: What does he look like? Maybe my friend Alice would be interested in meeting him.

A.: He's tall, slim and good looking. Your friend would find him attractive. What's she like?

B.: She's outgoing and very athletic.

A.: Really? What sports does she like playing?

B.: She's a great tennis player and also goes cycling a lot.

A.: What does she look like?

B.: She's kind of exotic looking. She's got long dark hair and piercing black eyes. People think she is rather beautiful.

A.: Do you think she would like to meet Rich?

B.: Sure! Why don't we hook them up?

A.: Great idea!

\*\*\*\*\*

A.: I have a big favour to ask you! Can you meet my friend at the airport today evening? I don't have time at all.

B.: Of course. No problem. How does she look like?

A.: She is an attractive blonde with green eyes. She is not tall. She likes wearing sporty clothes. She'll have a bright orange suitcase.

B.: I hope there won't be several blondes with orange suitcases...

A.: Don't worry, I'm going to describe your appearance to her.

B.: Tell her that I'm going to wear a brown jacket and black jeans.

A.: For her it will be enough to know that you are almost two meters tall.

B.: You are right, it's hard not to notice me.

### 6. Choose the correct words to complete these sentences.

1. He has such an innocent face. He couldn't have done something so awful (adventurous / inexperienced / innocent). 2. The little boy's \_\_\_\_\_ behaviour always gets him into trouble, but he is so cute even when he's bad (mischievous / active / supportive). 3. She is a very \_\_\_\_\_ person; she would never do anything stupid like that (frank / sensible / supportive). 4. The director of the company likes me, but she is giving someone else the job because she thinks that I am too \_\_\_\_\_ (generous / responsible / inexperienced). 5. He donated one million dollars to our city's art museum. What a \_\_\_\_\_ gesture (frank / generous / responsible)! 6. I suppose there's one advantage in growing up with \_\_\_\_\_ parents – you learn how to follow rules (active / patient / strict). 7. My grandmother is 74 years old, but she still maintains a \_\_\_\_\_ lifestyle: she walks a mile every day before breakfast and swims on the weekend (responsible / sensible / active). 8. When you are annoyed by a problem at work, it's best to be \_\_\_\_\_ and look for a solution rather than get angry (innocent / patient / frank). 9. She wanted to go mountain climbing since she was a little girl. She always had an \_\_\_\_\_ nature (adventurous / mischievous / innocent).

### 7. Complete the following sentences.

1. Your sister is a real beauty ... . 2. He was a handsome young man ... . 3. The woman who opened the door was ... . 4. My niece is such a nice little thing ... . 5. The most remarkable thing

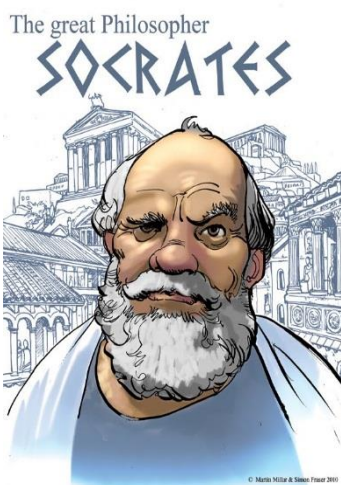
about her face is ... . 6. She looks the very picture of her mother: she has the same ... . 7. The girl charmed everybody; she ... . 8. Can you describe that man? – Sure, he ... . 9. Is your friend as beautiful as she used to be? – It's a pity, but she is not. She ... . 10. She is 25, she looks ... .

### 8. Translate into English.

1. Її мати невисокого зросту, повненька, темноволоса та сіроока. Дочка зовсім на неї не схожа. Вона – висока, струнка блондинка з великими блакитними очима, темними бровами та віями. У неї великий, але гарний рот, прямий ніс та чудовий колір обличчя.
2. Мій сусід був високим худорлявим чоловіком п'ятдесяти років. Його обличчя було не надто привабливим. У нього був великий ніс, маленькі темні очі та тонкі губи. Але коли він говорив або посміхався, обличчя одразу ж ставало дуже приємним.
3. Це була літня жінка років за 60, із сивим волоссям, досить огрядна, але все ще красива.
4. Дівчинка чарівна з її круглим обличчям, великими синіми очима й кирпичним носиком.

### 9. Read and translate the following text, do the exercises below.

#### Beauty



For the Greeks beauty was a virtue: a kind of excellence. If it occurred to the Greeks to distinguish between a person's "inside" and "outside", they still expected that inner beauty would match beauty of the other kind. The rich young Athenians who gathered around **Socrates** found it quite paradoxical that their hero was so intelligent, so brave, so honorable – and so ugly. One of Socrates' main pedagogical acts was to be ugly – and teach those innocent, good-looking young people of how full of paradoxes life really was.

They might not believe Socrates' lesson. Several thousand years later, we are more wary of the enchancements of beauty. We not only split off the "inside" (character, intellect) from the "outside" (appearance); but we are actually surprised when someone who is beautiful is also intelligent and talented.

A beautiful woman, we say in English. But a handsome man. "Handsome" is the masculine equivalent of a compliment which has accumulated certain demeaning overtones (принизливий підтекст), by being reserved for women only.

- *Comment upon underlined words.*
- *Give synonyms to the adjective "beautiful".*
- *Give synonyms to the adjective "ugly".*
- *Are adjectives "beautiful" and "handsome" absolute synonyms? What is the difference between them?*
- *What is more significant for you, inside or outside beauty? Why?*
- *Describe appearance that you consider ideal.*

### HUMOUR TIME

Do you feel like a glass of orange juice?

Why? Do I look like one?

\*\*\*\*\*

A man and a little boy entered a barbershop together. After the man received the full treatment – shave, shampoo, manicure, haircut, etc. – he placed the boy in the chair.

"I'm going to buy a green tie to wear for the parade," he said. "I'll be back in a few minutes."

When the boy's haircut was completed and the man still hadn't returned, the barber said, "Looks like your daddy has forgotten all about you."

"That wasn't my daddy," said the boy. "He just walked up, took me by the hand and said, 'Come on, son, we're going to get a free haircut!'"

## LESSON 3

### House. Flat



*My house is my castle.*

*East or West, home is best.*

*Home is the girl's prison and the woman's workhouse.*

*Home is any four walls that enclose the right person.*

*Love begins by taking care of the closest ones – the ones at home.*

*The strength of a nation derives from the integrity of the home.*

#### TOPICAL VOCABULARY

1. General	1. Загальна лексика
building / to build	споруда / будувати
dwelling / flat / block of flats / house / home	житло / квартира / багатоквартирний будинок / будинок / дім (оселя)
district / residential area / suburb	район / житлова місцевість / околиця, передмістя
story (floor) / two-storied building / to live(ed) on the ground floor ( <i>Br.</i> )	поверх / двоповерхова будівля / жити на першому поверсі
to move(ed) into (out) / housewarming party	заїхати (виїхати) / входини
to let (let; let) a house / to rent(ed) a house / real estate agency / tenant	здавати в оренду будинок / орендувати будинок / агентство з нерухомості / орендар
2. Types of Dwelling	2. Типи житла
hut / country house (weekend house) / skyscraper / palace / castle / barracks	хатина / дача / хмарочос / палац / замок / казарма
3. House parts	3. Складові будинку
roof / attic / chimney / stairs / porch / basement	дах / горище / димар / сходи / ганок / підвал
ceiling / floor / wall / window / window sill / Venetian blind	стеля / підлога / стіна / вікно / підвіконня / жалюзі
front door (back door) / door lock / door-bell spyhole	вхідні двері (запасний вихід) / замок у дверях / дзвінок / вічко
4. Premises and Outhouse	4. Прилегла прибудинкова забудова
yard / garden / kitchen garden / lawn / flowerbed / fence / path / pond / fountain / summer house / green-house / garage / shed (barn)	двір / сад / город / газон / клумба / паркан / стежка / ставок / фонтан / альтанка / теплиця / гараж / сарай
5. Repairing a House	5. Ремонт будинку
construction materials: wood / metal / plastic / brick / concrete / glass / marble / stone	будівельні матеріали: дерево / метал / пластик / цегла / бетон / скло / мармур / камінь
to paint(ed) / painted / wallpaper / linoleum / whitewash(ed)	фарбувати / пофарбований / шпалери / лінолеум / побілка (білити)
6. House Fittings and Housekeeping	6. Оснащення квартири та ведення домашнього господарства
<i>house fittings</i> : modern conveniences / central heating / water supply / lift ( <i>Am</i> : elevator) /	<i>оснащення квартири</i> : сучасні зручності / центральне опалення / водопостачання / ліфт

radiator / fireplace	/ батарея / камін
to keep (kept; kept) house / to sweep (swept; swept) / to wipe(ed) / to polish(ed) / to air(ed) / to clean(ed) the garbage	вести домашнє господарство / замітати / витирати (мити) / натирати до блиску / провітрювати / прибрати сміття
<b>7. Household appliances</b>	<b>7. Побутові прилади</b>
iron / washing machine / vacuum cleaner / dishwasher / TV set with a remote control / hair drier / microwave oven / electric kettle / coffee maker / mixer / refrigerator	праска / пральна машина / пилосос / посудомийна машина / телевізор із дистанційним керуванням / фен / мікрохвильова піч / електричний чайник / кавоварка / міксер / холодильник
<b>8. Rooms and Interiors</b>	<b>8. Кімната та інтер'єр</b>
<i>hall</i> : rack / mirror / chest of draws / rug	<i>передпокій</i> : вішалка / дзеркало / комод / килимок
<i>living room (lounge)</i> : furniture / sofa / cushion / arm-chair / coffee table / carpet / curtain / lamp / standard lamp	<i>вітальня</i> : меблі / диван / подушка / крісло / журнальний столик / килим / штора / лампа / торшер
<i>bedroom</i> : wardrobe / double bed / blanket / coverlet / mattress / pillow / bedside table	<i>спальня</i> : шафа / подвійне ліжко / ковдра / покривало / матрац / подушка / тумбочка
dining room / study / nursery / utility room	їдальня / кабінет / дитяча / комірчина
<i>kitchen</i> : sink / taps / cooker hood / cooker / oven / cupboards	<i>кухня</i> : мийка / крани / витяжка / плита / духовка шафа / буфет (шафки)
<i>bathroom</i> : bath tub / shower cabin / washbasin / toilet	<i>ванна</i> : ванна (резервуар) / душова кабіна / умивальник / туалет

## INTRODUCTORY TEXT

### *From the History of Human Dwellings*

#### Notes to the text:

for industrial purposes – у промислових цілях	within the town walls – у межах міських стін
public and scientific institutions – громадські й наукові установи	shop opening on the street – магазин, що відкривається на вулицю
primitive men (ancient people) – первісні (стародавні) люди	to sell goods – продавати товари
stormy weather – негода	thick walls and narrow windows – товсті стіни та вузькі вікна
to look for protection – шукати захисту	to stand up to enemy attack – протистояти ворожій атаці
to settle in caves – селитися в печерах	dried in the sun – висушені на сонці
primitive stone structures – примітивні кам'яні споруди	hearth – вогнище
to feel a need – відчувати потребу	through the hole in the roof – через отвір в даху

Most of the time people spend within the walls of some building. Houses are built for dwelling; large buildings are constructed **for industrial purposes**; theatres, museums, **public and scientific institutions** are built for cultural activities of the people. The purposes of modern buildings differ widely, but all of them originate from the efforts of **primitive men** to protect themselves from **stormy weather**, wild animals and human enemies.

In prehistoric times men **looked for protection** under the branches of trees; others **settled in caves**, dwelling places that storm and cold could not destroy. On the walls of their caves **ancient people** painted pictures. Such decorated caves are found in Europe, Asia and Africa.

When man began to build a home for himself, caves were imitated in stone structures; trees were taken as a model for huts built of branches. Such **primitive stone structures** and huts are the earliest types of human dwellings.

In the days of early civilization, once men had learnt how to build simple houses for their families, they began **to feel a need** to have a number of different kinds of houses in one place. At first the difference was mainly in size – the leader had a larger hut or tent than the rest of the people. Much later, when men began to build towns, there grew up a difference between town houses and country houses. The streets in towns were very narrow and there was not much place for building **within the town walls**, and therefore houses had to be built higher than they were in the country. A typical town house consisted of **a shop opening on the street** where the man did his work or **sold his goods**, with a kitchen behind and a bedroom above.

The rich people in the country built huge castles with **thick walls and narrow windows**. These castles were built not only as dwellings, but also **to stand up to enemy attack**. The earliest houses of which anything is known are those of ancient Egypt. They were built of bricks **dried in the sun**. Some of them were built around a courtyard or garden with rooms opening into it.

The earliest houses in Britain were round, built of wood. In the centre of the house there was the **hearth**; light came in **through the hole in the roof** above it and through the door because there were no windows.

### 1. Comprehension questions.

1. Where did primitive people look for protection?
2. What are the earliest types of human dwellings?
3. Why were the houses in town higher than in the country?
4. What were the houses in ancient Egypt built of?
5. How did the light come into early English houses?

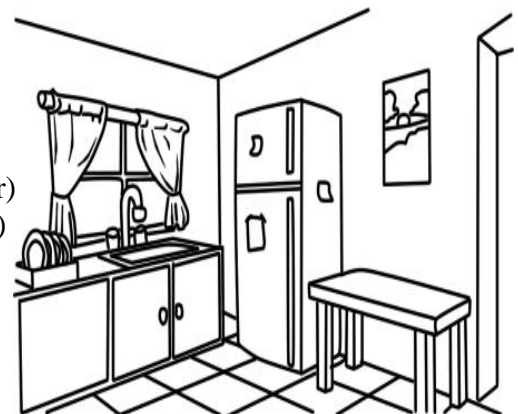
### 2. Find the following words and word combinations in the text, translate them.

Проводити час, культурна діяльність, мета, сучасна будівля, різнитися розмірами, походити (від), намагання, захищатися, дикі тварини, у доісторичні часи, у часи ранньої цивілізації, гілки дерев, місце проживання, руйнувати, імітувати, кам'яні споруди, брати за зразок, намет, вузькі вулиці, типовий міський будинок, величезний замок, багатий, стародавній Єгипет, побудований із цегли, бути побудованим навколо подвір'я, світло.

## VOCABULARY PRACTICE

### 1. Use the right word from those given in brackets.

1. There is a ... in my study room. (table, kitchen, desk)
2. Is there any ... in that room? (cooker, furniture, fridge)
3. There is no ... in the house, it is cold in winter. (mirror, fireplace, telephone)
4. Is there ... in your kitchen? (hot water, garage, computer)
5. There is no balcony in my ... . (garden, room, bathroom)
6. There are two large ... in the sitting room. (TV sets, wardrobes, windows)
7. Is there a ... in your sitting room? (bath, desk, TV set)
8. We have a table and some ... in the dining room. (chairs, bookshelves, beds)
9. Have you got any bookshelves in your ...? (kitchen, garden, study room)
10. They have no ... on Sunday. (visitors, teachers, students)
11. They have two ... near the fireplace. (beds, armchairs, tables)
12. ... the sofa he has a bookcase. (under, to the right of, over)



## 2. Change the following sentences into interrogative and negative.

1. There is a round table in the middle of the room. 2. There are many flowers on the windows. 3. It is a modern two-storied cottage. 4. There is a study in our flat. 5. I have a room of my own. 6. There are many fruit-trees in our garden. 7. We must go home now. 8. Pete lives on the third floor. 9. The furniture in my room is modern and quite new. 10. On the right you can see a standard-lamp. 11. There is a sofa in the corner of the room. 12. There are many English books in the bookcase. 13. The floor is covered with a beautiful thick carpet. 14. There are all modern conveniences in my aun's flat. 15. The clock on the wall is five minutes slow.

## 3. Complete the following sentences.

1. In front of the house ... 2. I live in a flat. We have three rooms. They are .... 3. In the middle of the room .... 4. On the walls .... 5. On the left .... 6. To the right of the TV-set ... 7. Next to the sofa ... 8. Next to the door ... 9. In the kitchen .... 10. In the bathroom ... 11. In the study .... 12. Next to the ... there is ... 13. There is ... between .... and .... 14. To the right of the ... 15. In the sitting-room ... 16. Opposite the fireplace .... 17. Under the window ... 18. In the chest of drawers ... 19. In the sideboard ... 20. At the back of the house ...

## 4. Match the common house objects with their description.

- |                 |                                                                                    |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| a. TV-set       | 1. Where you hang your clothes                                                     |
| b. desk         | 2. More than one person can sit on this, comfortably, perhaps to watch TV          |
| c. mirror       | 3. Where you keep milk, butter and other foods cold                                |
| d. carpet       | 4. Where you keep paper and pens, and write letters                                |
| e. refrigerator | 5. Where you keep plates, cups or almost anything                                  |
| f. wardrobe     | 6. Where you bake cakes, biscuits, etc.                                            |
| g. clock        | 7. When you look at this flat piece of glass, you can see yourself reflected in it |
| h. sofa         | 8. A thing that shows you the time                                                 |
| i. oven         | 9. A thick flat piece of cloth which you use to cover the floors and stairs        |
| j. cupboard     | 10. Usually you switch it on and watch or listen to different programmes           |

## 5. Read and translate the dialogues.

*Jack:* Hello, Pete!

*Pete:* Nice to see you. Come in, please.

*Jack:* Oh, this is a wonderful new flat!

*Pete:* Yes, it is, and so close to the centre.

*Jack:* How many rooms are there in your fiat?

*Pete:* Come and see... This is the kitchen, the bathroom is on the right.

*Jack:* Oh, the kitchen is so large! I like big kitchens.

*Pete:* And here is the dining room. We have little furniture here. We want to have some armchairs, a sofa and some more things.

*Jack:* Are you on the phone? (У вас є телефон?)

*Pete:* It's a pity, we aren't yet... Let me introduce you to my wife.

*Pete's wife:* How do you do. I hope you'll enjoy our housewarming party.

\*\*\*\*\*

*Client:* Good morning, Sir. I am going to visit the flat for rent, how much is it?

*Agent:* It's 300 euros charges included.

*Client:* Do you want a deposit?

*Agent:* Yes, I want it, a 500 euros deposit.

*Client:* When is the rent to be paid?

*Agent:* It must be paid the 1<sup>st</sup> of each month in advance.

*Client:* Is it a furnished flat?

*Agent:* Yes, it is. It includes all necessary facilities.



## 6. Translate the sentences into English.

1. Я живу у великому новому будинку. 2. Перед будинком є невеликий садок. 3. Будинок мені подобається, а садок – не дуже. Мені більше до вподоби великі сади із фруктовими деревами. 4. У центрі кімнати стоїть великий круглий стіл. Зліва – піаніно, два крісла й торшер. 5. На стіні – три картини і великий настінний годинник. 6. У вітальні – два великих вікна. 7. Кімната вашого друга велика? – Ні, вона маленька, але дуже світла. 8. Якого кольору стіни у вашій вітальні? – Вони жовті. 9. Де ваш стіл? – Він біля вікна. 10. На якому поверсі ваша квартира? – На третьому. Мені не подобаються перший та останній поверхи. 11. У якій кімнаті вони зазвичай приймають гостей? – У вітальні. Там затишно, світло та зручно. 12. На моєму столі нічого немає. А на твоєму столі є щось? 13. Усі картини, що ви бачите в цій кімнаті, написані моїм другом. Він художник і часто дарує мені свої роботи. 14. Вам подобаються багатоповерхові будинки? – Щодо мене, я надаю перевагу невеликому одноповерховому будинку у передмісті перед будь-яким багатоповерховим будинком у центрі міста. 15. Більшість англійців мешкають у маленьких будиночках, розташованих близько один до одного.

## 7. Read the text and do the activities below.

### Reading houses

Look at a house from the outside, and you can guess what type of people live in it. Well, perhaps this is not always true. Some people can live in unusual houses. Some people live on boats, in tree houses or in tents.

For example, imagine you are in an old part of an industrial city in the UK. Cities like London, Manchester, Liverpool or Newcastle. There is a river, or a canal, which was important for transport in the past, before the railways were built. There are a lot of enormous buildings near the water. They were built in the 19th century. They must be industrial places to store things for import or export.

But... look more closely! There are expensive cars parked outside some of these buildings. And on the corner of the street there is a French restaurant, with a wine bar opposite. And just round the corner there is a shop with beautiful furniture. And here are more shops... Who buys these things?

Answer: the people who now live in these old buildings. Old warehouses like these offer two things that are difficult to find in modern houses: space, and a view. Over the past 10 years, more and more architects have converted buildings like this into apartments, which have big rooms, high ceilings... and often a terrace which looks onto the water.

So, the old parts of many of Britain's industrial cities now have a new life. They are not dead anymore, with empty warehouses and disused factories. You can buy factory space and make yourself a home in it. And the people who live in them can walk or cycle to work.

Or...with so much space they can work from home with a computer and a modem! Buildings don't always tell us about lifestyles immediately. So, next time you see an old station, a deserted church or a village school in Britain, look carefully for the clues. You may get a surprise.

### a) Are these sentences true or false?

- These buildings were built recently.
- They are very spacious.
- Britain's city centers do not have people living in them.
- Some people in Britain live and work in the same place.
- Some people in Britain live in churches.

### b) Answer the following questions.

- What type of house is being described?
- What are the key features of this type of house?



➤ Where can you find such homes?

**8. Writing options. Try to make a story on the offered topics.**

1. Do you like the place where you are living? Why or why not?
2. What is your favorite room in your house? Why?
3. What do you like about your home? What don't you like?
4. If you could change anything about your present home, what would it be?
5. What is the convenient location for your dream house? What would it be like inside and out?
6. What things in your home couldn't you live without?
7. Would you prefer to live in a house or an apartment? Why?
8. What makes "a house" into "a home"?
9. How can houses be made more environmentally friendly?
10. Give some reasons why people become homeless.
11. Is it better to rent or buy? Give reasons for your answer.
12. What do you think houses in the future will be like?



## HUMOUR TIME

A Kentuckian came home and found his house on fire, rushed next door, telephoned the fire department and shouted, "Hurry over here. My house is on fire!"

"OK," replied the fireman, "how do we get there?"

"Say, don't you still have those big red trucks?"

\*\*\*\*\*

Nan: How do you like your new studio apartment?

Dan: I have no room for complaint.

\*\*\*\*\*

The Pope dies and goes to heaven. When he gets there, Saint Peter shows him to his new quarters which turn out to be a tiny one bedroom apartment. The Pope is horrified and wants to know why he doesn't have the penthouse apartment, which is huge. Saint Peter informs him that the resident of the penthouse is a lawyer. "A lawyer," says the Pope. "But I'm the Pope, surely I'm more important." "With respect Sir," says Saint Peter, "We have lots of Pope's up here, but we only have ONE lawyer!"

\*\*\*\*\*

A property manager of an apartment complex was showing a unit to prospective tenants and asking the usual questions

"Professionally employed?" he asked.

"We're a military family," the wife answered.

"Children?"

"Oh, yes, ages nine and twelve," she answered proudly.

"Animals?"

"Oh, no," she said earnestly. "They're very well behaved."

## LESSON 4

### Time and Dates



*Time discovers truth.*

*Lost time is never found again.*

*Today is the tomorrow you worried about yesterday.*

*For every minute spent in organizing, an hour is earned.*

*We say we waste time, but that is impossible. We waste ourselves.*

*Time is more valuable than money. You can get more money, but you cannot get more time.*

#### TOPICAL VOCABULARY

<b>1. Time means</b>	<b>1. Часові прилади</b>
timepiece / clock / alarm-clock / watch / sundial / sandglass	хронометр / годинник настінний / будильник / наручний годинник / сонячний / пісочний
face / hand / figures on the face of a watch	циферблат / стрілка годинника / цифри на циферблаті
<b>2. Periods of time</b>	<b>2. Часові проміжки</b>
today / yesterday / tomorrow	сьогодні / вчора / завтра
the day before yesterday / the day after tomorrow / two days ago / in two days	позавчора / післязавтра / два дні тому / через два дні
second / minute / hour / day / week / fortnight / month / year / century / age / era	секунда / хвилина / година / день / тиждень / два тижні / місяць / рік / вік (100 років) / вік (історичний / період) / ера
dawn (daybreak) / sunrise / sunset / midday / (noon=12.00) / midnight=24.00	світанок / схід сонця / захід сонця / полудень / північ
a.m.=ante meridiem 0.00-12.00 / p.m.=post meridiem 12.00-24.00	до опівдня / після опівдня
date / What's the date? (What date is it today?)	дата / Яка сьогодні дата?
<b>days of the week:</b> Sunday / Monday / Tuesday / Wednesday / Thursday / Friday / Saturday	<b>дні тижня:</b> неділя / понеділок / вівторок / середа / четвер / п'ятниця / субота
<b>months of the year:</b> spring months: March / April / May summer months: June / July / August autumn months: September / October / November winter months: December / January / February	<b>місяці року:</b> весняні місяці: березень / квітень / травень літні місяці: червень / липень / серпень осінні місяці: вересень / жовтень / листопад зимові місяці: грудень / січень / лютий
<b>3. Time passing (duration)</b>	<b>3. Тривалість часу</b>
to last(ed) for / to take / It takes me...to do smth.	тривати / займати / забирати (час) / (Мені потрібно) ..., щоб ...
two hours ride / ten minutes walk	дві години їзди / десять хвилин пішки
<b>4. Time phrases</b> <b>By the watch:</b>	<b>4. Часові вислови</b> <b>За годинником:</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>to tell the time / to measure the time</li> <li>to wind (wound; wound) the watch</li> <li>to set the watch by the radio</li> <li>to go (went; gone) right / wrong</li> <li>to be fast / slow</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>сказати, котра година / вимірювати час</li> <li>завести годинник</li> <li>заводити годинник за радіо</li> <li>йти правильно / неправильно</li> <li>поспішати / відставати</li> </ul>

• to gain(ed) / to lose (lost; lost) 5 minutes	• поспішати / відставати на 5 хвилин
to come (to be) in time / to be late (for)	прийти вчасно / запізнюватися
to be short of time / to have no time	бути обмеженим у часі
What time is it? / What's the time, please?	Котра година?
It is late / It's still early / It's high time	Уже пізно / Ще рано / Давно пора
Wait a moment, please. / Just a minute, please.	Зачекайте хвилинку, будь ласка.
<b>5. Approximate time</b>	<b>5. Приблизний час</b>
• for ages	• сто років / довго
• recently / lately	• нещодавно / останнім часом
• a long time ago	• давно
• the other day (=a few days ago)	• нещодавно, на днях
• from time to time	• час від часу
• some other time	• іншим разом
<b>6. Prepositions of time</b>	<b>6. Прийменники часу</b>
at (at a certain time)	о ...
at 8 o'clock / at 3.30 / at midnight	о восьмій / о пів на четверту / о півночі
on (on a day)	у ...
on Monday / on July 14 / on the second day	у понеділок / 14 липня / наступного дня
in (in a period)	в, у, через ...
in the morning / in April / in 2010 / in a week	уранці / у квітні / у 2010 / через тиждень

## INTRODUCTORY TEXT

### Notes to the text:

to take for granted – сприймати як належне	on a yearly basis – на щорічній основі
arbitrary – довільний	ability to predict seasons – здатність
obvious starting point – очевидна відправна точка	передбачати пори року
to rotate on axis – обертатися навколо осі	essential – необхідний, суттєвий
to be tuned in to cycle – бути налаштованим на цикл	to plant crops – сіяти зернові
shadow – тінь	to gain – набувати, одержувати
	fairly closely – досить близько
	to be replaced (with) – бути заміненим

### Time's Origins

Time is something that most of us **take for granted**. We can't see or sense time – it just happens. People found ways to measure time long ago, but these ways are totally **arbitrary**. Let's study the main principles of dividing time.

The day is an **obvious starting point** for time. It's the amount of time necessary for the planet Earth **to rotate one time on its axis**. A day consists of a period of sunlight followed by night. Our bodies are **tuned in to this cycle** through sleep, so each morning we wake up to a new day. Our day consists of two 12-hour periods, for a total of 24 hours. An hour consists of 60 minutes. A minute consists of 60 seconds.

We use clocks and watches to divide the day into smaller parts. The earliest known timepiece is a sundial. It was an Egyptian **shadow** clock dating from the 8th century BC.

We use calendars to group days together into larger parts – weeks, months and years. Man created the concept of a year because seasons repeat **on a yearly basis**. **The ability to predict seasons** is **essential** to life if you are **planting crops** or trying to prepare for winter. A year is the amount of time it takes for the Earth to orbit the sun one time. It takes about 365 days to do that.



The moon is where the concept of a month comes from. The Romans started with a 10-month calendar, borrowed from the Greeks. In 46 BC, Julius Caesar changed the calendar. Ignoring the moon the year was divided into 12 months having 30 or 31 days, except February with 28 days. Every fourth year (a leap year) February **gains** an extra day.

Days, months and years all have a natural basis. The Romans gave names to the days of the week based on the sun, the moon and the names of the five planets known to the Romans: Sun, Moon, Mars, Mercury, Jupiter, Venus, Saturn. These names carried through to European languages **fairly closely**, and in English the names of Sunday, Monday and Saturday made it straight through. The other four names in English **were replaced with** names from Anglo-Saxon gods.

### 1. Comprehension questions.

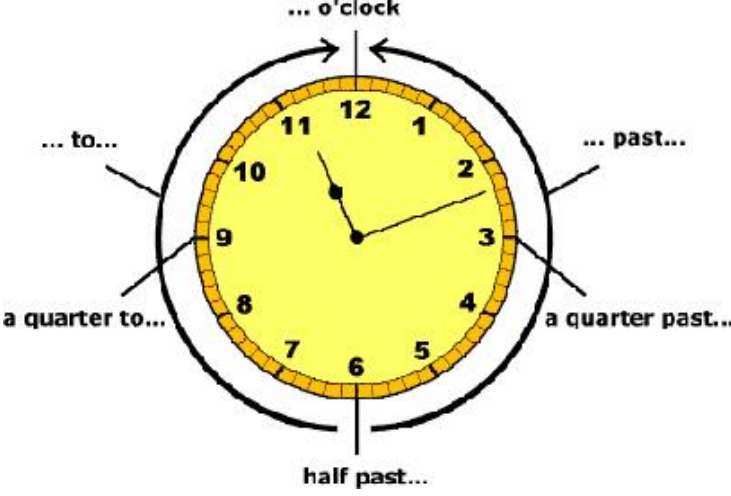
1. How can we define a day?
2. How many hours are there in a day?
3. Where and when was the first timepiece made?
4. Why is the ability to predict the seasons so important to people?
5. How can we define a year?
6. How many days are there in a year?
7. Who started dividing a year into 12 months?
8. Whose names do the days of the week have?

### 2. Find the following words and word combinations in the text, translate them.

Відчувати час, відбуватися, вимірювати час, необхідна кількість, обертатися навколо своєї осі, складатися (з), період сонячного світла, використовувати календар, пора року, згруповувати дні, поняття року, необхідний для життя, готуватися до зими, намагатися, обертатися навколо сонця, місяць (супутник Землі), римляни, запозичити у греків, не звертаючи уваги на місяць, високосний рік, отримувати додатковий день, природне походження, перенести в європейські мови, боги.

## VOCABULARY PRACTICE

### 1. Telling the time. Learn how to do it correctly.

	<p><b>past</b></p> <p>3.00 – it's three o'clock sharp</p> <p>3.05 – it's five minutes <b>past</b> three</p> <p>3.10 – it's ten minutes <b>past</b> three</p> <p>3.15 – it's a quarter <b>past</b> three</p> <p>3.20 – it's twenty minutes <b>past</b> three</p> <p>3.25 – it's .....</p> <p>3.30 – it's half <b>past</b> three</p> <p><b>to</b></p> <p>3.35 – it's twenty-five minutes <b>to</b> four</p> <p>3.40 – it's twenty minutes <b>to</b> four</p> <p>3.45 – it's a quarter <b>to</b> four</p> <p>3.50 – it's ten minutes <b>to</b> four</p> <p>3.55 – it's five minutes <b>to</b> four</p> <p>4.00 – it's four o'clock sharp</p>
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### Remember:

- We can say *quarter past / to six* or *a quarter past / to six*. We don't say *fifteen past six*. For other times, we say *minutes: nineteen minutes past six* not *nineteen past six*.

- We can also say the time like this: *six fifteen, two thirty, ten forty, six nineteen*, etc. but for 6.05 we say: *six oh five* not *six five*.
- In American English: 10.05 – five after ten.

## 2. Tell what's the time:

### a) in words

9.30, 7.10, 5.00, 10.20, 4.05, 5.45, 11.15, 2.34, 3.52, 8.02 a.m. / p.m.

### b) write the time in figures

a quarter past three, half past five, a quarter to six, twenty-five to nine, twenty to eleven, ten to four, five to nine, twenty-three minutes to six, twenty-five to two.

## 3. Put these words in order.

a minute

a year

a day

a week

an hour

a second

a month

## 4. Read the following dates.

9.05.1945

24.08.1991

28.06.2010

22.01.2001

4.07.1776

31.12.1805

## 5. Complete the sentences with *at, on, in*.

1. Let's meet ... six o'clock. 2. He was born ... July. 3. She'll be at work ... Friday. 4. I went there ... 2006. 5. We met ... Christmas day. 6. They drove to Rochester ... September 15<sup>th</sup>. 7. We arrived in this country ... October. 8. I love to go shopping ... Christmas time. 9. We get up early ... the morning. 10. Do you dream ... night? 11. What do you like doing ... Fridays? 12. He's working on his homework ... the moment. 13. I lived in the US ... the 1990s. 14. I'll see you ... a few weeks. 15. We like going to the movies ... the evening.

## 6. Match the words in bold with their meaning written in the box.

*I am too busy / many times, repeatedly / do it now! / I enjoy myself / late or overdue / do something unnecessary / experience difficulty / a scheduled time / business comes first / be not busy / inconvenience / expired or finished*

1. *It's time to go* to the dentist for your annual check-up.
2. *It's high time you learn* to iron your clothes for yourself.
3. If you are thinking of tidying your room, *there's no time like the present*.
4. *I've told you time and time again* that I don't take sugar.
5. Hello, it's Sam here. I hope I haven't *caught you at a bad time*.
6. I wasn't really looking forward to this trip but actually *I'm having the time of my life*.
7. *I'm having a hard time* getting to the shops and back each day.
8. I'd like to go on talking all day, but *as they say, time is money*.
9. I'm sorry, Sam, *I just can't spare the time* to help you with the clearing up.
10. *If you've ever got time on your hands*, come up and visit us on the 3<sup>rd</sup> floor.
11. Sorry, *your time's up* now. Put your pens down and stop writing.
12. *You are wasting your time* calling me to say you are sorry. Goodbye, Sam.

## 7. Read and translate the following dialogues.

- What time is it now?
- It's a quarter to five.
- Is it? Isn't your watch too fast?
- No, it isn't. It's even slow a little bit.
- I'm afraid I'm late for my lectures.

\*\*\*\*\*

- It's about time we make a move.
- Really? Can't we stay a bit longer?
- I'm afraid not. You see, we promised our foreign relatives we'd be back by 12 at the latest.
- I see. What a pity.
- Thank you for a lovely meal.
- I'm glad you enjoyed it. You must come again some other time.

\*\*\*\*\*

- Are you doing anything special on Saturday night?
- No, I don't think so. Why?
- Well, I'm having a little party and I'd like you to come.
- Thank you. That would be very nice. When?
- Half past seven.
- Fine. I'll see you then.

### **8. Speak about yourself and your country completing these sentences.**

1. On weekdays I usually get up at ... and leave home at ... .
2. I always clean my teeth in ... .
3. I don't go to University on ... .
4. I usually have a holiday on / in ... .
5. I have been in my present University / job for ... .
6. I have been studying English since ... .
7. I haven't spoken English since ... .
8. It takes me ... to get to University / work.
9. You can't get a driving license until ... .
10. It rains a lot during ... .

### **9. Translate the text into Ukrainian, give it a title.**

In the modern calendar, we label all years with B.C. (before Christ) or A.D. (anno domini, or "in the year of our lord"). There is no "zero" year – in this system, the year Christ was born is 1 A.D., and the year preceding it is 1 B.C.

This practice was first suggested in the sixth century A.D., and was adopted by the pope of that time. It took quite a while for it to become a worldwide standard, however. Russia and Turkey, for example, did not convert to the modern calendar and year scheme until the 20th century.

### **10. Writing options. Try to make a story on the offered topics.**

1. Explain the saying "Time is money".
2. Explain why the time is not the same all over the world.
3. People often say that time flies, time changes and we can't turn back the time. Express your opinion on the topic.
4. Express your opinion on "Some people are early birds others are night owls".
5. Does waiting for something bother you?
6. Do you think you manage your time wisely?
7. If you could stop time, what would you do and why?
8. If time travel were possible, which period of world history would you like to return to? Why?

### **HUMOUR TIME**

A blonde asked someone what time it was, and they told her it was 4:45. The blonde, with a puzzled look on her face replied:

– You know, it's the weirdest thing, I have been asking that question all day, and each time I get a different answer."

\*\*\*\*\*



- Why did your sister shoot the alarm clock?
- Because she felt like killing time.

\*\*\*\*\*

- What time is it when your watchdog lets a robber take the family silver?
- It's time to get a new watchdog.

\*\*\*\*\*

- Why is the time in the USA behind that of England?
- Because England was discovered before the USA !



## LESSON 5

### Weather and Seasons



*When snow falls, nature listens.*

*Weather forecast for tonight: dark.*

*Snowmen fall from heaven... unassembled.*

*Some people walk in the rain, others just get wet.*

*If you want to see the sunshine, you have to weather the storm.*

*Wherever you go, no matter what the weather, always bring your own sunshine.*

#### TOPICAL VOCABULARY

1. General	1. Загальна лексика
weather / weather forecast	погода / прогноз погоди
to affect(ed) (to influence, to impact) / to depend(ed) on (upon)	впливати на / залежати від
to clear(ed) up / to get colder (milder)	прояснюватися / холоднішати (теплішати)
air humidity	вологість повітря
degree / Fahrenheit / Celsius (Centigrade)	градус / за Фаренгейтом / за Цельсієм
midsummer Day (22 <sup>nd</sup> of June)	літнє сонцестояння, 22 червня
midwinter Day (22 <sup>nd</sup> of December)	зимове сонцестояння, 22 грудня
2. Natural Features	2. Природі особливості
islands – e.g. Sicily, Corsica	острови – <i>напр.</i> Сицилія, Корсика
group of islands – e.g. the Bahamas	групи островів – <i>напр.</i> Багамські
oceans – e.g. the Atlantic Ocean	океани – <i>напр.</i> Атлантичний
seas – e.g. the Red Sea, the Dead Sea	моря – <i>напр.</i> Червоне, Мертве
lakes – e.g. Lake Tanganyika, Lake Titicaca	озера – <i>напр.</i> Тітікака
ivers – e.g. the Nile, the Mississippi	річки – <i>напр.</i> Ніл, Міссісіпі
falls – e.g. Niagara Falls	водоспади – <i>напр.</i> Ніагарський
mountains – e.g. Mount Everest	гори – <i>напр.</i> гора Еверест (Джомолунгма)
mountain ranges – e.g. the Andes, the Alps	гірські хребти – <i>напр.</i> Анди, Альпи
jungles – e.g. the Amazon (the Amazon rainforest)	джунглі – <i>напр.</i> Амазонка (тропічний, вологий ліс)
deserts – e.g. the Sahara, the Gobi	пустелі – <i>напр.</i> Сахара, Гобі
3. Seasons' Features	3. Особливості пір року
<b>spring</b> months: March, April, May	<b>весняні</b> місяці: березень, квітень, травень
to awake (awoke; awoken) from winter sleep	прокидатися від зимової сплячки
to shine (shone; shone) brightly	яскраво світити
days become longer	дні стають довшими
snow melt(ed)s / puddles	сніг тане / калюжі
to bud / to blossom(ed)	випускати бруньки / квітнути
fresh green grass / green leaves	свіжа зелена трава / зелене листя
twitter of birds / revival of nature	спів птахів / відродження природи
<b>summer</b> months: June, July, August	<b>літні</b> місяці: червень, липень, серпень
hot weather	спекотна погода
farmer's busy season	у фермера багато роботи
to cut (cut; cut) the grass / to make the hay	зрізати (косити) траву / скласти сіно
to pick(ed) mushrooms / berries	збирати гриби / ягоди



to gather(ed) flowers / dew on flowers to have (had; had) storms with lightning / thunder / hail	рвати квіти / роса на квітах мати бурю із блискавкою / громом / градом
<b>autumn (fall) months:</b> September, October, November Indian summer: warm weather / soft breeze cool weather / it often rains / it drizzles / it's muddy and wet sky is covered with heavy clouds season of harvesting / to gather crops to ripen(ed) in orchards leaves fall off birds fly (flew; flown) away	<b>осінні місяці:</b> вересень, жовтень, листопад бабине літо: тепла погода / теплий вітер прохолодна погода / часто йде дощ / мряка / брудно і вогко небо вкрите важкими хмарами пора врожаю / збирати врожай достигати у плодових садах листя падає птахи відлітають
<b>winter months:</b> December, January, February the sun shines rarely / it rises late and sets early low temperature / it drops to zero lakes (rivers, streams) are frozen roads are covered with ice (deep snow) bare trees / a piercing wind blizzard (snow-storm) to snow heavily / snowflakes / slush to make a snowman / to play snowballs	<b>зимові місяці:</b> грудень, січень, лютий  сонце світить рідко / встає пізно та сідає рано низька температура / падає до нуля озера (річки, струмки) замерзають дороги вкриті кригою (глибоким снігом) голі дерева / пронизливий вітер завірюха (хуртовина) снігопад / сніжинки / талий сніг ліпити сніговика / грати в сніжки
<b>4. Weather Conditions</b>	<b>4. Погодні умови</b>
<b>weather:</b> <b>1) positive:</b> calm / fine (good) / warm / clear / sunny <b>2) negative:</b> bad / cloudy / rainy / windy / heat / changeable (unstable) / wet (humid) / cold / cool (chilly) / snowy / windless / stuffy / frosty / foggy (misty) / nasty (awful) / severe / dull (gloomy) / dry	<b>погода:</b> <b>1) позитивні прикметники:</b> спокійна / хороша / тепла / ясна / сонячна <b>2) негативні прикметники:</b> погана / хмарна / дощова / вітряна спекотна / мінлива (нестабільна) / волога / холодна / прохолодна / сніжна / без вітру / задуха / морозна / туманна / огидна (бридка) / сувора / похмура / суха
rain / rainfall (shower) / rainbow	дощ / злива / веселка
thunderstorm / thunder / lightning / hail /	гроза / грім / блискавка / град
It looks like rain / It's pouring down rain (It's raining cats and dogs) / It's drizzling / I'm wet through (I'm wet to the skin)	схоже на дощ / Ллє як із відра / Мряка / Я змок до нитки
snowfall / snowstorm / blizzard	снігопад / завірюха / хуртовина (буран)
<b>wind:</b> breeze / strong wind / gale / hurricane	<b>вітер:</b> бриз / сильний вітер / шторм (буря) / ураган
<b>5. Climate</b>	<b>5. Клімат</b>
tropical / subtropical / insular / continental / moderate	тропічний / субтропічний / острівний / континентальний / помірний
<b>6. Disasters:</b>	<b>6. Катастрофи</b>
volcanic eruption / earthquake / drought	виверження вулкану / землетрус / посуха
flood / tsunami (seismic sea wave)	потоп / цунамі (гігантські сейсмічні хвилі)
hurricane / tornado / sandstorm	ураган / торнадо / піщана буря
avalanche (snow-slip)	сніжна лавина
mud flow (torrent) / landslide (landslip)	зсув ґрунту

## INTRODUCTORY TEXT

### Notes to the text:

weather phenomena – природні явища	for millennia – тисячоліттями
to occur – траплятися, відбуватися	collecting quantitative data – збір кількісних даних
precipitation activity – випадання опадів	the current state – поточний стан
average – пересічний, середній, звичайний	to evolve – розвиватися
bare trees – голі дерева	a variety of end users – багато кінцевих користувачів
the application of science – застосування науки	property – власність, майно
to predict – передбачати	
a given location – в даному місці	

Weather is the state of the atmosphere, to the degree that it is hot or cold, wet or dry, calm or stormy, clear or cloudy. Most **weather phenomena occur** in the troposphere, just below the stratosphere. Weather refers, generally, to day-to-day temperature and **precipitation activity**, whereas climate is the term for the **average** atmospheric conditions over longer periods of time.

Weather differs from season to season. In winter we spend more time at home, because it is cold outside. Ponds, lakes, rivers and streams are frozen and the roads are sometimes covered with slippery ice or deep snow. We may get fog, sleet and frost. The **trees are bare** because bitter winds stripped them of all leaves.

In spring nature awakens from her long winter sleep. The trees are filled with new life. The weather gets gradually warmer. Fields and meadows are covered with fresh green grass. The sky is blue and cloudless. At night millions of stars shine in the darkness.

When summer comes the weather gets warmer and sometimes it's very hot. It's the farmer's busy season. He works in his fields from morning till night. Sometimes the sky is covered with heavy clouds. There are storms with thunder, lightning and hail.

Autumn brings the harvest time. The days get shorter and the nights longer. The woods turn yellow and brown, leaves begin to fall from the trees. The sky is grey and it often rains.

Weather forecasting is **the application of science** and technology **to predict** the state of the atmosphere for a future time and **a given location**. People have been predicting the weather informally **for millennia**, and formally since at least the nineteenth century. Weather forecasts are made by **collecting quantitative data** about **the current state** of the atmosphere and using scientific understanding of atmospheric processes to project how the atmosphere will **evolve**.

There are **a variety of end users** to weather forecasts. Weather warnings are used to protect life and **property**. Forecasts based on temperature and precipitation are important to agriculture. On an everyday basis, people use weather forecasts to determine what to wear on a given day.

### 1. Comprehension questions.

1. What is the weather?
2. What is the climate?
3. Where do most weather phenomena occur?
4. What is the weather like in winter?
5. Describe the peculiarities of spring weather.
6. Why is summer the farmer's busy season?
7. What is the weather like in autumn?
8. What is weather forecasting?
9. When did people start to predict the weather?
10. Why do we need weather forecasts?

## 2. Find the following words and word combinations in the text, translate them.

Атмосферний стан, загалом, щоденна температура, звичні атмосферні умови, проводити час вдома, слизький лід, покриватися, дощ зі снігом, різкий вітер, позбавляти листя, довгий зимовий сон, сяяти в темноті, поступово теплішати, безхмарний, покриватися свіжою травою, з ранку до вечора, вадкі хмари, град, час збору врожаю, застосування досягнень науки і техніки, прогнозувати стан атмосфери, наукове розуміння, з метою захисту життя та майна, опади, на повсякденній основі, сільське господарство, одягати.

## VOCABULARY PRACTICE

### 1. Match the English weather words with their Ukrainian equivalents.

- |                 |                       |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 1. dew          | a) мороз              |
| 2. forecast     | b) легкий вітерець    |
| 3. blizzard     | c) повінь             |
| 4. thunderstorm | d) роса               |
| 5. hurricane    | e) засуха             |
| 6. earthquake   | f) блискавка          |
| 7. humidity     | g) злива              |
| 8. breeze       | h) імла, серпанок     |
| 9. rainbow      | i) гроза              |
| 10. shower      | j) прогноз погоди     |
| 11. frost       | k) вологість          |
| 12. flood       | l) заметіль, завірюха |
| 13. lightning   | m) ураган             |
| 14. mist        | n) землетрус          |
| 15. drought     | o) райдуга, веселка   |

### 2. Make the given statements opposite.

**Model:** We are having *rough* weather. – We are having *calm* weather.

1. The weather is really nasty today.
2. It's ten degrees below zero.
3. The roads are dry today, it's not dangerous to drive.
4. The sky is clear.
5. The weather will keep fine.
6. It was a bright day.
7. It's 30 degrees in the shade.
8. There is a bad fog in the mountains.
9. The weather is windless today.
10. The frost is going to kill all the flowers in the garden.

### 3. Complete the sentences, as in the model.

**Model:** The Nile is a *river*.

1. The Atlantic is .....
2. The Alps are .....
3. The Sahara is .....
4. The Amazon is .....
5. The Mediterranean is .....
6. The Bahamas is .....
7. Africa is .....
8. Crete and Corsica are .....
9. Everest is the highest .....in the world.
10. Michigan and Erie are two of the great .....

**4. Match the words and their definitions.**

1. forecast	a. the amount of rain, snow etc. that falls
2. precipitation	b. rain, snow, sleet, or hail that falls to / condenses on the ground
3. rain	c. weather conditions of a place or area
4. mist	d. a light gentle wind
5. weather	e. thick water vapor which is difficult to see through
6. climate	f. water falling in drops from the clouds
7. fog	g. small dirty pool of rain water
8. drizzle	h. water vapor at or near the earth's surface, less thick than fog
9. shower (downpour)	i. a heavy fall of rain
10. breeze	j. rain in small fine drops, thin continuous rain
11. puddle	k. conditions over a particular area, at a specific time with reference to sunshine, temperature, rain and so on

**5. Fill in the gaps with the words from the box.**

*atmosphere / fog / evaporate / hail / rainfall / shower / frost / windless / gale / thunder / lightning / damp / blistering / mild / humidity*

1. The radio has given a \_\_\_\_\_ and icy warning for car drivers tomorrow.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ is frozen rain drops which fall as little hard balls.
3. The day was \_\_\_\_\_, without moving clouds.
4. The sun will \_\_\_\_\_ the water.
5. He could hear \_\_\_\_\_ over the hills.
6. The \_\_\_\_\_ in the air makes my old bones hurt.
7. The \_\_\_\_\_ in the room was hot and smoky.
8. The \_\_\_\_\_ has been measured and found higher than ever.
9. The annual \_\_\_\_\_ there is only four centimeters.
10. Yellow \_\_\_\_\_ filled the streets and hid the daylight.
11. He was out too long in the \_\_\_\_\_ heat of the sun.
12. It has been a \_\_\_\_\_ winter this year.
13. A great flash of \_\_\_\_\_ lit the night sky.
14. The old tree was blown down in a \_\_\_\_\_.
15. I went out and was caught in a \_\_\_\_\_.

**6. Translate the following dialogues in English.**

- Дощ іде?
- No, it isn't. It has stopped raining.
- Думаю, погода зміниться.
- I think so.

\*\*\*\*\*

- Сьогодні мороз?
- Так, 15 градусів нижче від нуля.
- Не забудь одягти шубу.
- I won't.

\*\*\*\*\*

- Погода чудова, чи не так?
- Так. Дуже тепло і сонячно.
- Let's go for a walk.
- Я не проти.

**7. Read and translate the following dialogues into Ukrainian.**

A: What's the weather like?

*B:* I don't know. I just woke up.  
*A:* Why don't you look outside?  
*B:* Okay. It looks like rain.  
*A:* Why do you say that?  
*B:* The sky is gray.  
*A:* Is it raining right now?  
*B:* No.  
*A:* How do you know?  
*B:* The street isn't wet.  
*A:* I have to go shopping today.  
*B:* You'd better take an umbrella.

\*\*\*\*\*

*A:* What beastly weather! It is simply pouring!  
*B:* My Grandma used to say that it was raining cats and dogs. Such a funny phrase!  
*A:* It is. But I've got wet through.  
*B:* I've seen on Internet that there will be a heat spell later this week.  
*A:* Oh, I don't mind the rain. It is quite pleasant to walk with a good raincoat on. And good Wellington boots, of course.  
*B:* And you call this July! Where is the summer?  
*A:* Oh, we had it last Thursday after dinner.

\*\*\*\*\*

*Sally:* I think a drought has set in. It hasn't rained a drop for months.  
*Ethan:* I think so, too, but didn't it rain last month?  
*Sally:* It did rain last month, but the rainfall was only half the monthly average.  
*Ethan:* Oh. That bad?!  
*Sally:* That's right. It's really bad. I'm really concerned though not panicked yet.  
*Ethan:* I don't blame you. The pastures have browned out even before the summer hasn't arrived.  
*Sally:* Yeah, and the soil has been baked so hard that the plow can't even break the soil.  
*Ethan:* Looks like it's going to be an ongoing thing that would get worse each day.  
*Sally:* Yeah. If it doesn't rain, it's going to get critical.

### **8. Read the text about English weather. Compare it with the Ukrainian climate.**

When two English people meet, their first remarks after they greet each other will be about weather. "It's a lovely morning, isn't it?" or "Isn't it hot today?" and the other person will answer, "Yes, the heat will hopefully last till the end of the day; we have never had such a fine summer."

Or perhaps the day is dull; it is raining a little, the sky is grey, and everyone is wearing a raincoat or carrying an umbrella. As the cars and buses go along the street they splash the water and mud on passers-by. Gradually it gets dark; a thick fog is spreading over London. The lamps are lit in the streets and in the shops and offices; cars and buses put on their lights and can only crawl along.

As one friend meets another he says: "Isn't it a beastly day?" – "Yes, isn't it?" – the other answers.

Then winter comes. After a heavy fall of snow the ground is white. There is a hard frost. It is just the day for a good country walk. It is still freezing hard and the ponds are frozen over. There are crowds of people on them sliding and skating, and here is a merry group of schoolboys having a snowball fight. It is very pleasant while the frost lasts.

A few months pass and spring comes. After a short period of rain fine weather usually sets in. A light wind is now blowing and soft white clouds are sailing in the sky. However, the



weather in England is changeable particularly in spring. It is sometimes rather cold. The sky is overcast and it often rains. Then people hurry indoors.

**9. Complete the following chart about the weather of your region.**

	Advantages	Disadvantages
<b>Winter</b>		
<b>Spring</b>		
<b>Summer</b>		
<b>Autumn</b>		

**10. a) Here are some sayings and expressions about weather in English. Match them with their meanings.**

Sayings and expressions	Meanings
1. Make hay while the sun shines	a. extremely happy
2. Come rain or shine	b. disappeared without trace
3. Every cloud has a silver lining	c. in dreamland and completely unrealistic
4. It never rains but it pours	d. even a difficult situation may have some good aspects
5. A storm in a teacup	e. to take advantage of an opportunity
6. It's an ill wind that blows nobody any good	f. a big fuss made over unimportant matter
7. On cloud nine	g. to save something so that you can use it if bad times come
8. Gone with the wind	h. in any event, whatever happens
9. Saving for a rainy day	i. someone usually profits from every misfortune
10. Head in the clouds	j. troubles don't come along and one problem will bring others

**b) Translate these sayings into your own language.**

**11. Writing options. Try to make a story on the offered topics.**

1. Why is weather forecast important / not important for you?
2. Are there any special traditions associated with weather prediction in your country?
3. Do you like rainy weather / sunny weather?
4. Speak about the problem of natural disasters of today and their global influence.
5. How can extreme weather conditions affect the economy and social life in countries?
6. Can a person influence weather or climate?
7. Why are sometimes weather forecasts wrong and don't come true?
8. When do you think is the perfect weather conditions for you?

**HUMOUR TIME**

"Gosh, it's raining cats and dogs," said Fred looking out of the kitchen window.  
 "I know," said his mother. "I've just stepped in a poodle!"

\*\*\*\*\*

- Why do mother kangaroos hate rainy days?
- Because then the children have to play inside...

\*\*\*\*\*

The Michaels family owned a small farm in Canada, just yards away from the North Dakota border. Their land had been the subject of a minor dispute between the United States and

Canada for generations. Mrs. Michaels, who had just celebrated her ninetieth birthday, lived on the farm with her son and three grandchildren.

One day, her son came into her room holding a letter. "I just got some news, Mom," he said. "The government has come to an agreement with the people in Washington. They've decided that our land is really part of the United States. We have the right to approve or disapprove of the agreement. What do you think?" "What do I think?" his mother said. "Jump at it! Call them right now and tell them we accept! I don't think I could stand another one of those Canadian winters!"

\*\*\*\*\*

There's a technical term for a sunny, warm day followed by two rainy days. It's called Monday...

## LESSON 6

### Communication and Technology



*The production of too many useful things results in to  
many useless people.*

*I like my new telephone, my computer works just fine,  
my calculator is perfect, but Lord, I miss my mind!  
A journey of a thousand sites begins with a single click.*

*I had a life once... now I have a computer.*

*In God we trust, all others we virus scan.*

#### TOPICAL VOCABULARY

1. General	1. Загальна лексика
apparatus / device / equipment	апарат, пристрій / устаткування
means / by means of	засіб, засоби / за допомогою
access / to gain(ed) an access	доступ / отримати доступ
digit / digital	цифра / цифровий
frequency / wave	частота / хвиля
information / datum (pl. data)	інформація / дані
telephone directory / phone book	телефонний довідник
broadcasting / radio broadcasting, telecasting	передача, трансляція (радіо та телебачення)
user / customer	користувач
up-to-date / modern / contemporary	сучасний
2. Communication related verbs	2. Дієслова комунікаційного спрямування
to communicate(d) / communication	передавати, повідомляти / зв'язок, спілкування
to call(ed) / call	викликати, називати / виклик
to message(d) / message / messaging	повідомляти / повідомлення / обмін повідомленнями, передача повідомлень
to operate(d) / to put (put; put) into operation / to operate on-line	працювати, діяти / вводити в дію / працювати в режимі "он-лайн"
to process(ed) / processing	опрацьовувати (дані) / опрацювання (даних)
to provide(d) / provider / supplier	забезпечувати, постачати / провайдер, постачальник
to receive(d) / receiver	отримувати / приймач, слухавка
to serve(d) / to service(d) / service	слугувати / обслуговувати / обслуговування
to transmit(ted) / transmission / transmitter	передавати / передача / передавач
3. Means of communication	3. Засоби комунікації
<b>Newspapers</b>	<b>Газети</b>
daily / weekly / monthly	щоденні / щотижневі / щомісячні
magazine / journal	журнал (розважальний) / науковий
tabloids (small in size, represent popular press) / broadsheets (large in size, represent quality press)	бульварна газета / газета великого формату
<b>news:</b> home / foreign (international) / business / sports / features / radio, TV programs / weather forecast / reviews	<b>новини:</b> вітчизняні / іноземні / ділові / спортивні / «цікавинки» / радіо, ТВ / прогноз погоди / огляд



editor / reporter / journalist / freelancer	редактор / репортер / журналіст / незалежний журналіст
<b><i>On the Phone</i></b>	<b><i>Телефон</i></b>
landline / mobile phone	стаціонарний / мобільний
phone number / card / box / directory	телефонний номер / картка / телефон-автомат / довідник
fax machine / answering machine (answerphone)	факс / автовідповідач
directory enquiries	довідкове бюро
<b><i>phone problems:</i></b> line is busy (engaged) / to dial the wrong number / to be out / to leave a message / to call back	<b><i>телефонні проблеми:</i></b> лінія зайнята / набрати невірний номер / вийти / залишити повідомлення / передзвонити ще раз
<b><i>Television</i></b>	<b><i>Телебачення</i></b>
to plug (ed) in / to turn(ed) on, off / to turn over	включити в розетку / включити прилад, вимкнути / переключити канал
TV set / remote control / TV aerial / satellite dish / cable TV / channel / headset (headphones)	телевізор / пульт дистанційного керування / ТВ антенна / супутникова антенна / кабельне ТВ / канал / навушники
<b><i>TV programs:</i></b> soap opera / quiz (game) show / chat show / sitcom / documentary / a series / current affairs / commercials (ads)	<b><i>ТВ програми:</i></b> мильна опера / теле-, радіо вікторина / ток-шоу (теледиспут) / «сітком» (комедійна ТВ історія) / документальна / серіал / поточні події / реклама
<b><i>Computers</i></b>	<b><i>Комп'ютери</i></b>
hardware / software	апаратне / програмне забезпечення
monitor / screen / central processing unit (CPU) / memory / keyboard / mouse / laser printer	монітор / екран / центральний процесор / пам'ять / клавіатура / миша / лазерний принтер
disk / hard disk / flash card (memory stick) / laptop / iPod	диск / жорсткий диск / флешка / настільний комп'ютер / цифровий аудіоплеєр
word processor / spreadsheet / database / graphics	текстовий редактор / електронна таблиця / база даних / креслення
<b><i>clicking on icons:</i></b> to open(ed) a new document / an existing document / to save the data in this document / to print(ed) / to cut (cut; cut) / to copy(ied) / to paste(d)	<b><i>клацання на іконки:</i></b> відкрити новий документ / існуючий документ / зберегти дані у документі / надрукувати / вирізати / скопіювати / вставити (фрагмент тексту)
computer literate / user-friendly	комп'ютерно-освічений / легко користується
Internet (network) / e-mail	Інтернет / електронна пошта
to crash(ed) / to have a bug (virus) / to make a back-up copy	зламатися / мати вірус / зробити копію

## INTRODUCTORY TEXT

### Digital Decade

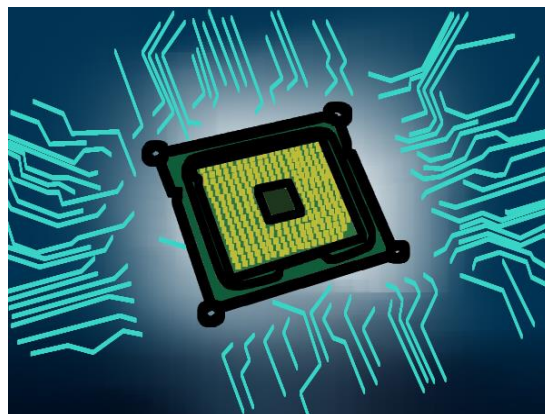
#### Notes to the text:

digital decade – цифрове десятиріччя	available – доступний
modern inventions – сучасні винаходи	mysterious / much-dreaded – загадковий / жахаючий
in comparison – у порівнянні	by hearsay – як чутки
existence – існування	to occupy the whole room – займати цілу кімнату
fast / convenient / reliable – швидкий / зручний / надійний	

multifunctional appliance –  
багатофункціональний пристрій  
to develop skills – розвивати уміння

to controll giants – управляти гігантами  
achieved successes – досягнуті успіхи

A lot of things have changed since the come of the “**digital decade**”. As we enter the era of **modern inventions**, people’s ideology of living becomes very different, **in comparison** as it was fifty years ago. We got used to such new things, which very help us in everyday life, people from the nearest past couldn’t even dream about. Nowadays many people can’t imagine their **existence** without such props of modern living as: huge screen TV-set and powerful multi-channel music system, tidal wave of sound from which the house crashes, VHS/DVD/MP3-player, the Olympic-sized spa, Jacuzzi and power-shower, etc.



Today, it’s hard for many people to live without a personal computer. It makes the work **fast, convenient and reliable**. It helps to solve many routine problems and not only. Computer is an extremely **multifunctional appliance**. Either it is a complex calculation of some mathematical tasks or large text word processing, HiFi-quality music composing or high-definition video watching – computer is a very useful and labor-saving gadget. We study on PC, entertain ourselves during freetime. It is a great possibility **to easily develop different skills** on our own with the use of Internet, containing immeasurable amount of helpful information like encyclopedias, teaching programs, smart guides and much more. At all this is **available** only through the computer.

It is very interesting how those people in 50’s lived without all this. At that time the word “computer” sounded like something really **mysterious** and **much-dreaded**. People heard about them only **by hearsay**. Thus, there was no use for these great opportunities which PC gave. Besides, that time computers were so big in size that they could **occupy the whole room** that is unimaginable for our present time barebone-systems. It was a hard job of those computer system administrators who **controlled** these **giants**: every command had to be put into computer with thousands of punched cards, so that the whole process, for instance, A4-paper size text printing, took approximately an hour.

However, with this rapidly developing technological progress, the world will not stop on its **achieved successes**. What mankind has now, may be called old-fashioned junk in several years. Still, our homes are filled with push-button entertainment and we can’t even think what would be if we didn’t have all modern digital things. Occasionally we should be afraid of these dependences, because doubtless people are leading their life in lazier way than it was in the past, loosing their possibilities to work and to show their worth in it.

### 1. Comprehension questions.

1. In what way has ideology of modern people changed?
2. What can’t many people imagine their existence without?
3. Where is computer used and what are its advantages?
4. How did a computer of today change?
5. What may be a threat of modern technological progress?

### 2. Find in the text English equivalents to the following.

Цифровий, сучасні винаходи, у порівнянні, уявити своє існування, широкоекранний телевізор, багатоканальна музична система, зручний / надійний, буденні проблеми,

багатофункціональний пристрій, економний пристрій, розважати, незмірна кількість інформації, доступний, таємничий / жахаючий, вводити команду, текстовий друк, гідність.

## VOCABULARY PRACTICE

### 1. Explain these headlines in your own words.

*Minister to quit*

*Government cuts spending on new hospitals*

*New bid to cut teenage smoking*

*Bad weather hits farmers*

*Germany backs US plan*

*Ministers in tax row*

*Police discover key witness*

*Japan and US enter fresh talks*

### 2. You are watching TV with a friend. What could you say in each of the situations below? Check the example first.

*Example:* You want to watch a program on TV. Could you *turn the TV on*?

1. You can't hear the program very well. Could you ..... ?
2. You want to watch a different program. Could you ..... ?
3. Now it's too loud for you. Could you ..... ?
4. You don't want to watch any more. Could you ..... ?

### 3. Complete these phone conversations.

*Sally:* 333091

*Jane:* Hello. .... Jane here. Can I ..... to Martin, please.

*Sally:* I'm ....., he's at work ..... the moment. Can I ..... a message?

*Jane:* It's all right. I'll ..... back alter.

*Sally:* OK, then. Bye.

*Jane:* Bye.

\*\*\*\*\*

*A:* Good morning. Smith Limited. Can I help you?

*B:* Yes. .... Paul Mathews and I'm trying to contact Mr. Patterson. He actually left a ..... on my answer phone yesterday afternoon.

*A:* I see. Well, I'm afraid Mr. Patterson's ..... at the moment. Can I ask him to ..... later?

*B:* Yes, please. I shall be here until lunchtime. My ..... is 748 7267.

### 4. Answer these questions.

1. Which is the quickest – a phone call, a fax, an e-mail or a letter?
2. Which is the cheapest – a phone call, a fax, an e-mail or a letter?
3. Have you sent all of these – a letter, a fax and an e-mail? Have you received all of them?
4. Which is your favorite way of communicating with a friend?
5. Which is your favorite way of business communication?

### 5. Fill in the blanks with the following words.

*Outputs, input, processes, receive, send, retrieves, saves*

Data is ..... in a computer. A computer ..... this data under the control of a program. A computer ..... information. A computer ..... this data or information for later use on disk. A computer ..... the saved data or information whenever needed. If equipped with a modem and if it is connected to a telephone line, the computer may ..... information to other computers through telecommunication systems. If equipped with a modem and if it is connected to a telephone line, the computer may ..... information from other computers through telecommunication systems.

**6. Read the statements below. Write True / False in the blank.**

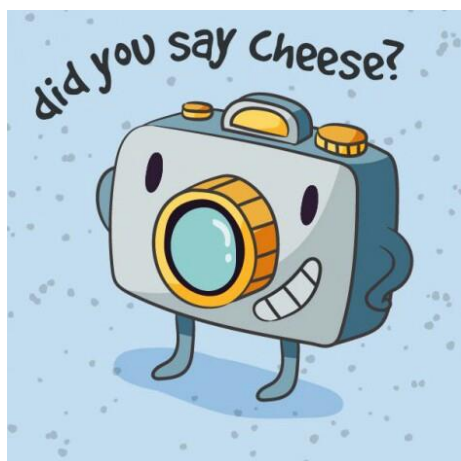
T / F	<i>Do not use the computer during a storm.</i>
	<i>Spray your computer with household cleanser to keep it clean.</i>
	<i>Spilling liquids on your computer won't hurt it.</i>
	<i>Keeping your computer dust-free can help it last longer.</i>
	<i>Your mouse should never need cleaning.</i>
	<i>It won't hurt to eat a peanut butter and jelly sandwich while using the computer.</i>
	<i>Downloading from Internet sites could expose your computer to dangerous viruses.</i>
	<i>Surge protectors can help guard against lighting, but may not be complete protection.</i>
	<i>You should remove the computer cover monthly to clean inside.</i>
	<i>Opening an e-mail attachment could download a virus into your computer system.</i>
	<i>Canned air can be used to clean your computer keyboard.</i>

**7. Rank the following inventions in order of importance and give your reasons why they are important to society.**

Invention	Rank	Reason
<i>bar code</i>		
<i>microchip</i>		
<i>mobile phone</i>		
<i>ink pen</i>		
<i>internet</i>		
<i>plastic</i>		
<i>antibiotics</i>		

**8. Do you use the latest inventions? In what areas do they make your lives easier and safer? Where are security cameras mostly used? Why? Read the text and find out at least three places where cameras are used.**

***Cameras***



One of the latest technological developments is cameras, which have been used for many years, especially to fight against crime. First, cameras have started to be installed in public places such as car parks and shopping centers where the number of the staff isn't enough to prevent theft. Recent surveys have shown that theft has decreased in the places where cameras are installed.

Cameras have also been used in schools, colleges and office lifts to prevent the theft of valuable equipment such as computers. Secondly, cameras are helpful in preventing hooligans from spoiling the pleasure of the majority at some social events like football matches. They film people at large sporting events so it is easy to distinguish the people who are hooligans. Finally, cameras are used outside our houses as it is a good way of catching thieves. To conclude, it is possible to reduce crime and feel more secure by means of cameras.

**a. Decide if the following statements are T (True) / F (False).**

1. Cameras have just started to be used against crime.
2. There has been a fall in theft, thanks to cameras.
3. It is not possible to identify hooligans by using cameras.

4. People prefer to use cameras outside their houses for burglars.
5. Technology helps us to feel more secure in our daily lives.

**b. Write the reasons why cameras are installed in the places mentioned.**

Places with cameras installed	Reason
<i>schools, colleges and office lifts</i>	
<i>football fields</i>	
<i>outside our houses</i>	

**c. Match the situations with the best explanations.**

1. Ali didn't get a high mark for his homework.	a) It might be the only means of transport he knows.
2. She got very tired while cleaning the house.	b) The house could have been very dirty.
3. He took photos with his mobile phone.	c) It should have been done more carefully.
4. I think he will come here by the underground.	d) They should be paying a large bill.
5. They are paying a lot for the central heating.	e) It might have had a camera.

**9. Read the article and fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.**

*Servants of our century - Robots*

In the past, there (1) ..... (be) thousands of servants in great empires like ancient Rome, Egypt or Greece. There were slaves doing all the work for their masters and mistresses so rich people (2) ..... (spend) their time for travel, sports, leisure activities and education.

Today the slaves (3) ..... (not be) human – they are machines which (4) ..... (call) 'robots'. The word 'robot' (5) ..... (come) from Czechoslovakia. They are machines which can be (6) ..... (teach) or programmed to do useful work. They mostly (7) ..... (work) in factories, especially on production lines. That's where something like a TV or a car is put together piece by piece. For years, this work (8) ..... (be) very boring and tiring for human workers.

Today's robots (9) ..... (be) more intelligent than ever before. They may even have mini TV cameras which (10) ..... (make) them able to see. In the future, they (11) ..... (be able to / work) at homes, offices, shops almost anywhere. Since they were invented, they (12) ..... (also / do) other jobs apart from working on production lines. They can help to defuse bombs, work underground helping to find metals and minerals, control flying weapons, take photos and collect rocks on planets like the Mars without risking human life. Robots (13) ..... (also / work) under the sea as robot divers and submarines to repair oil-rigs and find wrecks. Robots are clever but still not clever enough to do some tasks like washing the dishes, making beds, cleaning floor or cutting grass. But it is a fact that robots will help to create a leisure society for the next generation and they may increase unemployment. So this (14) ..... (depend) on us. Only we can decide whether we control the robots or they (15) ..... (control) us.

- *What do you think is the most important invention of our time?*
- *Would you feel comfortable with a robot inside your house? If so, why / why not?*

**10. Read each of the following statements indicating your response by checking "I agree" / "I disagree". Try to give your reasons.**

Statement	I agree	I disagree
1. <i>Technological advances make life better for everyone.</i>		
2. <i>It's important for adults to find out where their children</i>		

<i>are going online and who they are talking.</i>		
<i>3. Computer technology makes finding information faster and easier.</i>		
<i>4. If people let machines do too much for them, eventually people will no longer be able to do things for themselves.</i>		
<i>5. Children should be given more freedom in deciding what they do online.</i>		
<i>6. It is dangerous to place too much faith in technology.</i>		
<i>7. It is impossible to become addicted to the Internet.</i>		
<i>8. Children who play computer games often believe that the violent games they play portray life as it actually is.</i>		
<i>9. Most teenagers are online too much.</i>		
<i>10. Those who worry about the negative effects of technology should think about the modern conveniences available today.</i>		
<i>11. Adults too often use the computer games as a kind of babysitter for their children.</i>		
<i>12. Having the latest technology is important to success.</i>		

## HUMOUR TIME

How do you stop your laptop batteries from running out?  
Hide their trainers.

\*\*\*\*\*

Computer programmers never die, they just get lost in the processing.

\*\*\*\*\*

An elephant is a mouse with an operating system.

\*\*\*\*\*

“Do you turn on your computer with your left hand or your right hand?” “My right hand.”  
“Amazing! Most people have to use the on / off switch.”

\*\*\*\*\*

A customer called to complain that his keyboard no longer worked. He had cleaned it by filling up his tub with soap and water and soaking the keyboard for a day, then he removed all the keys and washed them individually.

\*\*\*\*\*

Computers manufacturer is considering changing the command “Press Any Key” to “Press Return Key” because of the flood of calls asking where the “Any” key is.

\*\*\*\*\*

Does your mum like shopping on the Internet? No, the trolley keeps rolling off the top of the computer.

\*\*\*\*\*

Have you seen [www.amnesia.com](http://www.amnesia.com)? Sorry, I just can't remember.

## LESSON 7

### *Shops and Shopping*



*The quickest way to know a woman is to go shopping with her.*

*I've been shopping all my life and still have nothing to wear.*

*People seldom notice old clothes if you wear a big smile.*

*When in doubt, wear red.*

#### TOPICAL VOCABULARY

1. General	1. Загальна лексика
shop (Am. store) / shopping mall / department store / market	магазин / торговий центр / універмаг / ринок
to do one's shopping / to go shopping	ходити за покупками / по магазинах
shop-window / to do window-shopping	вітрина / розглядати вітрини
to stand (stood; stood) in a line / to queue(d)	стояти в черзі
customer (shopper, buyer) / consumer	покупець / споживач
(consumer) goods	(споживчі) товари
salesman (saleswoman) / shop assistant / seller	продавець
counter / cash-desk	прилавок / каса
to sell (sold; sold) / to buy (bought; bought) / to cost (cost; cost)	продавати / купувати / коштувати
to attend(ed), to serve(d)	обслуговувати
wire basket / shopping trolley (Am. shopping cart)	кошик для покупок / візок для покупок
price / sale / bargain / discount	ціна / розпродаж / вигідна покупка / знижка
cheap / expensive, dear	дешевий / дорогий
fitting room	примірочна
to try(ied) smth on	приміряти щось
to fit(ted) / to suit(ed) / to match(ed)	гарно сидіти / личити / пасувати (про одяг)
to take (took; taken) size ... / to wear (wore; worn) shoes size ...	носити ... розмір / носити ... розмір взуття
up-to-date / stylish, trendy	сучасний / модний
How much is it? / What does it cost? / What's the price of ...? / What price is this?	Скільки це коштує?
2. Ready-made clothes	2. Готовий одяг
<b>Men's fashion</b>	<b>Чоловічий одяг</b>
shirt / T-shirt / waistcoat	сорочка / теніска (футболка) / жилет
trousers / jeans / briefs (trunks)	брюки / джинси / труси
suit / tailored suit	костюм / костюм, пошитий на замовлення
cardigan / sweater / jumper / pull-over	кардиган / светр / джемпер / пуловер
coat / feather jacket / wind breaker	пальто / пуховик / куртка
socks / tie	шкарпетки / краватка
<b>Ladies' fashion</b>	<b>Жіночий одяг</b>
blouse / skirt / dress / dressing gown / costume	блузка / спідниця / сукня / халат / костюм



fur-coat / fur-jacket / sheep-skin	шуба / козушок / дублянка
lingerie / bra (brasserie) / panty briefs / bikini briefs / vest	нижня білизна / бюстгальтер / труси / труси-бікіні / майка
tights (panty-hose) / stockings / knee-high stockings	колготки / панчохи / гольфи (жіночі)
<b>3. Footwear</b>	<b>3. Взуття</b>
heels / low heels / high-heeled shoes / flats (pumps)	підбори / взуття на низькому підборі / на високому / туфлі “лодочки”, без підбора
stiletto heels / patent shoes	взуття на “шпильці” / лаковане взуття
trainers / sandals / slippers	кеди / босоніжки / капці
shoe horn / shoe polish	ріжок для взуття / крем для чищення взуття
<b>4. Fabrics / Textiles</b>	<b>4. Тканини</b>
embroidery / lace	вишивка / мереживо
silk (natural, artificial) / linen / satin	шовк (натуральний, штучний) / льон / атлас
tweed / woolen / cotton	твід / вовна / бавовна
nylon / velvet / cotton velvet	нейлон / бархат / вельвет
leather / suede / leatherette (dermateen)	шкіра / замша / штучна шкіра
<b>5. Departments</b>	<b>5. Відділи</b>
Antique shop / Art shop / Bookseller's (bookshop) / China shop	антикварний магазин / мистецька крамниця / книжковий магазин / магазин “Фаянс”
Dress shop (Women's outfitters) / Men's outfitter / Underwear	магазин жіночого одягу / магазин чоловічого одягу / нижня (спідня) білизна
Hosiery / Knitted goods (wear) / Linen	панчішно-шкарпеткові вироби / трикотажні вироби / постільна і столова білизна
Florist's (flower shop) / Furniture shop	магазин квітів / магазин меблів
Haberdasher's (haberdashery) / Household goods	галантерейний магазин / господарчі товари
Jeweler's (jewellery) / Perfumery (Cosmetics)	ювелірний магазин / парфумерія
Newsagent's / Stationer's (Am. stationery)	періодичні видання / канцелярські товари
Sports shop / Toy shop / Chemist's	магазин спортивних товарів / магазин іграшок / аптека
Grocery / Greengrocery / Bakery / Butchery / Dairy	бакалія (продуктовий магазин) / овочевий магазин / хлібний / м'ясна крамниця / молочний магазин

## INTRODUCTORY TEXT

### Shopping

#### Notes to the text:

daily life – щоденне життя needed things – потрібні речі to care(d) about the price – турбуватися про ціну to look(ed) for goods – шукати товари various – різний under one roof – в одному приміщенні convenient – зручний to be composed of – складатися із things for sale – товари на продаж	short / long-sleeved pullovers – светри з коротким / довгим рукавом wide choice – широкий вибір to go (went; gone) frequently – відвідувати часто to be stocked – мати в асортименті to select(ed) / to put (put; put) into a basket – обирати / класти в кошик check-out counter – каса self-service shop – магазин самообслуговування
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Shopping is a part of our **daily life**. And we have to deal with it whether we like it or not. There are people who hate going shopping. So they make a list of what they need and run



through stores buying the **needed things**. Sometimes they even don't **care about the price**. And there are people who go from store to store **looking for goods** of better quality and lower price. Those don't worry about the time they spend shopping.

When we want to buy something we go to a shop. There are many kinds of shops in every town or city, but most of them have a food supermarket, a department store, men's and women's clothing stores, grocery, a bakery and a butchery.

I like to do my shopping at big department stores and supermarkets. They sell **various goods under one roof** and this is very **convenient**. A department store, for example, true to its name, **is composed of** many departments: ready-made clothes, fabrics, shoes, sports goods, toys, china and glass, electric appliances, cosmetics, linen, curtains, cameras, records, etc. You can buy everything you like there.

There are also escalators in big stores which take customers to different floors. The **things for sale** are on the counters so that they can be easily seen. In the women's clothing department you can find dresses, costumes, blouses, skirts, coats, beautiful underwear and many other things. In the men's clothing department you can choose suits, trousers, overcoats, ties, etc. In the knitwear department one can buy sweaters, cardigans, **short-sleeved and long-sleeved pullovers**, woolen jackets. In the perfumery they sell face cream and powder, lipstick, lotions and shampoos.

In a food supermarket we can also buy many different things at once: sausages, fish, sugar, macaroni, flour, cereals, tea. At the butcher's there is **a wide choice** of meat and poultry. At the bakery you buy brown and white bread, rolls, biscuits. Another shop we **frequently go to** is the greengrocery which **is stocked** by cabbage, potatoes, onions, cucumbers, carrots, beetroots, green peas and what not. Everything is sold here ready-weighed and packed. If you call round at a dairy you can buy milk, cream, cheese, butter and many other products.

The methods of shopping may vary. It may be a self-service shop where the customer goes from counter to counter **selecting and putting into a basket** what he wishes to buy. Then he takes the basket to the **check-out counter**, where the prices of the purchases are added up. If it's not **a self-service shop**, and most small shops are not, the shop-assistant helps the customer to find what he wants. You pay money to the cashier and he gives you back the change.

But there is a very good service called Postal Market. It really helps you to save you time and get goods of high quality. You have just to look through a catalogue, choose the things you like, order them and wait a little to get them.

### 1. Comprehension questions.

1. What is shopping?
2. What kinds of shop can you name?
3. What's the difference between supermarket and self-service shop?
4. What's the advantage of shopping in a department store?
5. What's Postal Market?

### 2. Find in the text English equivalents to the following.

Покупки, ненавидіти, скласти список, краща якість, низька ціна, гастроном, м'ясна лавка, випічка, порцеляна та скло, відвезти покупців на різні поверхи, легко бачити, натільна білизна, крем для обличчя, м'ясо та птиця, булочка, зелений горошок, зважені та запаковані товари, додати суму покупки, дати здачу, економити час, замовити товари.

## VOCABULARY PRACTICE

### 1. Match the shops to the things you buy or do in them.

1. a supermarket	a) bread
2. a bank	b) newspapers, cigarettes, etc.
3. a bookshop	c) medicines (aspirin, etc.)

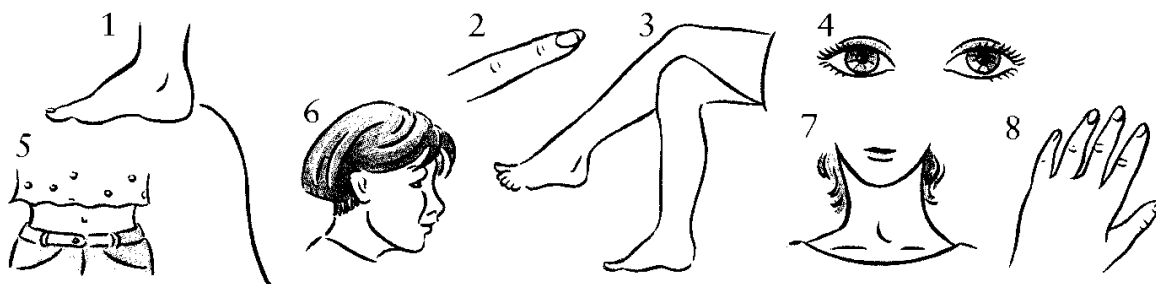
4. a chemist's	d) food
5. a dry cleaner's	e) meat
6. a newsagent's	f) books
7. a butcher's	g) furniture, TVs, etc.
8. a baker's	h) fruit and vegetables
9. a department store	i) send letters
10. a greengrocer's	j) change money
11. a post-office	k) they clean your clothes

**2. Put these words into one or both columns.**

<i>Coat, jacket, dress, tie, belt, shoes, watch, suit, skirt, shirt, ring, trousers, sweater, T-shirt, handbag, briefcase</i>	<b>Men</b>	<b>Women</b>
	<i>coat</i>	<i>coat</i>

**3. Match the part of the body with the item of clothing.**

<i>Scarf, belt, shoe, hat, glove, glasses, ring, tights</i>
-------------------------------------------------------------



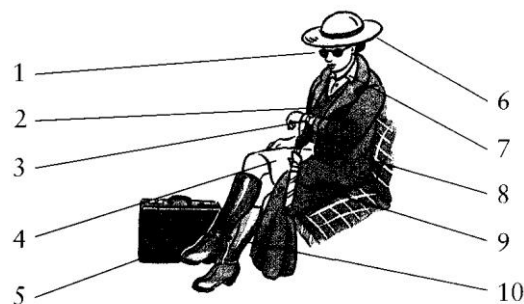
**4. Choose one of the verbs in the box and put it in the right form.**

<i>Be, wear, carry, have</i>
------------------------------

- John's jeans are blue and T-shirt ... red.
- Julia ... jeans and a T-shirt today.
- Elisabeth ... got a red coat on and she ... some flowers. Where is she going?
- Sarah's dress ... old but her shoes ... new.
- Last year John's trousers ... white. Now they ... grey.

**5. Look at the picture and write the names next to the numbers.**

.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....



**6. Write a paragraph about what you are wearing today. Study the example.**

*I'm wearing a white T-shirt and a blue jumper. I've got a pair of black trousers on. I'm wearing blue socks and white trainers. I've also got a watch and a pair of glasses on.*

**7. Read the following dialogues.**

A : Can I help you?

C : Yes. I'd like to return these jeans.

A : May I ask why you're returning them?

C : I bought them for my son, but they're too short.

A : Do you have the receipt?

C : Yes, here it is.

A : I'm sorry. These jeans were on sale. There are no refunds on sale items. You can exchange them for something else or we can give you a credit note.

C : Do you have the jeans in a larger size?

A : Let me check. *[a minute later]* I'm afraid they have sold out.

C : Okay, I'll take a credit note. How long is it good for?

A : It's good for a year.

C : Okay. I'll come back next week and see if I can find something else he might like.

\*\*\*\*\*

A: Excuse me. I'm looking for an old music box.

B: Any particular decade?

A: Something made in the 20s would be nice.

B: We had seven, but we sold one this morning.

A: Are dancing figures a part of any of the boxes?

B: You're in luck. Two of them have dancing figures.

A: These are great. I think I'll take this one.

B: Yes, that one is very nice.

A: Does this come with a warranty?

B: I'm sorry, but you just have to take your chances.

A: That doesn't surprise me.

B: Even if it doesn't work, it's a beautiful collectible.

\*\*\*\*\*

A: Excuse me, but is this dress on sale?

B: The dress was on sale yesterday.

A: Are you sure? I'd be happy to pay the sale price today.

B: I'm so sorry, but rules are rules.

A: I'll just check out a few other stores.

B: I'm sorry I couldn't help you.



**8. Read the story and complete it with the present or past forms of the following verbs: is, are – was, were; buy – bought; go – went; say – said; see – saw; take – took.**

In August 1999 three friends, Jacques Proust, Guy Fadat and Francois Leclerc *were* on holiday in the town of Laraque in France. On Sunday they ... shopping in the market and they ... a dirty, old painting of the Virgin Mary. They ... it for 1,400 francs and they ... it to Paris. In Paris, an expert said that the painting was by Leonardo da Vinci and it ... worth 5000,000,000 francs. The man in Laraque market ... : "I was happy to sell the painting but now I'm very upset. I don't want to think about it?"

**9. Put each of the following words or phrases in the correct gap.**

*Tag, label, cashier, bargain, receipt, exchange, take back, try on, fit, advice, shop assistant, credit card, check, select, cash, refund, size, sale*

If you want to go shopping there are a number of things you have to consider. If you would like to find a ... you should make sure to go to a ... . The only problem with a sale is that it is sometimes hard to ... something once you buy it. Many stores also refuse to give a ... on anything you have bought. If you are looking for clothes, make sure to ... , check the ... to make sure that it is a good ... . Another good idea is to look at the ... and ... to see instructions for washing, etc. It's always a good idea to also ask the ... for ... . Finally, when you go to the ... you can usually pay by ... or ... if you don't have the ... . Never forget to get the ... !

**10. Writing options. Try to make a story on the offered topics.**

1. How often do you go to the shopping mall? Are you a shopaholic?
2. Do you know how to bargain? Where do you go when you look for bargains?
3. Do you think bargains usually have low quality than those items which are not bargains? Prove or defend your answer.
4. Do you think it is important to be in fashion? What are some of the strangest fashions you have seen?
5. What fashions that you see today do you think will be out of fashion within two years?
6. Would you like to be a fashion model?
7. Do you think people feel different when they wear different clothes?
8. What do you think about secondhand clothes? Would you buy secondhand clothes?
9. What would you do or feel if you were refused entry to somewhere because of what you are wearing? Speak about the necessity of dress code.

**HUMOUR TIME**

Customer: May I try on that dress in the window, please?

Clerk: No, ma'am. You'll have to use the fitting room like everyone else.

\*\*\*\*\*

A lady was picking through the frozen turkeys at the grocery store, but couldn't find one big enough for her family. She asked a stock boy, "Do these turkeys get any bigger?" The stock boy replied, "No ma'am, they're dead."

\*\*\*\*\*

***Calming your son***

In the supermarket a man was pushing a cart with a screaming, bellowing baby. The gentleman kept repeating softly, "Don't get excited, Albert; don't scream, Albert; don't yell, Albert; keep calm, Albert." A woman standing next to him said, "You certainly are to be commended for trying to soothe your son, Albert." The man looked at her and said, "Lady, I'm Albert."

\*\*\*\*\*

***The crowded store***

It was the day of the big sale. Rumors of the sale were the main reason for the long line that formed by 8:30, the store's opening time, in front of the store.

A small man pushed his way to the front of the line, only to be pushed back, among loud and colorful curses. On the man's second attempt, he was punched square in the jaw, and knocked around a bit, and then thrown to the end of the line again. As he got up the second time, he said to the person at the end of the line... "That does it! If they hit me one more time, I won't open the store!"

## LESSON 8

### Meals



*The belly rules the mind.*

*Your stomach shouldn't be a waist basket.*

*Worries go down better with soup.*

*An onion can make people cry, but there has never been a vegetable invented to make them laugh.*

*I've been on a diet for two weeks and all I've lost is fourteen days.*

#### TOPICAL VOCABULARY

1. General	1. Загальна лексика
to feed (fed; fed) / to eat (ate; eaten)	годувати / їсти
canned / fast / fresh / frozen / cooked / spicy / takeaway / uncooked food	консерви / «фаст-фуд» / свіжа / заморожена / продукти, готові до вживання / гостра / їжа «на виніс» / напівфабрикати
nutrition / malnutrition	харчування / недоїдання
2. Every day food	2. Щоденна їжа
<b>Bread:</b> white, brown, rye / toast new bread / stale bread / flour bun (roll) / cake / pancake / muffin / puff / pie	<b>Хліб:</b> білий, сірий, житній / грінка свіжий хліб / черствий хліб / борошно здобна булочка / торт, пиріг, тістечко млинець / кекс / слойка / пиріг, пиріжок
<b>Cereals:</b> oats / wheat / barley / rice / buckwheat / rye corn / pearl barley / semolina	<b>Злаки:</b> овес, геркулес / пшениця / ячмінь / рис / гречана крупа / жито / кукурудза / перлова крупа / манна крупа
<b>Meat:</b> beef / pork / mutton (lamb) / veal chop / cutlet sausage / chain sausage / salami / bacon / ham	<b>М'ясо:</b> яловичина / свинина / баранина / телятина відбивна котлета / рублена котлета ковбаса / сосиска / копчена ковбаса / бекон / шинка
<b>Poultry:</b> chicken / duck / goose / turkey game	<b>Домашня птиця:</b> курка / качка / гусак / індичка дичина
<b>Fish:</b> pike / perch / sheatfish (catfish) / bream / carp / pike perch / crucian plaice / cod / mackerel / trout / horse-mackerel / turbot (halibut) / sturgeon / salmon / hunchback salmon / herring / sardine / sprat / crab / lobster / oyster / shrimp (prawn)	<b>Риба:</b> щука / окунь / сом / лящ / короп / судак / карась камбала / тріска / скумбрія / форель / ставрида / палтус / осетер / лосось / горбуша / оселедець / сардина / кільки (салака, шпрот) / краб / омар / устриця / креветка
<b>Dairy products:</b> milk / pasteurized (long-life) milk / baked milk cream / sour cream / butter	<b>Молочні продукти:</b> молоко / пастеризоване молоко / пряжене молоко вершки / сметана / масло

cheese / cottage cheese / processed cheese	сир / домашній сир (рос. – творог) / плавлений сир
egg / hard-boiled / soft-boiled / fried eggs / egg shell / white of an egg / yolk of an egg	яйце / круте яйце / яйце в мішечок / яєчня / яєчна шкаралупа / білок яйця / жовток яйця
<b>3. Fruit / Berries / Vegetables</b>	<b>3. Фрукти / Ягоди / Овочі</b>
<b>Fruit:</b> grapes / apple / pear / plum / cherry / apricot / peach	<b>Фрукти:</b> виноград / яблуко / груша / слива / вишня / абрикос / персик
lemon / orange / tangerine / grapefruit / persimmon	лимон / апельсин / мандарин / грейпфрут / хурма
pine-apple / banana	ананас / банан
melon / water melon	диня / кавун
<b>Berries:</b> strawberry / raspberry / currant / gooseberry / blackberry / mulberry	<b>Ягоди:</b> полуниця / малина / смородина / агрус / ожина / шовковиця
<b>Vegetables:</b> tomato / cucumber / carrot / beet / potato / cabbage (green, red)	<b>Овочі:</b> помідор / огірок / морква / буряк / картопля / капуста (білокачанна, червона )
pepper / radish / horse-radish / white radish onion / garlic	перець / редис / хрін / редька / цибуля / часник
egg plant / marrow (squash) / pumpkin	баклажан / кабачок / гарбуз
peas / beans / asparagus	горошок / квасоля (боби) / спаржа
<b>Greenery:</b> dills / parsley / lettuce	<b>Зелень:</b> кріп / петрушка / салат-латук
<b>4. Drinks</b>	<b>4. Напої</b>
beverage (soft drink) / hard drink (alcoholic drinks, spirits)	безалкогольні / міцні напої
mineral water / juice / stewed fruit	мінеральна вода / сік / компот
tea / tea bag	чай / чай у пакетика
coffee / black coffee / white coffee / pure coffee / instant coffee / ground coffee / cocoa	кава / чорна кава / кава з молоком / натуральна кава / розчинна кава / мелена кава / какао
<b>Hard drinks:</b> dessert wine / domestic wine / dry wine / red wine / sweet wine / white wine / vintage wine / vermouth / sparkling wine	<b>Міцні напої:</b> десертне вино / домашнє вино / сухе вино / червоне вино / солодке вино / біле вино / марочне вино (найвищої якості) / вермут / ігристе вино
champagne / brandy (cognac) / whisky / rum / liqueur	шампанське / бренді (коньяк) / віскі / ром / лікер
<b>5. Cooking</b>	<b>5. Приготування їжі</b>
to cook(ed) food	готувати
to peel(ed) (potatoes, onion)	чистити (картоплю, цибулю)
to mince(d) the meat	зробити фарш
to chop(ed) / to simmer(ed) / to prick(ed) / to drain(ed) / to grate(ed) / to spread (spread; ~) / to spill (spilt; spilt) over	рубати, сікти / смажити на повільному вогні / проколоти / дати стекти / терти / намазувати / пролити
to fry(ied) / to roast(ed) / to stew(d) / to boil(ed) / to pour(ed) out	смажити на сковороді / смажити на вогні / тушувати / варити / наливати

## INTRODUCTORY TEXT

### *Healthy Food*

#### Notes to the text:

nutrient / fat – поживна речовина / жир crisps / tuna / seeds – хрустка картопля (чіпси) / тунець / насіння soft drinks – безалкогольні напої nutritional value – поживна цінність	saturated fats – насичені жири unprocessed fats – необроблені жири chemicals / additives – хімікати / домішки fertilizers / pesticides – добрива / пестициди
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

All food is made up of **nutrients** which our bodies use. Different foods contain different nutrients. Before we cut down on **fat**, sugar and salt, we have to know a bit more about the kind of food these things might be in. The biggest problem comes when these things are hidden in other foods: biscuits, **crisps**, sausages, meat pies, **soft drinks** and so on.

The best way is to get into the habit of checking the ingredients and **nutritional value** on the sides of packets although this isn't always easy to do. But we all know that to eat much fat is bad for our health. The matter is that there are different kinds of fat, good and bad ones. Bad fats are the **saturated fats**, found in animal productions, like red meat, butter and cheese. Friendly fats are the **unprocessed fats** found naturally in foods like nuts and **seeds**, olives, avocados and oily fish, including **tuna**.

One more thing to know is that when food is cooked, its structure changes. It can change the vitamin and nutrient contents of food. More and more people feel strongly about the way, their food is produced. Nowadays so much of the basic food we eat – meat, fish, fruit and vegetables – is grown using **chemicals and additives**.

Although **fertilizers** and **pesticides** have greatly increased the quantity of food and helped to improve its appearance, there is a growing concern about the effects of these chemicals in the food chain. This concern has led to a growth in the demand for organically grown products because modified food, which is cheaper than ordinary one, can cause cancer and other health problems.

The food we eat, depends on lots of things. Taste is a big factor. Culture, religion and health are also essential in food we eat. Advertising and social factors influence the consumers a lot because income is an important fact. That is why, money, rather than a lack of knowledge about healthy eating, is at the heart of the problem.

So, there are three main messages to follow for balanced eating: 1) we should eat less fat, particularly saturated fat; 2) we are to cut down on sugar and salt; 3) we must eat more fresh fruit and vegetables.

#### 1. Comprehension questions.

1. What is all food made up of?
2. Where are fats hidden and what are their kinds?
3. What intensifiers are used to grow food nowadays?
4. What can be the results of eating modified food?
5. What are three main messages to follow for balanced eating?

#### 2. Find in the text English equivalents to the following.

Цукор / сіль, прихований, піріжки з м'ясом, тваринна продукція, жирна риба, зміна структури, збільшити кількість їжі, харчовий ланцюг, занепокоєння, зростання попиту, модифікована їжа, спричиняти рак, культура / релігія, нестача знань, свіжі овочі / фрукти.

## VOCABULARY PRACTICE

#### 1. Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

*Pasta, hot dog, rice, fish and chips, potato, meat, pizza*

1. .... is the most popular food in Japan.

2. .... and .... are very popular in Britain.
3. Chips are made of .....
4. Most Italian people love .....
5. Hamburgers are made of .....
6. A ..... a sausage inside a piece of bread.

**2. Put the words into two categories: fruit / vegetables.**

Beans, pineapple, grapes, onions, apple, carrot, garlic, pear, mushroom	Fruit	Vegetables

**3. Here are the names of some drinks with the letters mixed up. What are they?**

eta <i>tea</i>	klim	rituf eciju
rebe	fecofe	nilemar retaw

**4. Look at this pizza menu. Match the pizza names with their ingredients. Give your answers below.**

<b>Italian Crust Pizzas</b>	<b>Ingredients</b>
1. <i>Margherita</i> £ 4.70	a. onion, pepperoni, spicy beef, chili
2. <i>Hawaiian</i> £ 5.80	b. chicken, mushroom, green pepper
3. <i>Hot 'n' spicy</i> £ 5.90	c. <b>cheese, tomato</b>
4. <i>Seafood</i> £ 6.15	d. garlic, onion, olives
5. <i>Vegetarian</i> £ 5.80	e. chicken, ham, spicy beef, pepperoni, salami
6. <i>Meatlover</i> £ 6.20	f. prawns, tuna, anchovies, olives
7. <i>American Two-timer</i> £ 5.80	g. mushroom, ham, pineapple
8. <i>Chicken 'n' mushroom</i> £ 6.10	h. mushroom, onion, green pepper, tomatoes
9. <i>Garlic treat</i> £ 4.60	i. mushroom, green pepper, onion, salami, pepperoni, ham, spicy beef, garlic
10. <i>Chef's special</i> £ 6.45	j. double mushroom, double pepperoni



Margherita    c	Meatlover .....
Hawaiian .....	American Two-timer .....
Hot 'n' spicy .....	Chicken 'n' mushroom .....
Seafood .....	Garlic treat .....
Vegetarian .....	Chef's special .....

**5. Put each of the following words or phrases in its correct place in the passage.**

*Recipe, menu, fast food, take-away, eat out, waiter, dish, snack, bill, tip, cookery books, ingredients*

I'm a terrible cook. I've tried hard but it's no use. I've got lots of ....., I choose a ..... I want to cook, I read the ....., I prepare all the necessary ..... and follow the instructions. But the result is terrible, and I just have a sandwich or some other quick ..... So I often .....

I don't like grand restaurants. It's not the expense, it's just that I don't feel at ease in them. First the ..... gives me a ..... which I can't understand because it's complicated and



has lots of foreign words. At the end of the meal when I pay the ..... I never know how much to leave as a ..... I prefer ..... places, like hamburger shops where you pay at once and sit down and eat straightaway. And I like ..... where you buy a meal in a special container and take it home.

**6. Use the following words and phrases to fill in the gaps.**

*Nuts, a piece of cake, as nice as a pie, full of beans, not my cup of tea*

1. I think our teacher is ..... She is very kind and patient.
2. I don't enjoy learning English pronunciation. It's .....
3. I think that learning English grammar is ..... It's very easy.
4. I know someone who is completely ..... She is mad!
5. I'm always ..... I'm very energetic and full of life!

**7. Read the following dialogues.**

- A: I'm calling the waiter.  
B: What's the matter?  
A: This steak has too much fat.  
B: What do you want the waiter to do?  
A: Bring me a better steak.  
B: I wouldn't do that.  
A: Why not?  
B: They will drop the new steak on the floor, step on it, and then spit on it.  
A: You're crazy.  
B: Then the waiter will give you a big smile as he brings you the new steak.  
A: Where do you get these crazy ideas?  
B: I used to cook in a restaurant!

\*\*\*\*\*

- A: Let's leave.  
B: But we just got here.  
A: Did you see the waiter's hands?  
B: No.  
A: He had dirty fingernails.  
B: Really?  
A: His nails were black!  
B: That's disgusting.  
A: And he poured water into our glasses.  
B: Yuck! No water for me.  
A: I wonder if the cooks? Nails are dirty, too.  
B: Who cares? Let's get out of here.

**8. Read the story about the lady fond of junk food.**

***Burger Queen***

*She's 109 years old and she eats only junk food.*

Yesterday was Mary Alston's birthday. She is 109 years old, and she is one of the oldest people in the world. And she only eats junk food.

Mrs. Alston had a party with six generations of her family. Her daughter, Jenny Morgan, who is 85, said, 'My mother loves chocolate, and eats only popcorn, pizzas and burgers. She never eats fresh food. She says she doesn't like it.'

Mrs. Alston lives in Harrisburg, Pennsylvania. She was born on a farm in Pennsylvania, and worked as a teacher. In 1915 she married James Henry Alston. He died in 1983.



Her granddaughter, Annie, who is 65, said, ‘Grandma gets up every day at six o’clock, and goes to the hairdresser every Friday.’

Annie asked her grandmother what she wanted to eat on her birthday. Mary said, ‘I’d like a cheeseburger and fries!’

**a. Match the questions and answers. Complete the sentences.**

Questions	Answers
1. <i>When was Mary Alston’s birthday?</i>	a) She was ..... teacher.
2. ....she have a party?	b) She gets up at six o’clock.
3. Does she eat fresh food?	c) <i>It was yesterday.</i>
4. What ..... she eat?	d) ‘I ..... a cheeseburger and fries!’
5. What was her job?	e) Yes, she did.
6. .... was she born?	f) She ..... to the hairdresser.
7. When did she marry?	g) Popcorn, pizza and burgers.
8. What time does she ..... up?	h) No, she ..... .
9. Where does she go every Friday?	i) On a farm in Pennsylvania.
10. What did she say to her granddaughter?	j) She married ..... 1915.

**9. We all love food – but we don’t all like the same things! Read these amazing food facts from around the world and see how different we are.**

***Amazing food facts!***

- People in China eat 134,800,000,000 kgs of rice a year – more than in any other country in the world.
- In Tibet, people don’t have sugar in their tea, they have butter and salt!
- In McDonald’s restaurants in India they don’t sell beef. All the meat in their burgers is chicken or lamb. They also sell vegetarian burgers.
- People in Ireland drink about 150 liters of beer a year. In Germany, people drink about 130 liters a year.
- American people eat about 10 kg of chocolate every year, but the Japanese eat only 3 kg a year.
- The Royal Dragon restaurant in Bangkok, Thailand, has space for 5,000 customers at one time. There are 1,200 waiters and cooks, and over 1,000 items on the menu.
- The Solo per Due restaurant in Vacone, in central Italy, has only got one table – for two people!

**a. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?**

1. Chinese people eat a lot of rice.
2. Tea in Tibet is different to tea in the UK.
3. You can buy beef in every McDonald’s restaurant in the world.
4. Japanese people eat a lot of chocolate.
5. The menu at the Royal Dragon restaurant is very big.
6. It is easy to have dinner at the Solo per Due restaurant.

**10. Writing options. Try to make a story on the offered topics.**

1. Are there any foods that you wouldn’t eat as a child that you eat now? Do you think that we eat better now than we did in the past?
2. Do you cook? If yes, what food do you cook the most often?
3. Do you like food from other countries? If yes, which do you like the most?
4. Do you like to eat at fast food restaurants? Do you think fast food, soda and sweets should be sold in school cafeterias?

5. Why can't people stop eating? Why do you think obesity has become a world wide problem?
6. Have you ever had very bad customer service in a restaurant? Has the waiter / waitress ever mixed up your order / overcharged you / been very rude? Have you every complained to a manager about a waiter / waitress or refused to pay for your meal?
7. What are some foods that are considered unhealthy? Do you agree with genetically modified food we eat?
8. What do you usually like to drink when you go out?
9. What is the most unusual thing you've ever eaten? What foods have you tasted which you will never forget for the rest of your life?

## **HUMOUR TIME**

A friend got some vinegar in his ear, now he suffers from pickled hearing.

\*\*\*\*\*

Waiter, there's a strange film on my soup.

Well, what do you expect for one Dollar, Star Wars?

\*\*\*\*\*

Customer: Waiter, what's this fly doing in my ice-cream?

Waiter: Looks like he's learning to ski.

\*\*\*\*\*

Which vegetable goes best with jacket potatoes?

Button mushrooms.

\*\*\*\*\*

Customer: How often do you change the tablecloths in this establishment?

Waiter: I don't know, sir, I've only worked here for six months.

## LESSON 9

### At the Doctor's



*Commit to be fit.*

*Alert today, alive tomorrow.*

*Cigarettes are killers that travel in packs.*

*Sometimes I get the feeling the aspirin companies are  
sponsoring my headaches.*

*If your dog is fat, you're not getting enough exercise.*

#### TOPICAL VOCABULARY

1. General	1. Загальна лексика
to be ill / to fall ill / to complain of smth	бути хворим / захворіти / скаржитися на щось
ache / toothache / headache / earache	біль (тривалий, тупий) / зубний біль / головний біль / біль у вусі
pain / in the back / sore throat	біль (гострий) / у спині / біль у горлі
to take (took; taken) the temperature / to be running a high temperature	зміряти температуру / мати високу температуру
to measure(d) blood pressure	зміряти тиск
to catch (caught; ~) a cold / to sneeze(d; ing) / to stay(ed) in bed	застудитися / чхати (чхання) / залишатися в ліжку
to get better / to recover (ed)	одужувати
to take (to admit) to a hospital (to hospitalize) / to be discharged from a hospital / reception / ward	покласти в лікарню / виписати з лікарні / реєстрація / палата
to call an ambulance	викликати швидку
to consult(ed) a doctor / to go for a check-up / to make tests / to operate (on) / to put in maternity hospital / to be pregnant	звернутися до лікаря / піти на консультацію / здати аналізи / прооперувати / пологовий будинок / бути вагітною
2. Diseases	2. Захворювання
sickness (illness, disease) / catching / inherited / inborn / virus	захворювання / заразне / спадкове / вроджене / вірус
food poisoning / ulcer / heartburn / to be allergic to	харчове отруєння / виразка / печія / мати алергію на щось
bleeding / heart attack / stroke	кровотеча / інфаркт міокарда / інсульт
cold / flu / bronchitis / pneumonia / quinsy	застуда / грип / бронхіт / запалення легенів / ангіна
rheumatism / appendicitis / cancer	ревматизм / апендицит / рак
burn / cut / scar / bruise (a black eye)	опік / поріз / шрам / синець
dislocation / sprain / fracture / to break a leg, ribs	вивих / розтягнення зв'язок / перелом / поламати ногу, ребра
dumb (dumbness) / deaf (deafness) / blind (blindness) / short-sighted / long-sighted	німий (німота) / глухий (глухота) / сліпий (сліпота) / короткозорий / далекозорий
3. Medicine / Treatment	3. Ліки / Лікування
chemist's (drugstore)	аптека
to take medicines for / a tablespoonful / a	уживати ліки проти / по столовій ложці / по

teaspoonful / three times a day / every two hours / before (after) meals / on an empty stomach	чайній ложці / тричі на день / кожні дві години / до (після) їди / натщесерце
pain-killer (reliever) / cough syrup / pills / tablets / drops / powders	знеболювальне / сироп проти кашлю / пігулки (капсули) / таблетки / краплі / порошки
brilliant green / iodine / hydrogen peroxide / alcohol	зеленка / йод / перекис водню / спирт
to write out a prescription / to be on a diet, on a sick-leave	виписати рецепт / бути на дієті, на лікарняному
to put (to remove) a dressing (bandage) / cotton / to give injection / to put a hot-water bottle / mustard-plaster	накласти (зняти) пов'язку (бинт) / вати / зробити укол / покласти грілку / гірчичник
blood transfusion / X-ray	переливання крові / рентген
<b>doctors:</b>	<b>лікарі:</b>
physician / oculist / psychiatrist / surgeon / oncologist / traumatologist / dermatologist / pediatrician / gynecologist / dentist / cosmetologist / allergist / tuberculosis specialist / nurse	терапевт / окуліст / психіатр / хірург / онколог / травматолог / дерматолог / педіатр / гінеколог / стоматолог / косметолог / алерголог / фтизіатр / медсестра

## INTRODUCTORY TEXT

### Stay Healthy

#### Notes to the text:

to be health-conscious – піклуватися про здоров'я, приділяти увагу здоров'ю	obese / obesity – гладкий / ожиріння
wealth – багатство	to undergo (underwent; undergone) a change – зазнати змін
to avoid(ed) bad habits – уникати згубних звичок	in chase of – у погоні за
to shorten(ed) lives – вкоротити життя	source of nutrition – джерело живлення
to receive(d) publicity – набути розголосу	in excessive / moderate amounts – у надмірній / помірній кількості
to ban(ned) – заборонити	benefits – переваги

People nowadays **are more health-conscious** than they used to be. They understand that good health is above **wealth**.

To be healthy we should **avoid** different **bad habits** that can affect our health. Smoking and drinking are the worst ones as they can **shorten** our **lives** dramatically. Smoking, for example, causes a number of heart and lung diseases, such as pneumonia, emphysema and cancer. Besides, it makes your teeth yellow and skin unhealthy. Fortunately, in recent years smoking has **received** a lot of bad **publicity**, and fewer people smoke nowadays. Some companies don't employ people who are smokers and smoking has been **banned** in most public places.

If we eat too much, we'll become **obese**, and **obesity** leads to serious health problems. A lot of people like drinking coca cola and coffee, and enjoy pizzas and hamburgers. But what is tasty is not always healthy.

In recent years eating habits have **undergone a change**. People think of eating less fat and more **fiber**. Fat is believed to be one of the major causes of obesity and heart disease. High fiber and low fat foods can now be found in all shops and supermarkets. Salads, beans, and fruit have taken the place of steak and ice cream. The fashion for health food is growing all the time.

**In chase of** losing weight some people refuse to eat meat as they consider it harmful. They say a vegetarian diet reduces the risk of cancer because vegetarians live longer than others. But meat, actually, is an excellent **source of** good **nutrition**. It's wrong to put down a food simply

because **excessive amounts** can cause health problems. Consumed **in moderate** amounts, meat is perfectly good for our health.

Other way to stay healthy and to keep fit is by going in for sports. Among the **benefits** of regular exercise are a healthier heart, stronger bones, quicker reaction and more resistance to various illnesses. Besides, you can eat and drink as much as you want because you are burning it all off.

Regularity in life promotes our health. Sleeping eight or nine hours, getting up early, regular meals, a healthy diet and going in for sports is really a good way to live.

### 1. Comprehension questions.

1. Why are people more health-conscious nowadays?
2. What bad habits should we avoid to be healthy?
3. How can people become obese?
4. What change have eating habits undergone in recent years?
5. What's the role of meat in healthy eating?
6. How does sport help people to stay healthier?

### 2. Complete the following sentences.

1. They understand that good health is above .....
2. Smoking causes a number of heart and lung diseases, such as .....
3. Some companies don't employ people who are ..... and smoking has been ..... places.
4. Fat is believed to be one of the major causes of ..... disease.
5. Consumed in ....., meat is perfectly good for our health.
6. .... promotes our health.

## VOCABULARY PRACTICE

### 1. Write the missing letters to fill in the following symptoms.

1. I feel ill. I think I'm running a high t \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ .
2. I've got the flu. I have a h \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ and s \_ \_ \_ t \_ \_ \_ \_ . My nose is c \_ \_ \_ \_ ed.
3. I've caught a cold. I've got a bad c \_ \_ \_ \_ and my b \_ \_ \_ hurts.
4. I have food poisoning. I've got a s \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ a \_ \_ e and I feel d \_ \_ \_ y.
5. My arm h \_ \_ \_ \_ . I think I've broken it.

### 2. Put these health problems in three columns. Do you think they are not serious, more serious or very serious?

health problems	not serious	more serious	very serious
<i>Cancer, toothache, cholera, hay-fever, a headache, a heart attack, a cold, asthma</i>	<i>a headache</i>		

### 3. Match the diseases with their symptoms.

1. flu	swollen glands in front of ear, earache or pain on eating
2. pneumonia	burning pain on abdomen, pain or nausea after eating
3. rheumatism	rash starting on body, slightly raised temperature
4. chickenpox	dry cough, high fever, chest pain, rapid breathing
5. mumps	headache, aching muscles, fever, cough, sneezing
6. an ulcer	swollen, painful joints, stiffness, limited movements

### 4. What does the doctor or nurse use the following things for?

Model: **stethoscope** For listening to a patient's chest.

thermometer

scales

tape measure

scalpel

**5. Match the health problem with doctor's recommendations.**

<i>Health problem</i>	<i>Doctor's recommendation</i>
Annie with a bad sunburn.	Take one three times a day after meals.
George who has broken his leg.	Take a teaspoonful last thing at night.
John who's off to the Tropics.	Rub a little on before going to bed each night.
Paul with flu.	We'll get the nurse to put a bandage on.
Liz with a bad cough.	You'll need to have some injections before you go.
Sam who needs his appendix out.	I'll ask the surgeon when he can fit you in for an operation.
Rose suffering with exhaustion.	You'll have to have your leg put in plaster.
Alf who's sprained his wrist.	I think you should have total bed rest for a week.

**6. Think what medical problems might you have if...**

- |                                  |                                        |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| 1. you wear shoes that rub?      | 7. you eat food you're allergic to?    |
| 2. you eat too fast?             | 8. you run unusually fast for the bus? |
| 3. you smoke a lot?              | 9. you eat food that is bad?           |
| 4. you play football?            | 10. a mosquito bites you?              |
| 5. you go skiing?                | 11. you get wet on a cold day?         |
| 6. you stay too long in the sun? | 12. you think you're ill all the time? |

**7. Fill in the gaps with a suitable word.**

- I hit my hand on the desk and it really .....
- They say she died of heart .....
- She had some apples that weren't ready to eat and now she's got stomach - .....
- I've got this terrible ..... in my neck from sleeping in the wrong position.
- He died of ..... cancer even though he never smoked a cigarette in his life.
- I went to the doctor and she gave me a ..... for some tablets.
- Pollution makes her ..... worse and it's difficult for her to breathe.
- There are different forms of hepatitis; one is a more serious ..... than the other.
- I hurt ..... when I fell off the chair.
- My back ..... from sitting at the computer all day.

**8. Read the following dialogues.**

- A: What did the doctor say?  
 B: He thinks I have too much stress.  
 A: Stress causes your stomachaches?  
 B: Stress causes different problems with different people.  
 A: So what did he tell you to do?  
 B: He said I need to think positive.  
 A: He didn't give you any medication?  
 B: I hate medication. It makes me feel different.  
 A: So how do you think positive?  
 B: I think about nice things.  
 A: Like what?  
 B: Like a day at the beach, with my toes in the sand.
- \*\*\*\*\*
- A: I hate brushing my teeth.  
 B: It's such a chore.  
 A: Brush, brush. Spit, spit.  
 B: What did they do in the old days?



- A: They brushed with their fingers.  
 B: They also ate with their fingers!  
 A: Why do they call it the good old days?  
 B: Maybe because they didn't have to brush and floss.  
 A: Who invented flossing?  
 B: A dentist, I'm sure.  
 A: I hate flossing more than brushing!  
 B: I can't wait till all my teeth fall out.

**9. Joyce Summers is talking about her family's health. Fill in the gaps with the correct form of the verbs.**

***To have, to eat, to lose, to stop, to do, to get, to go (2), to drink***

My husband, Eric, worries about his health a lot. His father **had** a heart attack last year and Eric ..... smoking next day. But he ..... very stressed at work and finds it hard to relax. Eric and I don't ..... alcohol, but only one or two glasses of wine a day. I'm trying to ..... weight at the moment and I ..... some exercise every day. My son, Ian, is trying to ..... fit. He doesn't ..... fried food any more. He also ..... to the gym a lot. I think he's got a new girlfriend.

**10. Read the following information and answer the questions.**

***A Tough Worker***

Your heart is really a muscle. It's located a little to the left of the middle of your chest, and it's about the size of your fist. There are lots of muscles all over your body – in your arms, in your legs, in your back. But this muscle is special because of what it does – the heart sends blood around your body. The blood provides your body with the oxygen and nutrients it needs. It also carries away the waste that your body has to get rid of.

Your heart reminds a pump or two pumps in one. The right side of your heart receives blood from the body and pumps it to the lungs. The left side of the heart does the exact opposite: it receives blood from the lungs and pumps it out to the body. By the time you're grown up, your heart will be beating (pumping) about 70 times a minute.

How does the heart beat? Before each beat, your heart fills with blood. Then it contracts to squirt the blood along. When something contracts, it squeezes tighter – try squeezing your hand into a fist. Your heart does this all the time. Every day, an adult heart pumps 2,000 gallons (7,500 liters) of recycled blood by filling and contracting. The heart is a rather tough worker!



- *Where is your heart located?*
- *Where else can you find muscles in your body besides the heart?*
- *Why do we need a heart?*
- *Which organ(s) directly works with the heart?*

**11. Writing options. Try to make a story on the offered topics.**

1. Do you ever read magazines or news articles about health? If yes, what subject(s) do you find the most interesting?
2. Do you think it is unhealthy to keep a cat in your home or pets are good for a person's health?
3. Do you think that the tobacco companies should be held reasonably responsible for a person's addiction to nicotine?



4. Do you normally go to one doctor in particular or any available doctor? What is the best way to find a doctor, if you're new in the area?
5. Do you enjoy cleaning? Have you ever ended a relationship because your partner had bad hygiene?
6. In what circumstances should traditional or alternative medicine be used? Are traditional therapies compatible with modern medicine? Why or why not?

## **HUMOUR TIME**

Doctor, Doctor, what can I do about my broken leg? – Limp.

\*\*\*\*\*

Patient: Doctor, you must help me. I keep losing my temper with people.

Doctor: Tell me about your problem.

Patient: I just did, didn't I, you stupid idiot!

\*\*\*\*\*

"Doctor, doctor, every time I drink a cup of coffee I get a sharp pain in my nose."

"Have you tried taking the spoon out of the cup?"

\*\*\*\*\*

A doctor and a nurse were called to the scene of an accident.

Doctor: We need to get these people to a hospital now!

Nurse: What is it?

Doctor: It's a big building with a lot of doctors, but that's not important now!

\*\*\*\*\*

"I am sorry, madam, but I shall have to charge you hundred dollars for pulling your boys tooth." "Hundred dollars! Why, I understood you to say that you charged only twenty dollars for such work!" "Yes," replied the dentist, "but this youngster yelled so terribly that he scared out four other patients out of the office."

\*\*\*\*\*

A patient came to his dentist with problems with his teeth.

Patient: Doctor, I have yellow teeth, what will I do?

Dentist: Wear a brown tie!

\*\*\*\*\*

Two psychoanalysts are cycling. One of them has a bad fall. Bruises, scratches, broken arm... Another runs up to him and asks in a very sympathetic voice: "How much does it hurt? Would you like to talk about it?"

## LESSON 10

### Hobbies and Entertainment



*Fishing is the sport of drowning worms.  
A bad day of fishing is better than a good day of work.  
Leisure only means a chance to do other jobs that demand  
attention.  
If you are losing your leisure, look out; you may be losing your  
soul.  
Men and fish are alike. They both get into trouble when they  
open their mouths.*

#### TOPICAL VOCABULARY

1. General	1. Загальна лексика
hobby / pastime / leisure / spare time / entertainment / occupation	хобі / розвага / дозвілля / вільний час / забава / заняття
to be fond of (to be keen on)	захоплюватися
to be interested in / to prefer(ed)	цікавитися / надавати перевагу
indoor / outdoor activity	діяльність у приміщенні / просто неба
active / passive recreation	активні / пасивні заняття
to create(d) / creative / creator / creativity	творити / творчий / творець (автор) / творчість (креативність)
to waste(d) / to kill(ed) time	витрачати час (на непотрібні речі)
2. Hobby Kinds	2. Види хобі
cooking / baking	кулінарія / випічка
house decorating / designing	дизайн приміщення
drawing / painting	малювання / живопис
gardening / handicraft	садівництво / ремесло
embroidery / crocheting / sewing / knitting	вишивання / вишивання тамбуром / шиття / в'язання, плетення
making music	написання (створення) музики
to watch(ed) TV / cartoons	переглядати телепрограми / мультфільми
to go to the cinema / theatre / gallery / museum	ходити в кіно / театр / галерею / музей
traveling	подорож
to go for a drive / for an excursion / hiking / camping	прокататися на машині / вирушити на екскурсію / у пішу подорож / відпочинок у туристичному таборі
to go out / to communicate with friends / to eat out	бувати в товаристві, проводити час не дома / спілкуватися з друзями / їсти в закладах громадського харчування
to visit(ed) clubs / concerts / cafes / discos / festivals	відвідувати клуби / концерти / кафе / дискотеки / фестивалі
to swim (swam; swum) / to sunbathe(d)	купатися / засмагати
reading / singing / writing / doing puzzles (riddles, crosswords) / taking pictures	читання, вокальне мистецтво, письмо, відгадування головоломок (загадок, кросвордів) / фотографія
playing musical instruments (piano, violin, guitar)	гра на музичних інструментах (піаніно, скрипка, гітара)
looking after a pet (cat, dog, hamster, parrot,	догляд домашніх улюбленців (кіт, собака,

fish) / dog training	хом'як, папуга, риби) / дресирування собак
horse riding	їзда на конях
hunting / fishing / picking up mushrooms	мисливство / рибальство / збір грибів
to collect(ed) coin / badge / postcard / stamp / doll / car / autograph collecting	колекціонувати монети / значки / листівки / марки / ляльок / машини / автографи
<b>3. Sport</b>	<b>3. Спорт</b>
ice skating / figure skating	катання на ковзанах / фігурне катання
to skate / to ski	кататися на ковзанах / на лижах
sailing / yachting	вітрильний спорт / плавання на яхті
running / jumping / fencing	біг / стрибки / фехтування
fitness activities / aerobics / powerlifting	фітнес / аеробіка / пауерліфтинг
billiard / draughts / chess / playing cards	більярд / шашки / шахи / гра в карти
table tennis / ping-pong / badminton	настільний теніс / пінг-понг / бадмінтон
basketball / volleyball / tennis / polo	баскетбол / волейбол / теніс / поло
football / hockey	футбол / хокей
aikido / boxing / judo / karate / kickboxing / kung fu / sumo / sambo	айкідо / бокс / дзюдо / карате / кікбоксинг / кунг-фу / сумо / самбо
mountaineering / rock climbing	альпінізм / скелелазання
river rafting	сплав по річці на човні
scuba diving	скуба-дайвінг (із аквалангом)
skydiving, parachuting / paragliding	парашутний спорт (стрибки з парашутом) / парашутизм
surfing / windsurfing	серфінг / віндсерфінг

## INTRODUCTORY TEXT

### *Special Interest*

#### Notes to the text:

to do (did; done) tricks – робити трюки	wooded mountains – лісисті гори
to carry(ied) messages – передавати повідомлення	camping places – табори відпочинку
cacti (sg. cactus) / rare tropical flowers – кактуси / рідкісні екзотичні квіти	boat trips – подорожі човном
stamps / postcards / matchboxes – марки / листівки / коробка із сірниками	evening campfire meetings – вечірні збори біля вогню в таборі
recreation – дозвілля	gadgets – пристрій / «технічна штучка»
to boot(ed) in the country – ходити в похід	snowmobiles – снігохід, аеросани
to get (got; got) out into the wild – виїжджати на природу	dune bugging – баггі, щоб їздити по піску
dry deserts / long sandy coasts / grassy prairies – сухі пустелі / довгі піщані узбережжя	to take (took; taken) to the sky in hang gliders – здійснити в небо на дельтаплані
	part-time courses – короткострокові курси

A “hobby” is a special interest or activity that you do in your time off. Some people have animals as hobbies. They keep rabbits, or go fishing. They train dogs **to do tricks**, or keep pigeons to race and **carry messages**. Some are crazy about plants. They try to grow **cacti** or **rare tropical flowers** in their kitchens and sitting rooms.

Others are mad about their car or motorbike. They spend their Saturdays and Sundays washing them, painting them, or buying new bits and pieces to make them go even faster.

Children and teenagers are great collectors. They collect **stamps**, or **postcards** or **matchboxes**, or pictures of a favorite footballer or pop star.

Many people make things as a hobby. Some teach themselves at home, but a lot of people go to evening classes at their local college.

A “hobby” is usually something that a person does alone. But American (and British) families sometimes like to do things together, too.

American families often have quite a lot of money to spend on their **recreation**. They can all enjoy their holiday home or they **boot** somewhere **in the country** away from home.

Americans love **to get out** of town **into the wild** and many go for holidays or long weekends into the fabulous national parks. These magnificent areas of countryside include tropical forests, high mountains, **dry deserts**, **long sandy coasts**, **grassy prairies** and **wooded mountains** full of wild animals. The idea of these parks, which cover 1% of the whole area of the USA is to make “a great breathing place for the national lungs”, and to keep different parts of the land as they were before men arrived. There are **camping places** in the national parks as well as museums, **boat trips** and **evening campfire meetings**.

Americans really enjoy new “**gadgets**”, especially new ways of traveling. In winter, the woods are full of “**snowmobiles**” (cars with skis in the front). In summer they ride their “**dune bugging**” across the sands or **take to the sky in hang gliders**.

But Americans do not only spend their free time having fun. They are very interested in culture too. Millions take **part-time courses** in writing, painting and music, and at weekends the museums, art galleries and concert halls are full.

### 1. Find the English equivalents from the text.

Особливий інтерес, утримувати кроликів / голубів, рибалити, захоплюватися рослинами, мити / фарбувати, чудові колекціонери, улюблений футболіст, поп зірка, вечірні заняття, все робити разом, казкові національні парки, чудові місцини передмістя, нові способи подорожей, повний, їздити на, веселитися, художні галереї, концертні зали.

### 2. Comprehension questions.

1. What is hobby?
2. What hobbies do people have?
3. Are children and teenagers great collectors? What do they collect?
4. Do American families like doing things together?
5. Where do they enjoy their holiday?
6. What is the idea of the parks there (in America)?
7. Are the Americans interested in culture? What do they do to prove their interest?

## VOCABULARY PRACTICE

### 1. Interesting or boring? Put these leisure activities in order from most interesting to most boring in your opinion.

*gardening, cooking, reading, surfing the Internet, watching videos,  
listening to music, doing nothing*

← *most interesting*

*most boring* →

### 2. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words.

1. Do you prefer to go ..... cinema or to watch TV?
2. We ..... a video last night.
3. Who ..... James Bond in *You Only Live Twice*?
4. Was Clint Eastwood ..... *Dirty Harry*?
5. All the big ..... live in Hollywood.
6. Stephen Spielberg is a famous American film .....

### 3. Word puzzle. How many words for other types of films can you make with the letters of ROMANTIC?

C   R   I   M   E

— O — — — R

C — M — — Y

— A — T — — N

S — — — N C — F — — — N

W — — T — — N

M — — I C — L

C   A   — — O   O   —

#### 4. Match the sport activity with the sport itself.

1. you have to kick a ball into a net	table tennis
2. you have to hit a ball over a net with your hands	basketball
3. you have to hit a ball over a net with a racquet	baseball
4. you have to throw a ball through a net	tennis
5. you have to hit a shuttlecock over a net with a racquet	soccer
6. you have to hit a ball into a hole with a club	golf
7. you have to hit a ball into a net with a stick	badminton
8. you have to hit balls into holes on a table	billiards
9. you have to hit a ball over a net on a table	hockey
10. you try to score a home run	volleyball

#### 5. Decide between do / go / play. The verbs may need to be conjugated or put in the infinitive or gerund form.

1. He used to ..... jogging every day when he was at university.
2. I love ..... a good game of chess from time to time.
3. She ..... gymnastics for over five years now.
4. This summer we ..... windsurfing every day on our vacation.
5. He's quite the athlete. He ..... basketball, baseball and hockey, too.
6. My wife ..... horse riding twice a week.
7. Why don't we ..... a set of tennis?
8. Some people think that ..... aerobics four times a week is the best possible way of keeping fit.
9. His idea of the perfect summer holiday is to rent a sailboat and ..... sailing between the islands of the Tuscan archipelago.
10. He ..... athletics for his local track club.

#### 6. Read the following dialogues.

A: Are there any hobbies you do?  
 B: When I have time, I sometimes draw and paint.  
 A: Oh, you actually do that?  
 B: Every so often, I do.  
 A: Did you always know how to draw and paint?  
 B: I was taught in high school how to draw and paint.  
 A: You had an art class?  
 B: Exactly, it was my favorite class.  
 A: Well, it's good that you're so talented.  
 B: I appreciate that.  
 A: Talent is a great thing, I wish I had one.  
 B: Everyone has a talent. They just need to find it.

\*\*\*\*\*

A: What kind of music do you enjoy listening to?  
 B: I enjoy listening to all kinds of music.  
 A: What kind?  
 B: I like to listen to Rock and R&B.  
 A: Why do you like that type of music?  
 B: I like the kinds of instruments that they use.  
 A: I think that's an excellent reason to like something.  
 B: Thanks, I feel the same way.

\*\*\*\*\*

A: Did you go to the basketball game on Friday?  
 B: No, I couldn't make it.  
 A: You missed a really good game.  
 B: Oh, really? Who won?  
 A: Our school did. They played really well.  
 B: Too bad I was busy. I really wanted to go.  
 A: Yeah, you should have. It was really exciting.  
 B: So what was the score?  
 A: The score was 101-98.  
 B: Man, that was a really close game.  
 A: That's what made it so great.  
 B: I'll make sure and make it to the next one.



### 7. Fill in the gaps with these verbs.

*play, read, go (4), watch (2), take, listen (2)*

I do a lot of sport and in the weekend I ..... tennis or ..... running. I always ..... to the radio in the morning before I go to work and when I get home I usually ..... a DVD or ..... to music. On Saturdays I often ..... sport on TV and my girlfriend and I sometimes ..... dancing in the evening. Oh, and we always ..... swimming on Sunday mornings. When I'm on holiday I usually ..... skiing and ..... lots of books – and I always ..... hundreds of photos!

### 8. Read the text below and decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each gap.

#### *Film posters*

Film posters used to be considered worthless ephemera once they'd (1) ..... their purpose – to get bums on seats. They took up too much space in warehouses and were destroyed by the thousand. No one (2) ..... it worthwhile to lay them down on acid-free paper to (3) ..... them from discoloring, still less to (4) ..... against pinholes and creases, in (5) ..... of the day when they might be worth large sums of money. With the passage of time, however, more and more people came to regard film posters as works of art, and as the traditional art market is normally beyond ordinary people's (6) ....., film posters represented images they could afford.

1 A served	B performed	C satisfied	D delivered
2 A appreciated	B considered	C imagined	D wonder
3 A avoid	B hide	C store	D prevent
4 A keep	B guard	C shield	D save
5 A prediction	B investment	C anticipation	D foresight
6 A stretch	B touch	C clutch	D reach

### 9. Read the information and do the activities.

#### *Jumping across cities*

Forget about expensive gyms, the new sport in cities is free-running. Since it started in a Paris suburb in the 1990s, free-running has attracted lots of fans in cities around the world. Instead of walking normally, free-runners jump over or around everything – car, buildings, trees or streetlights – in their way.

One of the sport's inventors told our reporter how free-running started, 'It was boring where we lived, there was nothing for us to do after school. We had done playground games like football and basketball when we were kids but we wanted something new and exciting. We started learning how to jump and run between buildings – and we loved it. Walking is a waste of time. Free-runners have to use their imaginations. Everything – a tree, a streetlight – is part of our outdoor gym. We're like children because we've never stopped playing in the street.'

The sport's website has lots of rules, for example, not to break people's windows, not to jump on flowerbeds or be rude to people who want to stop a free-runner. Safety is also very important. You must start with the easy moves – you have to do thousands of small practice jumps before you try anything difficult. If you made only one mistake, you might hurt yourself badly.

A local person said, 'It's good that young people have something to do. But when they jump off buildings like cats they sometimes frighten other people.'

### **Don't try this at home - the basics of free-running**

**Blind jump** is a jump where you can't see the landing spot.

**Tic-tac** - run and put your foot on a small step, go forward and jump over the next thing.

**Basic jump** - run and jump, land on two feet while bending your knees. To finish roll into head-over-heels.

**Cat jump** - run towards a wall, put both hands on the top of the wall and jump through your arms.

a. Is free-running dangerous? What attracts people in free-running? Is it popular in your country?

b. Match these words from the article.

<i>street</i>	<i>door</i>
<i>flower-</i>	<i>site</i>
<i>play</i>	<i>light</i>
<i>web</i>	<i>ground</i>
<i>out</i>	<i>bed</i>

c. Choose the best answer.

1. Free-running started in

a) in cities all over the world      b) less than twenty years ago      c) because it has lots of fans

2. The first free-runners

a) were taught the sport at school      b) never liked doing other sports      c) taught themselves the sport.

3. Free-runners use the streets

a) as their gym      b) because they can't pay for a gym      c) because they are children

4. Free-running has

a) only three rules      b) more than three rules      c) too many rules

5. Free-running is ..... to learn.

a) easy      b) frightening      c) difficult

6. Free-runners ..... jump off buildings.

a) can      b) should      c) mustn't

7. A cat jump is  
a) the most difficult jump                      b) an example of a jump                      c) an unusual jump
8. Heels are part of  
a) your head                      b) a wall                      c) your feet

**10. Writing options. Try to make a story on the offered topics.**

1. Did you have any hobbies when you were a child?
2. Can you think of any hobbies which are popular with children and adults?
3. Do you think a hobby is different from a sport?
4. Are there any hobbies you would like to try?
5. Do you spend money on your hobby? Can you make money from doing your hobby?
6. Are there any hobbies you can do in other countries, but not your own?
7. Which hobbies do you think are the most difficult?

**HUMOUR TIME**

Neighbor: Haven't I seen you on TV?

Actor: Well, I do appear, on and off, you know. How do you like me?

Neighbor: Off.

\*\*\*\*\*

"I didn't see you in church last Sunday, Nigel. I hear you were out playing football instead."  
"That's not true, vicar. And I've got the fish to prove it!"

\*\*\*\*\*

A guy rings his boss and says "I can't come to work today". The boss asks why and the guy says "It's my eyes." "What's wrong with your eyes?" asks the boss. "I just can't see myself coming to work, so I'm going fishing instead..."

\*\*\*\*\*

A saxophone is like a lawsuit. Everyone is happy when the case is closed.



## LESSON 11

### In the Town



*God made the country, and man made the town.*

*Don't let the city steal your soul.*

*What I like about cities is that everything is king size, the beauty and the ugliness.*

*Cities, like cats, will reveal themselves at night.*

*Divine Nature gave the fields, human art built the cities.*

#### TOPICAL VOCABULARY

1. General	1. Загальна лексика
village (country) / district / region / town (city)	село / район / область / місто
street / by-street / block / boulevard / square / avenue / pavement (Br. sidewalk) / roadside	вулиця / провулок / квартал / бульвар / площа / авеню / тротуар / узбіччя
road / way / route / crossroad	дорога / шлях / маршрут / перехрестя
bus-stop / taxi-rank	зупинка автобуса / зупинка таксі
subway (underground, Br. tube)=U (as a sign)	метро, підземний перехід
traffic / traffic light / street light / traffic jam / rush hour	рух, транспорт / світлофор / вуличний ліхтар / "дорожній затор" / година пік
passenger / fare / seat	пасажир / плата за проїзд / місце
driver / passer-by / pedestrian / stranger	водій / перехожий / пішохід / незнайомец, немісцевий
to be lost (to lose one's way) / to be on the right (wrong) way	заблукати / бути на правильному (хибному) шляху
to walk(ed) / to go on foot	прогулюватися / йти пішки
to ride / to drive / to go (by bus, car, taxi)	їхати верхи / керувати авто / їхати (автобусом, машиною, на таксі)
to take the bus (right, wrong) / to get on (off) a bus / to wait(ed) for a bus	сісти в автобус (у той, не в той) / зайти в автобус (вийти з автобуса) / чекати на автобус
parking lot (car park) / filling station / gas (gasoline), fuel, petrol (Br.)	паркувальний майданчик / заправка / паливо, бензин
(car) accident	(автомобільна) аварія
2. Vehicles	2. Транспортні засоби
<b>public:</b> bus (crowded / empty) / trolley-bus / double-decker / tram / taxi	<b>громадський транспорт:</b> автобус (переповнений / порожній) / тролейбус / двоповерховий автобус / трамвай / таксі
<b>private:</b> (motor)car / motor-cycle / motor-scooter / bicycle (bike)	<b>приватний транспорт:</b> автомобіль / мотоцикл / моторолер / велосипед
police / police officer (cop) / police car	поліція / поліцейський / поліцейське авто
3. Directions	3. Напрямки
<b>attracting attention:</b> Excuse me / Pardon / Sorry	<b>як привернути увагу:</b> Вибачте / Перепрошую

<b>asking the way:</b>	<b>як спитати дорогу:</b>
How do / can I get to...?	Як мені дістатися до...?
Does this street go to / lead to...?	Чи ця вулиця веде до...?
Is it far from...? / Is it a long way to the ...?	Чи далеко до...?
I'm looking for... / Where is the nearest...? / What's the best way to...?	Я шукаю... / Де найближчий...? / Як краще дістатися до...?
<b>explaining directions:</b>	<b>як пояснити дорогу:</b>
go (walk) down / up / along / across / past / straight (on)	ідіть униз / угору / уздовж / через / повз / прямо
turn to the right / to the left	поверніть праворуч / ліворуч
take the first / second turning	перший / другий поворот
in / on / at / near / next to / between / along / under / above / opposite / in front of / behind	в, у / на / біля / поруч з / між / вздовж / під / над / навпроти / перед / ззаду

## INTRODUCTORY TEXT

### *Town and Country*

#### Notes to the text:

stream – річка; струмок	residential – житловий
country-side – сільська місцевість	skyscraper – хмарочос
rural – сільський	suburb – передмістя
urban – міський	department store – універмаг
industrial – промисловий,	to move(d) out – виїжджати
індустріальний	

Today people all over the world are moving out of small villages to go and live in big, noisy cities. They are moving from the peaceful hills, mountains, fields, rivers, and **streams** of the **country-side** to the busy world of streets, buildings, traffic, and crowds. This movement from **rural** to **urban** areas has been going on for over two hundred years. In many countries, the main reason people come to live in towns and cities is work. After one or two large factories have been built in or near a town, people come to find work, and soon an **industrial** area begins to grow. There is usually a **residential** area nearby, where the factory workers can live. The families of these workers need schools, hospitals and shops, so more people come to live in the area to provide these services, and so a city grows.

In every major city in the world there is a business district where the big companies have their main offices. It is usually in the city centre. It is here that you can see the huge **skyscraper** office blocks. The people who work here often travel a long way to work each day. Many of them live in the **suburbs**, far away from the industrial area and the city centre. Some suburbs are very pleasant, with nice houses and big gardens. There are usually parks for children to play in and large **department stores** where you can buy all you need.

But what is the future of the big cities? Will they continue to get bigger and bigger? Perhaps not. Some major cities have actually become smaller in the last ten years, and it is quite possible that one day we will see people **moving out** of the major cities back into smaller towns and villages.

#### 1. Comprehension questions.

1. What is the main reason why people come to live in cities?
2. Why does a city grow ?
3. What is there in every major city ?
4. Where do many people who work in the centre live?
5. What is the future of big cities ?
6. Will they continue to get bigger and bigger?

## 2. Find the English equivalents from the text.

Гомінкі міста, спокійні пагорби, сільська місцевість, гучний світ вулиць, переселення із сільських районів у міські, промисловий район починає рости, люди забезпечують ці послуги, головні офіси великих компаній, хмарочоси, люди щодня долають довгий шлях, передмістя, з гарними будинками та великими садами, деякі великі міста зменшилися.

## VOCABULARY PRACTICE

### 1. Where can you do these things? Choose the best place from the box.

*post office, pet shop, bakery, library, park, sports centre, record shop, newsagents, hotel, restaurant*

1. Mike hasn't got any food for his dog. – **pet shop**.
2. Kelly is sleeping in a nice bed. ... Harry is buying a magazine. ...
3. Mrs Harris is walking with her dog. ...
4. Laura is sending a present to her friend in France. ...
5. Martin is playing basketball. ...
6. Mr and Mrs Cole are eating Chinese food. ...
7. Fiona is buying some bread and six cakes. ...
8. David is reading about the history of his town. ...
9. Dino is buying a CD for his sister. ...

### 2. Complete these names of places. Use words from the box. (There are two words you don't use.)

*Computer, library, post, car, train, swimming, fast, food, café, bus, sports*

- |                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. _____ pool.    | 5. _____ centre. |
| 2. _____ station. | 6. _____ stop    |
| 3. _____ shop.    | 7. _____ office. |
| 4. _____ park.    | 8. _____ place   |

### 3. Put the words in the correct order to make up sentences.

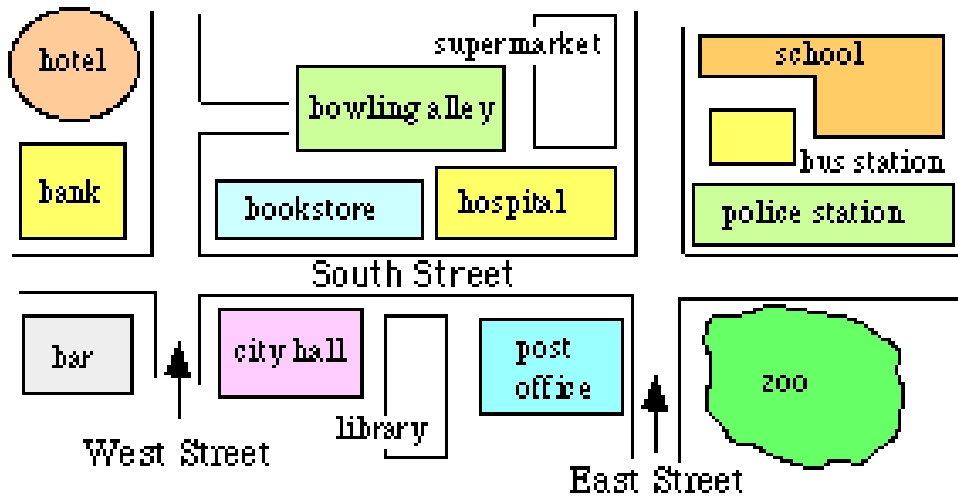
1. the of The in butcher's. front is greengrocer's  
.....
2. near a there is Excuse supermarket here? me,  
.....
3. a and down over bridge. Go railway hill the  
.....
4. is shop big flower The a school. opposite  
.....
5. the Road. The Norton is corner on of bank  
.....
6. me, where Excuse railway station? the is  
.....

### 4. Complete the sentences with English equivalents.

1. (Пішоходи) cross the street on the zebra crossing.
2. In New York, there are a lot of (хмарочосів), with big flats.
3. In Paris, a lot of (вулиць) are famous, such as the Champs-Élysées.
4. Manhattan is a famous American (район).
5. If (світлофор) are red, the cars can't go on.
6. In Paris, (тротуари) are usually wide.
7. I won't come back home soon because there is a lot of (транспорту).
8. I live in Paris and I don't have car, so I use (метро).

9. The men are building a new road, we can see (дорожні роботи).  
 10. A (дорожній знак) tells us we can't turn left.

**5. Use the map to complete the sentences.**



1. The hotel is next to the .....
2. The zoo is ..... the police station.
3. The ..... is between the post office and the supermarket.
4. The bowling alley is on ..... Street.
5. The ..... corner of ..... Street and ..... Street.
6. .... front of .....

**6. Put the words in the box into the gaps below and read the following dialogues.**

<i>across</i>	<i>front</i>	<i>miss</i>	<i>take</i>
<i>your</i>	<i>how</i>	<i>moment</i>	<i>to</i>
<i>corner</i>	<i>left</i>	<i>next</i>	<i>transfer</i>
<i>down</i>	<i>looking</i>	<i>off</i>	<i>way</i>
<i>exit</i>	<i>lost</i>	<i>on</i>	<i>where</i>
<i>far</i>			

**Directions by street name and nearby landmarks:**

- A: You look ..... . Can I help?  
 B: Yeah. I'm ..... for the Caprice Theatre. Do you know ..... it is?  
 A: It's on the ..... of Elm Street and 22nd Avenue. It's ..... to the Art Gallery. You can't ..... it.

**Directions by subway and bus:**

- A: Excuse me. Can I trouble you for a .....?  
 B: Sure. What's wrong?  
 A: I'm lost. Do you know ..... to get ..... the Stadium?  
 B: The easiest ..... to get there is probably by subway.  
 Just ..... the Central Line to Broadway Station. .... to  
 the Green Line and Get ..... at Harbour Station. If you go out  
 ..... number four it should be right in ..... of you.

**Directions by foot or car:**

- A: Can I get to the Harlton Hotel from here ..... foot?  
 B: Sure. It's not that ..... . Just go ..... 4<sup>th</sup> Avenue to  
 Main Street. Turn ..... on Main. It should be on .....  
 right. It's ..... from the park.



**7. Read the following dialogues.**

A: Excuse me! Could you tell me where the nearest bank is, please?

B: Walk two blocks and turn left at the bookstore. The bank will be across the street, next to the post office.

A: Is it far from here?

B: No, it's just a ten-minute walk.

A: Thank you very much.

B: You're welcome.

\*\*\*\*\*







A: Excuse me, could you help me, please? I'm looking for the Science Museum.

B: Go down this street and turn right at the traffic light. Go past the flower market, and you'll see the Science Museum.

A: Thanks a lot.

B: Don't mention it.

**8. Complete the sentences on the pictures with the suitable words: *garbage, crowded, comfortable, polluted, air, jammed*.**

 <p>There is a lot of _____ pollution from the factories.</p>	 <p>The department stores are so _____</p>	 <p>There is too much _____</p>
 <p>The rivers are very _____</p>	 <p>The buses are so _____</p>	 <p>The roads are always _____</p>

**9. Is it good to live in a city? Prove your reasons with the options below.**

FOR	AGAINST
Near medical services	Polluted air
Near schools, colleges, universities	Noise
Near cinemas, theatres, restaurants etc	Accommodation is expensive
Shops open 24 hours a day	A high crime rate

**10. Choose the right preposition in brackets.**

There are a lot of people who work \_\_\_\_\_ (at, in, by) London but prefer to live, \_\_\_\_\_ (at in, by) small towns and villages \_\_\_\_\_ (at, in, by) the counties around the capital.

\_\_\_\_\_ (In, For, By) the morning rush hour, \_\_\_\_\_ (from, to, between) 7.30 and 8.30 thousands of people pass through just one of many stations \_\_\_\_\_ (to, from, on) their way \_\_\_\_\_ (to, from, at) work.



Peter King is an accountant. He lives \_\_\_\_\_ (from, in, to) Whitstable, a seaside town \_\_\_\_\_ (from, in, to) Kent, about fifty miles \_\_\_\_\_ (from, to, by) London.

On weekdays he gets up \_\_\_\_\_ (at, on, from) 6.00 and has a quick breakfast \_\_\_\_\_ (of, with, in) cereal, toast and tea. He leaves the house \_\_\_\_\_ (at, by, from) 6.45 and walks \_\_\_\_\_ (near, at, to) the station.

He catches the 7.00 train \_\_\_\_\_ (to, by, at) Victoria and gets there \_\_\_\_\_ (from, on, at) 8.00. It takes him ten minutes \_\_\_\_\_ (for, to, in) walk \_\_\_\_\_ (from, by, to) his office.

### 11. Fill in the gaps with suitable words.

<i>watches</i>	<i>have</i>	<i>talk</i>	<i>works</i>	<i>finishes</i>
<i>read</i>	<i>does</i>	<i>has</i>	<i>goes</i>	<i>relax</i>
<i>starts</i>	<i>has</i>	<i>gets</i>	<i>surfs</i>	<i>washes</i>

He \_\_\_\_\_ for one of the biggest companies in the UK. He \_\_\_\_\_ work at around 8.30, and usually \_\_\_\_\_ lunch from 12.30 to 1.30. In the afternoon, he \_\_\_\_\_ at 5.30, but never \_\_\_\_\_ home before 7.30. In the evening he \_\_\_\_\_ dinner with his wife and children, and they \_\_\_\_\_ about their day. He generally \_\_\_\_\_ the BBC news at 9.00 and then \_\_\_\_\_ the internet for a while before going to bed.

On Saturdays he \_\_\_\_\_ to the supermarket with his wife, \_\_\_\_\_ the car and \_\_\_\_\_ jobs around the house. On Sundays they \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ a late breakfast and \_\_\_\_\_ the newspapers.

### 12. Writing options. Try to make a story on the offered topics.

1. What city do you live in? What part of this city do you like the best? Why?
2. How can we make our cities safer places to live?
3. How can traffic accidents be prevented?
4. What are the major problems in your city? Would you like to become the mayor of your city? What things would you change?
5. Would you prefer to live in an old historical city or in a new modern city?

## HUMOUR TIME

Why did the stupid racing car driver make ten stops during the Grand Prix? He was asking for directions.

\*\*\*\*\*

In a very small alley two trucks driving in opposite directions meet. As the drivers are equally stubborn, neither of them wants to reverse. They angrily look one at the other. Finally, one of them picks up a newspaper and starts reading. The other one politely asks, "When you've finished the paper, will you please bring it over, and let me read it?"

\*\*\*\*\*

A blonde was visiting Washington, DC for the first time. She wanted to see the Capitol building. Unfortunately, she couldn't find it, so she asked a police officer for directions – "Excuse me, officer, how do I get to the Capitol building?"

The officer replied, "Wait here at this bus stop for the number 54 bus. It'll take you right there." She thanked the officer and he drove off.

Three hours later the police officer returned to the same area and, sure enough, the blonde is still waiting at the same bus stop.

The officer got out of his car and said, "Excuse me, but to get to the Capitol building, I said to wait here for the number 54 bus and that was three hours ago! Why are you still waiting?"

The blonde replied, "Don't worry, officer, it won't be long now. The 45th bus just went by!"



## LESSON 12

### Travelling



*Travellers never think that they are the foreigners.*

*The engine is the heart of an airplane, but the pilot is its soul.*

*The best car safety device is a rear-view mirror with a cop in it.*

*In America there are two classes of travel – first class, and with children.*

*The traveller sees what he sees. The tourist sees what he has come to see.*

#### TOPICAL VOCABULARY

1. General	1. Загальна лексика
travelling / trip / journey / voyage / hike	подорож (частіше далеко або за кордон) / подорож (коротка) / подорож (довга, частіше по землі) / подорож морем / похід
to travel(ed) by train / ship / air / on foot	подорожувати потягом / кораблем / літаком / пішки
to go on a / to set off for a (two-day) tour, trip / package tour	поїхати / вирушити у (дводенний) тур, подорож / за туристичною путівкою
to book(ed) tickets in advance / booking office	купити квитки заздалегідь / білетна каса
boarding / arrival / departure	посадка / прибуття / від'їзд
to travel light / luggage, baggage / hand / carry on luggage / to check one's luggage	подорожувати без багажу / багаж / ручна поклажа / перевірити багаж
bag / suit-case / trunk	сумка / валіза / велика валіза
left-luggage office / cloak-room / check-room	камера схову
to catch (the train / plane) / to board(ed) a ship, a plane / to get off	сісти на (потяг / літак) / сісти на борт корабля, літака / зійти
2. Travelling by Train	2. Подорож потягом
a single ticket / return ticket / fare	квиток в одну сторону / зворотній квиток / плата за проїзд
porter / attendant	носій / провідник вагона
to change(d) trains / terminus	пересісти на поїзд / кінцева зупинка
information office / waiting room / schedule	довідкове бюро / зал очікування / розклад
carriage / sleeping car / sleeper / compartment / berth / rack / linen	вагон / спальний вагон / купе / спальне місце / поличка / сітка для речей / постіль
dining car	вагон-ресторан
3. Travelling by Sea	3. Подорож морем
landing stage / harbour / seaport	пристань / гавань / морський порт
to set sail for / to call(ed) at a port / to have a smooth / rough voyage (crossing)	вирушити в плавання / заходити в порт / здійснювати спокійну / неспокійну (бурхливу) подорож
steamer / gangway / deck	пароплав / трап / палуба
cabin / first (second) class cabin	каюта / 1-го / 2-го класу
to be sea-sick / to suffer from sea-sickness	мати морську хворобу / страждати від ~
4. Travelling by Air (Plane)	4. Подорож літаком



air terminal / airport	аеропорт
airlines / boarding pass / duty-free shop	авіалінії / посадковий талон / магазин “дьюті-фрі”
check-in counter / claim-check / immigration form	стійка реєстрації / квитанція / імміграційний бланк
to weigh(ed) / to label(ed) / to insert(ed)	зважити / маркувати / вклеїти
departure lounge / announcement	зала очікування / оголошення
to hijack(ed) (highjack) a plane	захопити літак
<b>5. Customs</b>	<b>5. Митниця</b>
border / to cross(ed) the border / to smuggle(d) in (out)	кордон / перетинати кордон / провозити контрабандою в (із) країну
customs officer / passport / foreign passport / visa	митник / паспорт / закордонний паспорт / віза
to go through customs / to go through one's luggage / customs clearing (inspection)	проходити митний контроль / оглядати багаж / митний контроль
customs duty / duty-free / duty-free quota list / to be liable to duty	мито / без оплати мита / перелік речей, дозволених для безмитного перевезення / стягувати мито
to fill in (out) a customs declaration	заповнити митну декларацію
to carry(ied) currency / weapons / personal belongings (effects) / used items / permit	перевозити валюту / зброю / особисті речі / речі, що були у використанні / дозвіл

## INTRODUCTORY TEXT

### Travelling

#### Notes to the text:

impossible – неможливий	unfortunately – на жаль
to travel(ed) on business – подорожувати у справах	seasick – який страждає морською хворобою
to be (was/were; been) eager – прагнути	petrol – бензин
picturesque landscapes – мальовничі пейзажі	ardent motorist – затятий автолюбитель
waterfall – водоспад	to gather(ed) mushrooms and berries – збирати гриби і ягоди
inconvenient – незручний	to make (made; made) a bonfire – зробити багаття
delays of flights – затримки рейсів	overcoming hardships – подолання труднощів
to move(d) smoothly – рухатися плавно	achieving the goal – досягання мети

Modern life is **impossible** without travelling. Millions of people all over the world **travel** every day either **on business** or for pleasure. They **are eager** to see other countries and continents, to enjoy **picturesque landscapes**, to learn other peoples' traditions, to discover different ways of life, to meet new friends, to try various cuisines – in short, to get new impressions. And to practice in foreign languages as well!

Most travellers and holiday-makers equip themselves with cameras and take pictures of exciting views of buildings, monuments, **waterfalls**, forests, plants and animals. These photos will remind them of the happy time of holiday.

Basically, there are four means of travelling: by air, by rail, by sea or by road.

Traveling by air is the fastest one, but it is the most expensive. Sometimes you have to change planes, which may be **inconvenient** and even painful, if there are **delays of flights**. However, there is none of the dust and dirt of a railway or car journey. Modern planes **move so smoothly** that virtually nobody gets airsick.

Travelling by railway seems more interesting. With a train you have speed, comfort and pleasure combined. From the comfortable seat of a railway carriage you observe picturesque

sceneries of the country you are travelling through. You can have a meal in the dining-car or a wonderful bed in a sleeper. **Unfortunately**, nowadays trains are not so cheap, especially in Europe.

Travelling by ship is also rather popular. Some people enjoy such voyages, but they do not suit me because I get **seasick**.

Many people, including me, like travelling by car. It is highly fascinating, since you can see numerous sights in a short time, you can stop wherever and whenever you wish, not having to buy tickets or carry your suitcases. With a GPS you don't need maps anymore. The only thing to care for is **petrol**.

Hiking is a kind of travelling on foot with a rucksack. Personally, I'm both an **ardent motorist** and a hiker. I am fond of walking to the mountains or to the forest. There is nothing like **gathering mushrooms and berries** in the forest, swimming in the river, **making a bonfire** and cooking on it. This kind of pastime teaches us discipline and strong will, **overcoming hardships and achieving the goal**.



Sometimes your journey turns out to be a disappointment. It may happen in case the trip is not well organized, or bad weather spoils your plans, or the company who joined your trip is rather dull, or the place from which you had expected much appears to have nothing particular. My own sea experience was a failure for the reason I mentioned before. But never lose a hope for the better trip, and you will make it next time!

However, sooner or later you will become home-sick and feel like returning home. Indeed, "East or West – home is best".

### 1. Comprehension questions.

1. Why do people travel?
2. What kinds of travelling do you know?
3. What's the difference between traveling by train and by car?
4. What's the advantage of travelling by air?
5. Why do some journeys disappoint us?

### 2. Complete the sentences, translating the words in brackets.

1. Millions of people all over the world (подорожують у справах) or for pleasure.
2. There are four means of travelling (літаком, потягом, кораблем або автомобілем).
3. Sometimes you have to change planes, (через затримки рейсів).
4. With a train you have (швидкість, комфорт і задоволення).
5. Travelling by ship does not suit some people, because they (страждають на морську хворобу).

## VOCABULARY PRACTICE

### 1. Match the words and phrases in column A with those in column B.

A	B
1. відправитися в подорож	a) to make voyage (trip, journey)
2. здійснити подорож	b) to fill in registration form
3. замовити квиток	c) to pack the luggage
4. проводити на (вокзал, і т.п.)	d) to see smb off
5. заплатити вартість проїзду	e) to pay extra
6. пакувати валізу	f) boarding pass
7. страждати на морську хворобу	g) to start on a voyage
8. доплатити	h) to book a ticket

9. посадковий талон	i) to be seasick
10. заповнити реєстраційну форму.	j) to pay the fare

## 2. Complete the sentences with English equivalents.

1. Modern life is impossible without (подорожі).
2. Of course the fastest way of travelling is (літаком).
3. Travelling (потягом) also has its advantages.
4. You have to call the air line (квиткова каса) and (замовити квиток заздалегідь).
5. Her suitcases weigh more than 20 kilograms so she has to (платити за додаткову вагу).
6. You can (замовити каюту) and travel by ship.
7. Modern trains have very comfortable (спальні вагони).
8. After you've filled in (імміграційний бланк) you must go through passport control.

## 3. Complete the sentences with appropriate word from the box.

*travelling, trip, journey, voyage*

1. The old man told us that he had written a book about his .....
2. They say that they have made ..... around Europe.
3. Our grandfather was sure that ..... to the country would take no more than an hour by car.
4. Harris was sure that his wife preferred a railway .....
5. My wife didn't enjoy ..... because she felt seasick and was lying in the cabin all the time.
6. The young man said that he was thinking of making a boat ..... down the Thames.

## 4. Put the words in the correct order to make up sentences.

1. visa before applied flight for I my a  
.....
2. scanned baggage security guard The my  
.....
3. delayed for the was by Boarding hour flight  
one .....
4. when flight my missed I lost I bag my  
.....
5. because seats like narrow Many are too class  
people don't the economy .....
6. The to cancelled bad was weather due flight  
.....
7. arrivals pick her the Her friends waited gate  
to at .....
8. to For departure flight this go 65 No. gate .....
9. for is per allowance about weight The 25 person kgs airlines most .....
10. passport your check-in the You show at need counter to .....



## 5. Match the sentences in columns A and B.

Column A	Column B
1. I like to travel alone	a) it's the most important thing for me.
2. The last place on earth	b) it's not too cold, but it's also not too busy.
3. When I fly	c) I'd want to go is Alaska. It's too cold!
4. I'd much rather walk around a museum	d) and got sunburned.
5. My advice is to travel in the fall	e) where would you travel to?

6. If you could go anywhere in the world	f) when I'm at restaurants in new cities.
7. I never forget to bring my towel when I travel	g) would ever hold everything I want to bring.
8. I spent too much time on the beach	h) than sit on a cruise ship.
9. I just love tasting all the new foods	i) I prefer to have a window seat.
10. There's no way one suitcase	j) but sometimes I travel with other people.

### 6. Read the following dialogues.

- Excuse me. Could you please take a picture of us with this camera?
- Sure. Which button do I press to shoot?
- This one.
- Do I have to focus it?
- No, this is a focus-free camera. All you have to do is point and press the button.
- All right. Say 'cheese'.

### *Beautiful Hawaii*

A: I went to Hawaii on vacation.  
 B: Did you like it?  
 A: I loved it. I want to live there.  
 B: What did you like?  
 A: The island is so green, and the water is so blue.  
 B: Did you go swimming?  
 A: I went to the beach every day.  
 B: How was the weather?  
 A: It was hot and sunny every day.  
 B: What did you do at night?  
 A: At night I went out to eat. The food was delicious.  
 B: People who live in Hawaii are lucky.

\*\*\*\*\*

### *Airport*

A: What time does your plane leave?  
 B: It leaves at 12:15.  
 A: When do you have to be at the airport?  
 B: I have to be there two hours early.  
 A: So we have to be at the airport at 10:15.  
 B: That means we have to leave the house at 9:15.  
 A: Well, it's an hour to get there, if there are no traffic problems.  
 B: So maybe we better leave at 8:15?  
 A: Yes, it's better to get there too early than too late.  
 B: I agree.  
 A: You never know what might happen on these freeways.  
 B: There's at least one huge accident every day.

\*\*\*\*\*

### *Prepare for takeoff*

A: I hate to fly.  
 B: Because of all the security?  
 A: No, because it hurts my ears.  
 B: What do you mean?  
 A: Every time we land or take off, my ears hurt so much.  
 B: That's just the altitude change, I think.  
 A: Whatever it is, it hurts.

B: Can't you take medicine or something for it?  
 A: I've tried everything, but nothing works.  
 B: Have you tried earplugs?  
 A: They don't work, either.  
 B: Well, be glad you're not a pilot.

**7. Complete the conversations with the problem lines. There are three you don't need.**

<i>The TV is broken.</i>	<i>I'm lost.</i>
<i>I don't understand this word.</i>	<i>I can't find my passport.</i>
<i>This ticket machine doesn't work.</i>	<i>I forgot your birthday.</i>



**1. A** Come on! It's time to go to the airport.  
**B** .....  
**A** But you put it in your bag!  
**B** Did I? Oh, yes. Here it is. Phew.



**2. A** Excuse me!  
**B** Yes?  
**A** .....  
 I put in two pounds, but I didn't get a ticket.  
**B** Did you push this button?  
**A** Oh, no! I didn't.  
**B** Ah, well. Here you are.  
**A** Thank you very much.



**3. A** Excuse me.  
**B** Yes?  
**A** Can you help me?  
 .....  
**B** Where do you want to go?  
**A** To the railway station.  
**B** Go straight on. About two hundred meters. It's on your left.

**8. Read the story and do the activities.**

- Can you drive? Do you like driving? What is your favourite car?*
- Read about John Pollard's car. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F). Correct the false ones.*
  - John Pollard bought a VW.
  - He bought it in 1964.
  - He bought the Mini when he was a student.
  - He paid £250, 000 for it.
  - He went to Russia three times in his old Mini.
  - He married, then he went to Australia.
  - John and his wife stayed in Australia because they had no money.
  - They're buying a new Mini soon.
  - They're returning to Australia by ship.



10. The Mini isn't staying in England.

### **An Amazing Journey**

In 1964 John Pollard bought a new car. It was a Mini and it cost just £505. 250, 000 miles alter he is still driving it. Mr. Pollard, 59, said, 'I bought the car when I was a student. I wanted to travel. In 1966 I drove to Moscow, Finland and the Arctic Circle. I married in 1967 and then my wife and I drove the Mini to Australia via India. I found a job in Sydney and we stayed in Australia for 30 years. We used the Mini all the time. Last month we came back to England to visit our families and of course, we came in the Mini. We drove via Kuala Lumpur, Bangkok, Tibet, China, Mongolia and Russia.'



Mr. and Mrs. Pollard love their old Mini and don't want to sell it and buy a new one. 'Next month we're returning to Australia but we are not driving, we're travelling by plane.

The Mini is travelling by ship. We decided to give it a rest for the return journey because it is very old and tired.'

### **9. Read about Paul Lay's adventure. How did he feel at different times in the story?**

**Complete the text using these words:** *began to feel, started aching, used to have, went camping, decided to stand up.*

#### ***A Walk with Death. Don't Look down.***

*Paul Lay dances with death in the mountains of southern Spain.*

I have always enjoyed walking. When I was a boy, I used to go walking at weekends with my father. We ..... and climbing together.

I try to visit a new place every day. Last year I decided to walk a path in Spain called El Camino del Rey, which means the King's Way. It is one of the highest and the most dangerous footpaths in Europe. It used to be very safe, but now it is falling down.

I took a train to the village of El Chorro and started to walk towards the mountains. I was very excited. Then the adventure began.

The path was about three feet wide and there were holes in it. It ..... a handrail, but not any more. I didn't know what to do – should I go on my hands and knees, or stand up? I ..... and walk very slowly. At times the path was only as wide as my two boots. I stopped to have a rest, but there was nowhere to sit.

I ..... very frightened. It was impossible to look down or look up. I was concentrating so hard that my body ..... there was no thrill of danger, no enjoyment of the view. I thought I was going to die.

I finally managed to get to the end. I was shaking, and I was covered in sweat from heat to fear. I fell to the ground, exhausted.

#### **Answer the questions to the text.**

1. What is Paul Lay's hobby?
2. What did he use to do with his father?
3. Does he go to the same place every year?
4. Is the King's Way in good condition?
5. Why couldn't he have a rest?
6. Why didn't he enjoy the walk?

### **10. Writing options. Try to make a story on the offered topics.**

1. Why do you travel? Have you ever been to any foreign country? What's the most beautiful place you've ever been to?

2. Would you rather visit another country or travel within your own country? Do you prefer hot or cool countries when you go on holiday?
3. Would you prefer a package tour or the one organized by yourself? Would you rather go to a crowded place or a calm one?
4. Have you ever got lost while travelling? If so, tell about it.
5. Do you travel with a lot of baggage or do you like to travel light? If you were going on a camping trip for a week what 10 things would you take? Explain why.
6. What is the most interesting souvenir that you have ever bought on one of your holidays?
7. What is the best kind of holiday for different ages of people? Children? Teenagers? Adults? Elderly people?
8. Do you think the type of vacation one takes reflects one's social status?
9. Do you think tourism will harm the earth?

## **HUMOUR TIME**

“Were you in Paris on your vacation?” “I don't know, my wife got the tickets.”

\*\*\*\*\*

A man arrived at his holiday guest-house and met the landlady. “Can you sing?” she snapped. “No,” he replied. “Well, you'd better learn quickly. There's no lock on the bathroom door.”

\*\*\*\*\*

A huge American car screeched to a halt in a sleepy English village, and the driver called out to a local inhabitant, “Say, am I on the right road for Shakespeare's birthplace?” “Ay, straight on, sir,” said the rustic, “but no need to hurry. He's dead.”

\*\*\*\*\*

A police officer was amazed to see a hiker walking along the road carrying a sign which read “To Seattle.” “What are you doing with that?” asked the police officer. “I'm walking to Seattle,” said the hiker, “and I don't want to lose my way.”

## LESSON 13

### At the Hotel



*“Doorman – a genius who can open the door of your car with one hand, help you in with the other, and still have one left for the tip.”*

*The great advantage of a hotel is that it’s a refuge from home life.*

*Life is a journey that must be travelled no matter how bad the roads and accommodations.*

#### TOPICAL VOCABULARY

1. General	1. Загальна лексика
hotel	готель
room / accommodation	кімната в готелі / приміщення
reception (reception desk) / receptionist (desk clerk) / porter / doorman / bell-boy / bellhop / chambermaid / waiter / bartender	приймальня / адміністратор у готелі / носій / швейцар / коридорний (посильний) / посильний / покоївка / офіціант / бармен
guest / arrival	гість / приїзд
to arrive(d) / to check(ed) in	заїхати до готелю
to depart(ed) / to check out of	виїхати з готелю
date of arrival / departure	дата приїзду / від'їзду
to stay(ed) at a hotel	зупинятися в готелі
to reserve(d) / to book(ed) a room (in advance)	забронювати номер (заздалегідь)
to confirm(ed) reservation	підтвердити бронь
to fill(ed) in (out) a registration form / blank / to sign(ed)	заповнити реєстраційний бланк / поставити підпис
to vacate(d) a room	звільнити кімнату
key / key board	ключ / дошка для ключів
bill / to pay the bill / overcharged	рахунок / сплатити рахунок / переплачений
room service / facilities	обслуговування кімнат / зручності
tip (extra pay) / to tip(ped)	чайові / давати чайові
2. Room types	2. Типи кімнат
single / double / twin room	одномісний номер / на двох / на двох із двома окремими ліжками
standard room / superior room / junior suite room / suite room	стандартний номер / номер підвищеної комфортності / номер «напівлюкс» / номер «люкс»
3. Forms of Restaurant Service	3. Види ресторанного обслуговування
All Inclusive (AI)	харчування за програмою «все включено»
Full Board (FB)	повний пансіон (триразове харчування – сніданок, обід, вечеря)
Half-Board (HB)	напівпансіон (сніданок плюс обід або вечеря)
Bed and Breakfast (B&B).	тільки сніданок
4. Useful Phrases	4. Корисні фрази



<b>check in:</b> Do you have any vacancies?	<b>реєстрація:</b> Чи є вільні номери?
The reservation was made in the name of (under) Mr. / Mrs. ...	Бронь на ім'я містера / місіс...
I'd like a room for a month (a week, three months).	Мені потрібен номер на місяць (на тиждень, на три місяці).
I want a room with a kitchenette.	Мені потрібен номер із міні-кухнею.
Which floor is the room on?	На якому поверсі номер?
What is the room number?	Який номер кімнати?
May I see the room?	Чи можу я подивитися номер?
This room suits (doesn't suit) me.	Цей номер (не)підходить мені.
What discount do you give for a longer stay at your hotel?	Яку знижку можна отримати за тривале перебування у Вашому готелі?
Just call the front desk if you need any extra towels or pillows.	Просто подзвоніть у приймальню, якщо вам потрібні додаткові рушники чи подушки.
Don't disturb.	Не турбувати.
Could I have a wake-up call at 7 a.m., please?	Ви можете розбудити мене о 7 ранку, будь ласка?
Could you put it on my bill, please?	Запишіть це на мій рахунок, будь ласка.
Could you order (call) a taxi for me to go to the airport, please?	Викличте для мене таксі в аеропорт, будь ласка.
Could I rent a car?	Чи можу я найняти авто?
<b>check out:</b> I'm leaving tomorrow at ten. I'd like to pay the bill now.	<b>вибуття з готелю:</b> Я їду завтра о 10. Я б хотів зараз заплатити.
Can I pay by credit card?	Чи можу я розплатитись кредитною картою?
Could you make a separate bill for my telephone calls, please?	Чи не могли б ви мені зробити окремий рахунок за телефонні розмови?
Did you have anything from the mini-bar?	Ви щось брали з міні-бару?

## INTRODUCTORY TEXT

### Hotels

#### Notes to the text:

luxury hotels – розкішні готелі youth hostels – молодіжні хостели (гуртожитки) a tent – намет a caravan – будиночок-автопричіп advantages / disadvantages – переваги / недоліки to be confident – бути впевненим hotel staff – персонал готелю	to offer(ed) excursions – пропонувати екскурсії to be responsible for – нести відповідальність за business conversation – ділова розмова disappointing – невтішний overcooked – переварений advertisement – реклама in spite of – незважаючи на freak of chance – випадковість in general – загалом
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

It's a well known fact that hotels nowadays play a big role. Every year more and more new hotels are opened.

Sometimes it is even difficult to decide which to choose while travelling. There are **luxury hotels**, which seem to be expensive, B & B hotels, where you will get only breakfasts and a place to sleep, **youth hostels**, where you meant to serve everything yourself and many other places to stay in. For example an apartment, **a tent**, **a caravan** and 3, 4 or 5 star hotel.

Some people enjoy staying in a hotel while others prefer other places to stay in. Sure, on the one hand there are a lot of **advantages** in it.

To begin with, it's convenient. You have a chance to make a telephone call and reserve any room you want in a good time, **to be confident** by your arrival. Besides, you don't need to serve yourself, everything will be done by the **hotel staff**, I find it wonderful. More than that, I like that in the hotel you can be **offered** some interesting **excursions** and you can be sure that they are safe because the hotel **is responsible for every offer**.

But on the other hand there are still some **disadvantages** in staying in a hotel.

First of all, the service can be poor and slowly, for this reason you can be late for a **business conversation** or a friend's party, I find it extremely **disappointing**. Second, the food can be too salty, **overcooked** and etc...spoiled. It can be a serious problem for people with weak stomach. Third, the view from the window can be not so romantic as the **advertisement** said but more modest, it can also disappoint some people, who care about the beauty around them.

Personally I'm for staying in a hotel **in spite of** all disadvantages. It's only a **freak of chance**, everything can happen. So before booking a hotel, you'd better learn some facts about it in the net or from your friends for sure. Last summer I stayed in a hotel in Turkey, everything was up to date, wonderful service, tasty food and friendly staff. I would be happy to visit "Saray hotel" any more time. By the way, Saray in Turkish means a palace and it really looks so. I have only positive impressions about that place and hotel.

**In general** I am only for staying in a hotel, this will save your money, time and will be convenient.

### 1. Comprehension questions.

1. What kinds of the hotels do you know?
2. What are the advantages / disadvantages of staying in a hotel?
3. What services are there in a hotel?
4. How to choose a good hotel to stay in on holidays?
5. Why do some hotels disappoint us?

### 2. Complete the sentences.

1. There are ..... , which seem to be expensive.
2. You don't need ..... , everything will be done by the hotel staff.
3. In the hotel you can be offered some interesting excursions and you can be sure that they are safe because ..... .
4. The service can be poor and slowly, for this reason you can be late for ..... .
5. So before booking a hotel, you'd better ..... .

## VOCABULARY PRACTICE

### 1. Match what you want on the left with what you need on the right.

<i>You want:</i>	<i>You need:</i>
1. to have a cup of tea in your room	a) the lift
2. to go on the top floor	b) an outside line
3. to open your door	c) a shower
4. to get up at 6 a.m.	d) a kettle
5. to phone your country	e) a hair dryer
6. to watch the news	f) a morning call
7. to wash your hair	g) a TV
8. to dry your hair	h) a key

### 2. Complete the sentences with the suitable words.

*Changed, in advance, view, exchange, bring, noisy, free, mini, locked, reception*

1. Can you get someone to ..... our bags to our room?
2. Are the sheets ..... every day?
3. We didn't take anything from the ..... -bar.
4. I ..... my key in my room.
5. Do I leave the key at the ..... desk?
6. Do I have to pay ..... ?
7. Is there somewhere I can ..... money around here?
8. The fan is really ..... . Can I turn it off?
9. Is this service ....., or do I have to pay for it?
10. The ..... is fantastic. We can see the whole city!

**3. How important are the following things when you are deciding at what hotel to stay on holiday?**

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• low price</li> <li>• comfort</li> <li>• WI-FI or Internet access</li> <li>• cooking facilities</li> <li>• parking</li> <li>• air conditioning</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• views from the building</li> <li>• a convenient location</li> <li>• a babysitting service</li> <li>• a swimming pool or gym</li> <li>• organised activities or entertainment</li> <li>• a good restaurant</li> </ul>
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**4. With a partner, decide what advice to give in each of the situations below. Use *If I were you, I'd ...*(на твоєму місці я б ...).**

1. I can't really afford to stay anywhere nice.
2. They expect tips for almost everything. It's so annoying!
3. It's very inconvenient for me to have breakfast from 7 till 9, I like to stay in bed much longer.
4. I'm thinking of renting a car from the hotel.
5. My flight gets in at midnight and I'm not sure how I'm going to get to my hotel.
6. When I turn the air conditioning on, it's too noisy, but when I turn it off, it's too hot!

**5. Complete the sentences with the pairs of words.**

<i>available / booking</i> <i>bill / overcharged</i> <i>boiling / air conditioning</i> <i>filthy / insects</i>	<i>fixed / low</i> <i>main road / noisy</i> <i>toiletries / room service</i> <i>wake-up call / missed</i>
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

1. Our room was next to the ..... so there was lots of traffic and it was really .....
2. I didn't get my ..... and so overslept and I ..... my flight.
3. My room was absolutely ..... – and there was no ..... !
4. I couldn't understand why it was so expensive. Then I checked the ..... and found they'd ..... us by 100 euro!
5. The room was absolutely ..... ! There were ..... all over the walls and the bathroom. It was disgusting.
6. There were no ..... in my room. I tried ringing ....., but there was no answer.
7. They told me that the room wasn't ..... and that they didn't have any record of my .....
8. The shower really wasn't designed for tall people. It was ..... to the wall – and the water pressure was so ..... that hardly any water came out.

**6. Read the following dialogues.**

***Check in***

A: Welcome to English Village Hotel. May I help you?

B: Yes. I have a reservation. Here is my passport / ID.

A: Just a minute. I will check the computer.  
 B: I found your reservation. Here is your room key. You are in Room 606. Enjoy your stay.  
 A: Thank you. Goodbye.

\*\*\*\*\*

### ***Hotel hell***

A: That hotel was terrible.  
 B: The worst in the whole world.  
 A: The walls were so thin.  
 B: All day long we heard TVs or telephones.  
 A: All night long we heard people snoring.  
 B: Housekeeping didn't give us fresh towels.  
 A: Room service brought us a cold dinner.  
 B: Our nonsmoking room stunk of cigarette smoke.  
 A: Our room was right next to the elevator and the ice machine.  
 B: They added phony charges to our bill.  
 A: How did we end up in that terrible hotel?  
 B: The travel agent gave us a 50-percent discount!

\*\*\*\*\*

### ***Room service***

A: Room service, may I help you?  
 B: Yes, may I order some food?  
 A: Sure. What would you like to eat?  
 B: I would like a hamburger and some fries.  
 A: Would you like something to drink?  
 B: Yes, I would like a large Coke.  
 A: Anything for dessert?  
 B: Yes, a piece of apple pie, please.  
 A: Ok, I will send the food to your room.  
 B: Thank you.  
 A: You're welcome.

### **7. Fill in the words correctly.**

*advance, bunk beds, dormitory, double room, family room, key, reception, single room, twin room, vacancies*

1. If you book a room for one person, you usually book ***a single room***.
2. If you want a room with a double bed, you book a .....
3. If you want a room with two separated beds, you book a .....
4. For families there are usually special offers if they take a .....
5. In youth hostels rooms are often shared by 10 or more people. This kind of room is called .....
6. To get 10 people into one room, two beds are usually placed on top of each other. They are called .....
7. No matter where you're staying, you usually have to fill in a form at the .....
8. Then the receptionist tells you your room number and gives you the ..... for your room.
9. During high season it's advisable to book a room in .....
10. If a B&B is fully booked, they usually have a sign in the window saying "No.....".

**8. Read about this very strange hotel, then answer the True / False questions.**

*The Hotel of the Famous*

What would your life be like if you were Albert Einstein. What clothes would be in your wardrobe if you were Marilyn Monroe? Or Madonna?

Well now you can discover the answer to all these questions and many more at the Fame Hotel in California. Ten miles outside Los Angeles, the Fame Hotel promises to answer the question “What if?”. When you check into the hotel, you choose a room. Each room has a name. There’s Clint Eastwood on the second floor and Elvis Presley on the third floor. In total, the Fame Hotel has 32 rooms, most of which are named after stars of Hollywood or music. But there are also famous writers (Mark Twain and Agatha Christie) and even some scientists and sports stars, such as Mike Tyson.

When you enter the room, you enter the life of that person. There are pictures everywhere. The owner of the hotel has tried to fill the room with objects, clothes, even food that he thinks the stars would have liked. Marilyn Monroe’s wardrobe is full of beautiful white dresses, Albert Einstein doesn’t have any socks in his wardrobe because the real Einstein never wore them! If you choose Mike Tyson’s room, you’ll be able to practice boxing in one corner of the room. And there’s even a skipping rope too!

I spoke to one guest staying in the Elvis Presley room. “I love this hotel,” he said to me. “I wanted to know ‘What would Elvis Presley eat for breakfast?’ and now I know”. That guest eats pancakes and strawberry ice cream every morning, just as Elvis liked to do. On the next table, the Einstein room’s guest is eating cabbage soup!

The company plans to open another Fame Hotel in New York next year and there are plans to expand into Europe too. I look forward to staying in the Winston Churchill suite in London!

Question	T/F
1. You can meet famous people in the hotel.	
2. Some famous people have stayed at the hotel.	
3. The Fame Hotel is near Hollywood.	
4. Guests are able to choose which room they stay in.	
5. Each room has a celebrity’s signature on the door.	
6. The hotel’s owner has tried to make the wardrobe authentic.	
7. Each guest eats something different in the hotel restaurant.	
8. There is also a Fame Hotel in London.	

**9. Read the passages and choose the correct options according to the readings.**

One of my favorite vacation places is Mexico. I really like the weather there because it never gets cold. The people are very nice too. They never laugh at my bad Spanish. The food is really good. Mexico City is a very interesting place to visit. It has some great museums and lots of fascinating old buildings. The hotels are too expensive to stay but there are more affordable options. For example, you can stay at one of the beach resorts like Acapulco. If you are planning to visit Mexico, you should definitely see the Mayan temples near Merida.

- Sam likes warm weather
  - Sam doesn’t like warm weather at all
  - Sam hates warm water
  - Sam likes cold weather
- His Spanish is very good
  - He speaks Spanish very well
  - He is Spanish
  - He doesn’t speak Spanish very well

3. a) There's a lot to see and do in Mexico  
 b) There aren't a lot of beautiful places in Mexico  
 c) Mexico is a dirty place  
 d) Tourists never come to Mexico
4. a) Hotels are very cheap in Mexico  
 b) The hotels aren't comfortable there  
 c) Hotels are all poor in Mexico  
 d) The hotels in Mexico are pretty expensive

Last summer, we decided to spend our vacation at the beach because the weather was very hot in the mountains. The travel agent said that traveling by bus was the cheapest way, but we went by plane because it was faster. We wanted to have more time to spend at the beach. The weather was beautiful and we had a great time.

5. We decided to go to the beach because .....  
 a) it was cheaper than going to the mountains  
 b) the travel agent said that it was the cheapest  
 c) of the hot weather in the mountains  
 d) we wanted to spend time at the beach
6. The bus was the ..... way to travel.  
 a) best  
 b) easiest  
 c) cheapest  
 d) slowest
7. Traveling by plane was ..... than by bus.  
 a) more fun  
 b) cheaper  
 c) expensive  
 d) faster
8. We ..... our vacation.  
 a) hated  
 b) didn't like  
 c) enjoyed  
 d) regretted
9. We had very ..... weather during our vacation.  
 a) good  
 b) freezing  
 c) terrible  
 d) cold

**10. Writing options. Try to make a story on the offered topics.**

1. What problems can people have staying at the hotels?
2. In what way can we book the room in the hotel?
3. What living arrangements can one usually find in different hotel types?
4. Is hotel and restaurant business much developed in your country?
5. What are common ways of payment in hotels?
6. Do you know what cancellation policy is?

7. Do most of the hotels have facilities for the disabled?
8. Speak about restrictions (e.g. pets are not allowed) while staying in a hotel.

## HUMOUR TIME

“Room Service? Can you send up a towel?” “Please wait, someone else is using it.”

\*\*\*\*\*

A person checks into a hotel for the first time in his life, and goes up to his room. Five minutes later he calls the desk and says, “You’ve given me a room with no exit. How do I leave?” “The desk clerk says, “Sir, that’s absurd. Have you looked for the door?” “The person says, “Well, there’s one door that leads to the bathroom. There’s a second door that goes into the closet. And there’s a door I haven’t tried, but it has a do not disturb sign on it.”

\*\*\*\*\*

A traveller pulls into a hotel around midnight and asks the clerk for a single room. As the clerk fills out the paperwork, the man looks around and sees a gorgeous blonde sitting in the lobby. He tells the clerk to wait while he disappears into the lobby. After a minute he comes back, with the girl on his arm. “Fancy meeting my wife here,” he says to the clerk. “Guess I’ll need a double room for the night. “Next morning, he comes to settle his bill, and finds the amount to be over \$3000. “What’s the meaning of this?” he yells at the clerk. “I’ve only been here one night!” “Yes,” says the clerk, “but your wife has been here for three weeks.”

\*\*\*\*\*

A not so rich couple decided to stay at a very exclusive hotel for a night. The manager immediately recognized them for what they are but could not throw them out, instead he decided



to be clever. In the morning the couple came to settle the bill and were surprised to find they owe \$3000.”How’s this? We’ve only been here one night!” the man was annoyed. “So?”, said the manager, “this is a very expensive hotel. We have golf courts, tennis courts, swimming pools, exercise rooms, bars and restaurants, all this is very expensive to keep up.” “But we didn’t use any of these!” explained the couple. “If you didn’t use – that’s your problem,” came the reply. “In that case, you owe me \$2000. You see, my wife is a call girl who charges \$5000 a night, so please settle your bill,” said the man. “What do you mean?” the manager was taken off guard, “I didn’t sleep with your wife!” “If you didn’t use – that’s your problem!”

## LESSON 14

### Holidays and Traditions



*Christmas comes but once a year.  
He who has not Christmas in his heart will never find it  
under a tree.  
One of the most glorious messes in the world is the mess  
created in the living room on Christmas day.  
Traditions are group efforts to keep the unexpected from  
happening.  
An optimist is a person who starts a new diet on  
Thanksgiving Day.*

#### TOPICAL VOCABULARY

1. Ukrainian religious holidays and traditions	1. Українські релігійні свята та традиції
to celebrate	святкувати
wedding / birth / burial rites	весільні обряди / обряди народження / обряди поховання
young / married couple	молода / одружена пара
secular	світський, мирський
Lent / fasting	Великий піст / піст
to bless(ed) / blessed food / to bless oneself	благословляти, освячувати / освячена їжа / хреститися
crucifixion / resurrection / purification	розпінання на хресті; муки, страждання / воскресіння (з мертвих) / очищення
Easter / Easter bread / Easter egg / Easter basket / Easter mass	Великдень, Пасха / паска / крашанка (писанка) / пасхальний кошик / пасхальна служба
Shrovetide (Pancake Festival) / pancake	Масляна / млинець
April Fool's day	День сміху
2. Christmas (X-mas)	2. Різдво
to sing (sang; sung) X-mas carols	співати різдвяні колядки
chimney / mistletoe	димар / омела
Christmas Eve	вечір напередодні Різдва
reindeer / sleigh (sledge)	північний олень / сани
3. Valentine's Day	3. День Святого Валентина
to express(ed) feelings	висловлювати (виражати) почуття
to exchange(d) gifts	обмінюватися подарунками
to go (went; gone) out on date	ходити на побачення
heart-shaped card	листівка у формі серця
candle-light dinner	вечеря зі свічками
4. Halloween	4. Гелловін (переддень усіх святих)
scary costume	страшний костюм (убрання, що лякає)
carved pumpkin / jack-o'-lantern	вирізаний гарбуз / ліхтар, вставлений у гарбуза
to play(ed) tricks	жартувати, обдурювати
'trick or treat'	"цукерки або смерть!"
5. Foreign holidays	5. Іноземні свята
Bank holidays	банківські свята у Великій Британії



Memorial Day (Remembrance Day) / Veteran's Day	День пам'яті / День ветеранів
Independence Day	День незалежності
Thanksgiving Day	День подяки
Labour Day	День праці

## INTRODUCTORY TEXT

### *Home and Foreign Holidays and Traditions*

#### Notes to the text:

to celebrate(d) – святкувати	service – служба (церковна)
public holiday – державне свято	greetings of affection – вітання любові
huge – великий	Pancake day / pancake – Масляна / млинці
joyful – радісний	turkey – індичка
to stay awake – не спати	pumpkin pie – гарбузовий пиріг
to be associated with – бути пов'язаним із	to keep up traditions – дотримуватися традицій

Every nation and every country has its own customs and traditions. But there are also international holidays which are **celebrated** practically in all the countries. They are: Christmas, New Year, Easter and St. Valentine's day.

Christmas is a traditional family day. On this day, many people go to church, open their presents and eat a Christmas dinner. In Britain Christmas is the most important **public holiday** of the year. Every year a **huge** Christmas tree is placed in Trafalgar square. In Ukraine Christmas is celebrated on the 7<sup>th</sup> of January. On this day people celebrate the birthday of Jesus Christ.

New Year is a public holiday. It is not so important in Britain and America, but it has a **joyful** celebration in Ukraine. People **stay awake** until midnight on December 31<sup>st</sup>. Many parties are given on this night. Restaurants, night clubs and streets are crowded.

Easter is one of the most important Christian holidays. It is traditionally **associated with** Easter eggs and with the coming of spring. Most churches are specially decorated with flowers for the **service**.

St. Valentine's Day is not the official holiday in most countries. February 14<sup>th</sup> is the day of lovers. Boys and girls, sweethearts and lovers, husbands and wives, friends and neighbours exchange **greetings of affection**, saying: "Be my Valentine".

There are also some special holidays which are celebrated in a particular country.

Let's start with the traditional British holiday **Pancake Day**. But people don't only eat **pancakes** on this day, they run with them. In many towns in England pancake races are held every year.

The truly American holiday is Thanksgiving Day. Thanksgiving is a day when the family eats a large traditional dinner, usually with **turkey** and **pumpkin pie**.

In Ukraine we celebrate Women's day on the 8<sup>th</sup> of March. On this day men do everything about the house and cook all the meals.

Ukrainians and Englishmen are proud of their **traditions** and carefully **keep them up**.

#### 1. Comprehension questions.

1. What are the international holidays?
2. What is the difference between Christmas in Britain and Ukraine?
3. What holiday is associated with eggs and the coming of spring?
4. When do people exchange greetings of affection?
5. What is Pancake Day?
6. Where and how is Thanksgiving Day celebrated?

## 2. Complete the sentences.

1. On ....., many people go to church, open their presents and eat a holiday dinner. On this day people celebrate the birthday of Jesus Christ.
2. .... is not so important in Britain and America, but it has a joyful celebration in Ukraine.
3. Most churches are specially decorated with flowers for the service on .....
4. .... is the day of lovers.
5. But people don't only eat pancakes on ....., they run with them.
6. On ..... the family eats a large traditional dinner, usually with turkey and pumpkin pie.
7. In Ukraine we celebrate ..... on the 8th of March.

## VOCABULARY PRACTICE

### 1. Match column A with column B.

Column A	Column B
1. people have it in their home or outside and like to decorate it	a. presents
2. name of the 24 <sup>th</sup> of December	b. decorations
3. an animal which has a lot to do at Christmas	c. snow
3. things that make the home look more attractive at Christmas	d. Christmas eve
4. Santa Claus comes through it	e. stockings
5. when there is enough of it, you can go skiing	f. reindeer
6. children hang them up on 24 <sup>th</sup> December	g. chimney
7. children (and parents) like them very much	h. Christmas tree

### 2. Match the dates with the festivities.

1. Christmas	a) 31 <sup>st</sup> December
2. St. Valentine's day	b) 1 <sup>st</sup> January
3. Thanksgiving day	c) 1 <sup>st</sup> April
4. New Year's eve	d) 8 <sup>th</sup> March
5. April Fool's day	e) 4 <sup>th</sup> Thursday in November
6. Mother's day	f) 24 <sup>th</sup> December
7. New Year's day	g) 25 <sup>th</sup> December
8. Christmas eve	h) 14 <sup>th</sup> February

### 3. Choose the right variant from the box to guess which holiday it is.

<i>Valentine's Day, New Year's day, Thanksgiving day, Easter, Christmas, April Fool's day, Halloween</i>
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

1. On ..... we celebrate the end of the year and the beginning of the new one.
2. .... commemorates the miracle of Jesus coming back to life, after being crucified. Bunnies and eggs are the symbols of this holiday.
3. October 31<sup>st</sup> is a special night for kids as they celebrate ..... . They wear dress up as ghosts and monsters and go "trick or treat". They expect adults to give them sweets.
4. On ..... people from the US give thanks to God for all the blessings they received during the year.
5. .... celebrates the birth of Jesus Christ. Houses are decorated with holly, bows and candles. Christmas trees bear shiny ornaments and stockings are filled with gifts.
6. February 14<sup>th</sup> is a day to tell people you love them and exchange cards. Girls often receive flowers or chocolates on .....

7. Playing tricks on April 1<sup>st</sup> dates back a long way. Today, ..... is celebrated with harmless pranks and jokes.

**4. Here are some days connected with Easter. Match the names with their descriptions.**

Name	Description
Ash Wednesday	a) the day of Christ's Resurrection
Pancake Day	b) the day of Christ's Crucifixion
Easter Sunday	c) the day before the beginning of Lent
Good Friday	d) the day before Christ's Resurrection
Palm Sunday	e) the day Christ rode to Jerusalem
Easter Eve	f) the first day of Lent
Maundy Thursday	g) the day of the Last Supper

**5. Choose the right variant out of two.**

- Easter is a Christian religious holiday that commemorates the crucifixion and ..... (*resurrection* / *revival*) of Jesus Christ. These days, Easter has a lot of..... (*secular* / *sectional*) traditions as well, that is why many non-Christians also celebrate it.
- Good Friday commemorates the crucifixion of Jesus Christ. It is an ..... (*efficient* / *official*) or "public" holiday in some parts of the English-speaking world.
- Easter and all of its related holidays (Good Friday, Lent, etc.) are known as ..... (*movers* / *moveable*) feasts / holidays, which means their date changes from year to year.
- One of the main Easter traditions is ..... (*decorating* / *dressing*) eggs – which involves painting them in a variety of colours.
- On Easter Sunday, many people participate in a traditional Easter egg ..... (*look* / *hunt*) – the coloured eggs are hidden by the parents, and the children have to look for them.
- Many Christians (even the ones who don't normally go to church) attend ..... (*mass* / *sermon*) on Easter Sunday.
- A very popular symbol of Easter is the Easter ..... (*Bunny* / *Hare*), – traditionally, he's the one who "hides" and delivers the eggs.
- Many families place colored eggs, and other decorated items, in an Easter ..... (*basket* / *bowl*). These are given to children when they wake up on Easter Sunday.
- In England, many people ..... (*exchange* / *change*) chocolate eggs instead of real ones.
- Lent is a period of ..... (*fasting* / *feasting*) – when one is not allowed to eat certain foods – which starts 40 days before Easter. Most people no longer ..... (*absolve* / *observe*) Lent.



**6. Read the following dialogues.**

- A: Are you going to the party on Saturday?  
 B: I was thinking about it. Are you?  
 A: Yeah, I heard it's going to be a lot of fun.  
 B: Really? Well, what time does it start?  
 A: It starts at 8:00 pm, and I really think you should go.  
 B: Well, who all is going to be there?  
 A: Everybody from school.  
 B: How do you know it's going to be so fun?

A: This party is going to have a DJ, food, and drinks.

B: Wow, that does sound like it's going to be fun.

A: So am I going to see you at the party?

B: Yeah, I will be there.

\*\*\*\*\*

A: Do you have any plans for the weekend?

B: I haven't given it much thought. What were you thinking of doing?

A: I was planning on taking a trip up the coast to the beach.

B: What a perfect thing to do on a beautiful weekend!

A: Would you like to come along?

B: I think I would enjoy that a lot. When would we leave?

A: Saturday morning around 8:00.

B: Good. That would get us there with time to look around. There is a music festival in Santa Barbara on the beach that day.

A: Yes, I was hoping to be able to go to the festival.

B: I am so glad we talked. Thank you for inviting me to the beach with you.

### 7. Read the text and do the activities.

In many parts of the world, Christmas is the day when people celebrate the birth of Jesus Christ in Bethlehem two thousand years ago. People who remember Christmas as a religious holiday celebrate the birth of Jesus and his coming into this world. To them, he is recognized as the Son of God and the Saviour of the world. According to the Bible, Jesus was born in a manger because there was no room for him and his parents, Mary and Joseph, in an inn.

Today, people often attend church, organize family gatherings, and decorate their homes and businesses (with real or artificial Christmas trees). People feel the giving spirit and donate their time and money to worthy causes, or provide volunteer service to the needy. Christmas is also celebrated as a secular holiday when parents and children talk about Santa Claus and Rudolf the Red Nose Reindeer.



#### a. Discussion

1. Is Christmas celebrated by people in your country?
2. What kinds of Christmas gifts do people give to each other? If not, do you have other holiday traditions or days at the end of the year?
3. What meaning does Christmas day have for you or other people you know?

#### b. Online investigation

Although Christmas is not celebrated by all people around the world, it does have important significance in the lives of many people. Choose a country and use the Internet to find out how Christmas is celebrated in that country.

### 8. Writing options. Try to make a story on the offered topics.

1. Why do we celebrate Easter? How do you celebrate Easter in your country?
2. If you could visit any other country during winter holidays, where would you go?
3. What are three holidays that you like to spend with your family?
4. What special foods (clothing / customs) are associated with your favourite holiday?
5. Do you celebrate holidays differently now than you did when you were a child?
6. What new holidays are needed in your country?
7. Is there any religious holiday that has a special meaning for you?
8. What do you think of Father's Day? Mother's Day? Parent's Day?

## **HUMOUR TIME**

“Can I invite a few friends to your Halloween party?”

“Sure. The more, the scarier!”

\*\*\*\*\*

“Why are you studying your Easter candy?”

“I’m trying to decide which came first – the chocolate chicken or the chocolate egg!”

\*\*\*\*\*

“Dear Father Christmas, could you please send me some Crocodile shoes!”

Father Christmas: “Can’t do that one. He hasn’t said what size his crocodile takes!”

\*\*\*\*\*

“How did you get that bruise on your arm?”

“I ate some Easter candy.”

“Eating Easter candy won’t give you a bruise.”

“It will if it’s your big brothers candy!”

## LESSON 15

### Ukraine



*He loves his country best who strives to make it best.  
The love of one's country is a splendid thing. But why should  
love stop at the border?  
Men love their country, not because it is great, but because it is  
their own.  
The proper means of increasing the love we bear our native  
country is to reside some time in a foreign one.*

#### TOPICAL VOCABULARY

<b>1. Geographical position, climate</b>	<b>1. Географічне положення, клімат</b>
to extend(ed) / to stretch(ed)	простягатися, тягтися
to border (on)	межувати
to be washed (by)	омиватися
boundary	кордон, межа
black-soil / picturesque steppes	чорноземні / мальовничі степи
temperately continental	помірно континентальний
damp / dry	вологий / сухий
resort area	курортна місцевість
mineral (natural) resources / deposits	природні ресурси / поклади (родовища)
iron / coal / ore / oil	залізо (чорний метал) / кам'яне вугілля / руда / нафта
crops / rye / wheat / corn / sugar beet	урожай / жито / пшениця / кукурудза / цукровий буряк
<b>2. National symbols</b>	<b>2. Національні (державні) символи</b>
coat of arms (National Emblem)	герб
trident/ flag	тризуб / прапор
anthem / verse	гімн / вірш
<b>3. Political system</b>	<b>3. Політична система / устрій</b>
authority, power / state power	влада / державна влада
single-chamber Parliament	однопалатний Парламент
to vote(d) for	голосувати (за)
elections / election campaign	вибори / виборча кампанія
to be ruled by law	керуватися законом
to adopt(ed) the law	прийняти закон
to be nominated (by) / to be appointed	призначати (на посаду)
to cooperate(d) / to participate(d)	співпрацювати / брати участь
system of state administration	система державного управління
the National Armed Forces	Національні збройні сили
the Security Service	Служба безпеки і охорони
to establish good relations	налагоджувати гарні стосунки
economic ties	економічні зв'язки



## INTRODUCTORY TEXT

### *Ukraine*

#### Notes to the text:

sovereign state – суверенна держава	coal-mining industry – вуглевидобувна промисловість
to fall(fell, fallen) into – впадати	ship-building – будівництво кораблів
to possess(ed) – володіти	agriculture – сільське господарство
lead – свинець	cattle-breeding – розведення худоби
non-ferrous metals – кольорові метали	research work – дослідницька робота
to cover(ed) – покривати	nuclear physics – ядерна фізика
administrative regions – адміністративні райони	space exploration – дослідження космічного простору
autonomous republic – автономна республіка	the Council of Europe – Рада Європи
textile industry – текстильна промисловість	

Ukraine is a **sovereign state**. It is situated in the south-eastern part of central Europe. The country is washed by the Black Sea and the Sea of Azov. It borders on Belarus in the North, Russia in the East and Poland, Slovakia, Hungary, Romania and Moldova in the West.

Ukraine has very rich and beautiful nature. There are 23 thousand rivers in it and more than half of them **fall into** the Dnieper. It is the Dnieper that is the largest river of the country. The earth of Ukraine **possesses** almost all chemical elements of Mendeleev's table: aluminium, **lead**, zinc, nickel, etc. The land of the country is rich in coal, ore, iron, oil, **non-ferrous metals**.

Ukraine **covers** an area of 603,700 square kilometers. Its population is about 48 million. Its capital is Kyiv. There are 24 **administrative regions** and the Crimean **autonomous republic** in Ukraine.

The South-Western economic zone is characterized by machine-building and **textile industry**.

The Donetsk-Dnieper economic zone is famous for mines and **coal-mining industry**.

**Ship-building** and tourism are well developed in the Southern economic zone.

The **agriculture** of Ukraine consists of **cattle-breeding** and crop-growing branches. The country produces planes and liners, locomotives, tractors, combines, excavators, instruments, TV sets, computers and synthetic diamonds.

Ukrainian scientists do important **research work** in biology, medicine, **nuclear physics**, **space exploration** and bridge construction.

Ukrainian literature, theatre, music and art are well-known all over the world.

Our country is a member of the United Nations. In 1995 Ukraine became a member of **the Council of Europe**.

Ukraine is a parliamentary state with the presidential governing. The President himself is not appointed but popularly elected. He is elected every 5 years.

The main law of the country is the Constitution. The new Constitution was adopted in July, 1996.

#### 1. Comprehension questions.

1. Where is Ukraine situated?
2. What countries does Ukraine border on?
3. How many rivers are there in Ukraine? What is the largest one?
4. What is the land of Ukraine rich in?
5. What can you say about its population and the capital?
6. What does Ukrainian industry produce?
7. In what fields do our scientists achieve much success?
8. Is our country important on international arena?

#### 2. Complete the sentences.

1. The country is washed by .....
2. Ukraine covers an area of .....
3. There are ..... and the Crimean autonomous republic in Ukraine.
4. .... is famous for mines and coal-mining industry.
5. Ship-building and tourism are well developed in .....
6. The agriculture of Ukraine consists of .....
7. Ukrainian scientists do important research work in .....
8. .... is not appointed but popularly elected. He is elected every 5 years.

## VOCABULARY PRACTICE

### 1. Match the halves of the sentences.

1. The population of Ukraine	a) are the Black Sea and the Sea of Azov.
2. The capital of Ukraine	b) is temperate, cool and continental.
3. The main river in the country	c) is about 48 million people.
4. The climate of Ukraine	d) are exceptionally good for wheat and sugar beet.
5. The national symbols	e) is Kyiv, which is famous for its present and the past.
6. The main fishing grounds	f) is the Dnieper, which is the 3 <sup>rd</sup> longest in Europe.
7. The black soils of the forest-steppe zone	g) are the National Flag, the National Emblem and the National Anthem.

### 2. Complete the following sentences using the facts you know.

1. The blue stripe on the Flag of Ukraine means .....
2. The yellow stripe on the Ukrainian Flag symbolizes .....
3. The National emblem of Ukraine is .....
4. The national anthem of Ukraine is .....
5. The Ukrainian currency is .....

### 3. Fill in the necessary prepositions.

*of, in, for, with, on*

1. Dnipropetrovsk is one ..... the most important cities ..... South-Eastern part ..... Ukraine.
2. .... many years Donetsk was called “the city of million roses”, it probably is the greenest industrial city ..... the world.
3. The Poltava ..... today is a busy regional centre ..... developed industrial and agricultural spheres.
4. Kharkiv has its own city emblem – The Horn ..... Plenty ..... fruits and flowers ..... it.
5. Odesa was founded ..... the 14<sup>th</sup> century ..... the Black Sea shore ..... one ..... its shallow natural harbours.
6. Lviv is proud ..... its University which is the oldest ..... our country and was opened in 1784.

### 4. Read the following dialogues and do the activities below.

A: I don't like our flag.

B: What's the matter with it?

A: It's too much like other flags.

B: Yes, a lot of flags have stripes.

A: A flag should be pretty.



B: What should our flag look like?  
 A: It should have a pretty woman on it.  
 B: That's ridiculous!  
 A: You don't like pretty women?  
 B: Of course I do. But not on our flag!  
 A: Every nation should have a pretty woman on their flag.  
 B: You can't go to war carrying a flag with a woman on it!

\*\*\*\*\*

Andriy: Look, mom! What's that!  
 Mother: It is a **cabin** made from **mammoth**'s bones.  
 A: Do you mean people live in it?  
 M: Not now, of course.  
 A: A mammoth ... what's that?  
 M: A mammoth was an animal that looked like an elephant. Mammoths were huge and their bones were large as well. That is why people used them to build their cabins more than ten thousand years ago.  
 A: Wow! Did people live in other unusual houses many years ago?  
 M: Sure. In **caves**, for example. In the XI century in Kyiv the **monks** settled in caves. "Pechera" means a cave, so later on their **monastery** was called "Pecherskiy".  
 A: Isn't it cold in there?  
 M: The temperature is about 10-12 degrees Celsius. Pecherski caves are long corridors with small side-rooms called caves.  
 A: Can we see the caves now?  
 M: Why not?

a. Look through the second conversation and mark sentences A (Andriy) or M (Mother).

1. It is a cabin made from mammoth's bones .....
2. Isn't it cold in there .....
3. Not now, of course .....
4. Why not .....
5. What's that .....
6. Can we see the caves now .....

b. Read the dialogue again and explain the words in bold.

## 5. Read the text and do the activities.

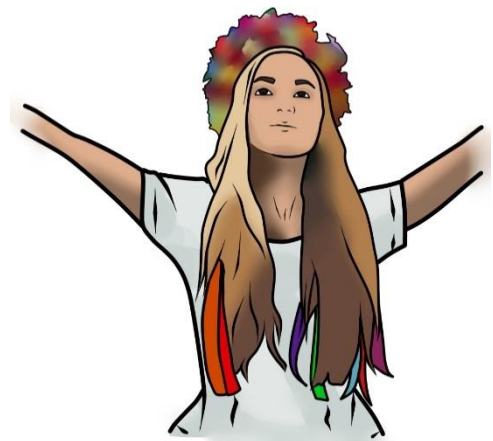
### **The Ukrainians and their character**

Modern archaeological evidence shows that Ukrainians are the original inhabitants of Ukraine – the land, that their forefathers lived on this territory from the 3d or 4<sup>th</sup> millennia B.C.

Ukrainian mentality was formed by many factors: geographical locations at the crossroads by the West and the East, specific climatic conditions and tragic historical events. Since long ago Ukrainians have been known as hard-working, thrifty, skilled farmers, good family men and devoted wives.

They are typically kind-hearted, friendly, hospitable to both fellow countrymen and foreigners. They are cautious yet opened to romanticism and sentimentality. They are resourceful, brave, staunch, ready for self-sacrifice.

Ukrainians have always valued restraint, consideration and a realistic view of life. Their passions burn low but strong and steady. Characteristically, they are melancholic; they may be sad, then suddenly burst with optimism and vitality. They have a very special sense of humor. They can be a bit ironical. Their very rich imagination shows the surrounding realities in a



colorful, at times paradoxical way. Evidence of this is their inexhaustible folk vocal heritage, decorative art, and exotic folk rites.

a. Match the meaning of a word with its translation.

evidence	гнів, пристрасть
forefather	невичерпний
ready for self-sacrifice	народні обряди
passion	спадщина
inexhaustible	предок
heritage	доказ
folk rites	готовий на самопожертву
consideration	розсудливість

b. Think and comment using the text information.

1. Prove that Ukrainians are the original inhabitants of Ukraine.
2. How was Ukrainian mentality formed?
3. Describe Ukrainians as a nation.
4. What do Ukrainians value most of all?
5. Name the most characteristic features of Ukrainians.

## 6. Study the text about Ukrainian fairy tales and check the activities.

Ukrainian fairy tales are as old as the hills. For centuries, people have been **gathering** stories and **integrating** life experience, dreams, facts and fiction into them. They told tales to their children to teach them how to be good.

Many popular tales are about animals. Rukavychka – The Fly’s Castle – is about seven animals, from a mouse to a bear, who make their home inside a lost mitten and become friends. In the story Koza-Dereza, the main character is Billy Goat Gruff who tells lies and is **punished** for that.

Other fairy tales deal with magic. Their good character fight against the **evil** ones. Kotygoroshko –Thistledown – saves the older brothers from the Dragon’s **dungeon**. The story of Tsarivna-Zhaba in which Prince Ivan marries a frog and helps her to become a beautiful princess is also famous.

Some tales are about every day life. Their good characters are hard-working, **generous** and wise. They defeat the bad ones.

All Ukrainian fairy tales are full of humour, love to nature and to our native land. There is something for everyone in them. Which is your favourite?

a. Match the Ukrainian and English titles of fairy tales.

- |                   |                         |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Kotygoroshko   | a. The Frog Princess    |
| 2. Rukavychka     | b. The Billy Goat Gruff |
| 3. Koza-Dereza    | c. Thistledown          |
| 4. Tsarivna-Zhaba | d. The Fly’s Castle     |

b. Read the text again and for fairy tales 1-4 in ex. a write out all the adjectives used to describe the main character and add your own.

- A .....
- B .....
- C .....
- D .....

c. Explain the words from the text in bold.

d. Use the gestures to describe characters from Ukrainian fairy tales. Your class guesses which character you’re describing.

## 7. Read the following information about Ukrainian hryvnia and do the activities.

A currency called hryvna was used in Kievan Rus. In 1917, after the Ukrainian National Republic declared independence from the Russian Empire, the name of the new Ukrainian currency became hryvnia, a revised version of the Kievan Rus' hryvna. The designer was Heorhiy Narbut.

The hryvnia replaced the karbovanets during the period of September 2–16, 1996 (1 hryvnia = 100,000 karbovantsiv) due to hyperinflation in the early 1990s as the reason of collapse of the USSR.

To a large extent, the introduction of hryvnia was secretive. Hryvnia was introduced according to President's Decree dated August 26, 1996. During the transition period, both hryvnia and karbovanets were used in circulation, but merchants were required to give change only in hryvnias. All bank accounts were converted to hryvnia automatically. During the transition period, 97% of karbovanets were taken out of circulation, including 56% in the first 5 days of the currency reform. After September 16, 1996 the remaining karbovanets were allowed to be exchanged to hryvnias in banks.

The hryvnia sign is a cursive Ukrainian letter *He*, with a double horizontal stroke, symbolizing stability, similar to that used in other currency symbols such as ¥ or €. The sign was released in 2005. It is now supported by the latest computer systems. It is still rarely used in Ukraine; instead, the abbreviation UAH is preferred.

In 1996, the first series of hryvnia banknotes was introduced into circulation by the National Bank of Ukraine. They were dated 1992 and were in denominations of 1, 2, 5, 10 and 20 hryven'. The design of the banknotes was developed by Ukrainian artists Vasyl Lopata and Borys Maksymov. One hryvnia banknotes were printed by the Canadian Bank Note Company in 1992. Two, five and ten hryvnia banknotes were printed two years later. Until introduction into circulation the banknotes were kept in Canada. Also in 1996, the 1, 50, and 100 hryvnia notes of the second series were introduced, with 1 hryvnia dated 1994. Later, highest denominations were added. The 200 hryvnia notes of the second series were introduced in 2001, followed by the 500 hryvnia notes of the third series in 2006.

a. Fill in the blanks using your knowledge on Ukrainian national currency or check the Internet.

Banknote value	Image description		Main color	Year of issue
	Obverse	Reverse		
1 hryvnia	Vladimir I of Kyiv	Ruins of Chersoneses	Green and brown	September 2, 1996

b. Online investigation.

Using the Internet try to find out the origin of other world currencies.

## 8. Writing options. Try to make a story on the offered topics.

1. Are you a patriot of your country?
2. What is special about your country?
3. Would you like to live abroad? Give your grounds.
4. How do you see Ukraine growing in the next 10-20 years?
5. Is Ukraine worth visiting? Give your reasons.

## HUMOUR TIME

Ukrainian people are famous for their ability to find the way out of difficult situations. But they are even more famous for their ability to find the way to get into them.

\*\*\*\*\*

I handed the conductor 50 kopeks on Ternopil trolley. She took it and turned away. “Where’s my change?” I said. “Haven’t got any,” she said. “You’ll have to ride two more stops.”

\*\*\*\*\*

***The soul of the man is in his stomach***

A Ukrainian man was shipwrecked. He lived on a desert island for two years. Once he saw a boat with a beautiful woman not far from the shore. She said: “Come here, and I will give you what you wanted for the last two years”. “Vareniki! Vareniki!” – the man cried and jumped into the water.

## LESSON 16

### English-Speaking Countries



*Language is a dress of thought.*

*Language is fossil poetry.*

*A new language – a new world.*

*So many languages you know, so times you are a man.*

#### TOPICAL VOCABULARY

1. General	1. Загальна лексика
native language (mother tongue) / foreign language / international language	рідна мова / іноземна мова / міжнародна мова
English-speaking country	англомовна країна
to study(ied) / to learn(ed / t) / to teach (taught; taught) / to learn by heart	вивчати / вчити / навчати / вчити напам'ять
native speaker	носій мови
knowledge / thorough knowledge (good command) of English	знання / добре володіння англійською мовою
to speak poor English / to speak fluently	погано розмовляти англійською / розмовляти вільно
to have a good command of / to master(ed) the language	оволодіти мовою
vocabulary	лексика
foreign accent	іноземний акцент
means of communication	засіб спілкування
to read (read; read) in the original / in translation	читати в оригіналі / у перекладі
language peculiarity	особливість мови
to translate(d) / to interpret(ed) / to translate with a dictionary / translator (interpreter)	перекладати письмово / перекладати усно / перекладати зі словником / перекладач
meaning / to mean (meant; meant)	значення / означати
to do (did; done) one's best	робити все можливе
to be of great importance	мати важливе значення
as quick as possible	якомога швидше

#### INTRODUCTORY TEXT

#### *English-speaking Countries*

##### Notes to the text:

bald eagle – білоголовий орлан dense (population) – щільний, густий (густонаселений) beaver – бобер maple leaf – кленовий лист urban areas – міські райони	to stay(ed) in close association with – залишитися в тісній співпраці the Commonwealth of Nations – Співдружність націй edging – кайма dominion – панування
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

banner – прапор the Southern Cross constellation – сузір'я Південного Хреста	flightless bird kiwi – нелітаючий птах ківі silver fern – срібна папороть
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Except the United Kingdom there are some other countries in the world where people speak English and this language is one of the official ones. The largest and most important of them are the USA, Canada, Australia and New Zealand.

The USA has 50 states. The flag of the USA has 13 red and white stripes, which symbolize the original 13 states. The national symbol of America is the **bald eagle**; another one is Uncle Sam. 50 stars on the blue field in the left upper corner are for each of the 50 states of the country in our days. The capital of the USA is Washington, D.C. (the District of Columbia). This city was named in honour of the first US president. People of various nationalities live in the USA: the English, the German, the Chinese, the Hindu, the Greek and so on.

The world's second-largest country is Canada. Though Canada is one of the largest countries in the world, its population isn't **dense**. Canada has two official languages – English and French, both spoken by its citizens. The leading cities of Canada are Toronto, Montreal and Vancouver. The capital of Canada is Ottawa. The official head of Canada is the Queen of the United Kingdom. But practically there is a Prime Minister of the Canadian government to rule the country. Emblems of Canada are the **beaver** and the **maple leaf**. The colours of Canada are white and red.

Australia – a continent and a state – is situated in the Southern Hemisphere, in the southern part of Asia, between the Pacific and Indian oceans. It is about 8 million square kilometres. Australia occupies the Tasmania Island and a number of smaller islands too. It is divided into 8 administrative areas. People of about 200 nationalities live there. The aborigines, the Australian natives, represent about 1.5 percent of the population. The Australian flag is blue. There is the flag of the UK on the Australian **banner**, a large seven-pointed star beneath it and **the Southern Cross constellation**.

Another country in the Pacific Ocean where people speak English as an official language is New Zealand. It is located not far from Australia – only the Tasman Sea separates them by a distance of about 1,600 km. New Zealand is a constitutional monarchy with a parliamentary form of government.

New Zealand **stays in close association with** the United Kingdom as a member of **the Commonwealth of Nations**. And the formal head of the state is the Queen of the United Kingdom. The New Zealand flag represents the Southern Cross, the stars of it are red with white **edgings**. The flag of the United Kingdom in the left upper corner shows the recognition to the historical foundations and the fact that New Zealand was once a British colony and **dominion**. The national emblem of New Zealand is a **flightless bird kiwi**. And **silver fern** is a sporting emblem.

### 1. Comprehension questions.

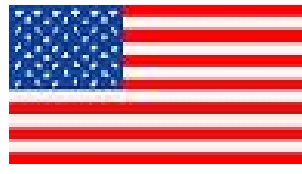
1. Where is English spoken as an official language?
2. What English-speaking country has 2 official languages? What are they?
3. What are emblems of Canada?
4. What is depicted on Australian flag?
5. What country is situated between the Pacific and Indian oceans?
6. How can you prove that New Zealand was once a British colony and dominion?
7. What is the national emblem of New Zealand?

### 2. Find in the text English equivalents to the following.

Офіційна мова, різноманітні національності, густонаселений, багатонаціональне суспільство, семикутна зірка, парламентська форма правління, офіційний голова, символ спорту, визнання історичного заснування.

## VOCABULARY PRACTICE

1. These flags all belong to English-speaking countries. Match the name of the country with its flag.



The United States

Canada

Australia



New Zealand

South Africa

India

2. Choose one of the verbs in the box and put it in the right form.

*try, leave, be, open*

- English ..... the global language of communication in all major fields today.
- Many books, magazines, and newspapers written in English ..... available in many countries around the world.
- Knowledge of English ..... new world of culture, business and travel opportunities.
- Students ..... to do their best to master English.
- English, the language of the people who ..... England to make their names in new countries.

3. How much do you know about the USA? Match the columns. Write the correct letters on the lines.

1. ____ Flag Day	a. a promise of loyalty to U.S.
2. ____ fifty	b. admiration, honor
3. ____ thirteen	c. banner that represents a country
4. ____ flag	d. colors of the American flag
5. ____ holiday	e. display the flag
6. ____ June	f. holiday to honor the flag
7. ____ Pledge of Allegiance	g. love for one's country
8. ____ salute	h. month Flag Day is in
9. ____ Old Glory	i. nickname of the U.S. flag
10. ____ stand at attention	j. number of stars on U.S. flag
11. ____ patriotism	k. number of stripes on U.S. flag
12. ____ flag pole	l. proper hours to fly the flag
13. ____ red, white, blue	m. quickly
14. ____ respect	n. right hand raised to forehead
15. ____ fly the flag	o. shape of flag when folded
16. ____ sunrise to sunset	p. slowly
17. ____ Raise the flag ____.	q. special day of the year
18. ____ Lower the flag ____.	r. stand still and remain silent
19. ____ triangle	s. Star-Spangled Banner
20. ____ American national anthem	t. tall round metal column

4. In each of the following sets of words, one is misspelled. Write that word correctly in the space provided at the left.

- |       |                                                  |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------|
| _____ | 1. beautiful amateur criticize heroes            |
| _____ | 2. pursue admittance writting seize              |
| _____ | 3. audience athelete possession difference       |
| _____ | 4. privilege villain argument paralyze           |
| _____ | 5. efficient ignorance definately exercise       |
| _____ | 6. performence unusually genius leisure          |
| _____ | 7. trans ferred noticeable aggravate guidance    |
| _____ | 8. brilliance beleive conscientious accustom     |
| _____ | 9. apologized committee similiar interest        |
| _____ | 10. magnificent priviledge sufficient changeable |

**5. Read the following dialogues.**

*George:* Donna, you speak English so fluently. I know English just a little bit and I want to improve it.

*Donna:* Thanks. This summer I've been in the UK as a student on the Intensive Course for English Language Development.

*G.:* I've thought about it also. Tell me about these courses.

*D.:* It's the Summer Study Program. You can study for four or eight weeks and create a program of study which suits your own learning needs.

*G.:* Who can study there?

*D.:* All students over 18 years of age with intermediate or advanced English level.

*G.:* What are the aims of these courses?

*D.:* It's the possibility to improve your English language skills.

\*\*\*\*\*

*A:* Victor, you speak good English.

*V:* Oh, no. My English is rather poor. But I would like to improve my spoken English.

*A:* And how long have you been learning it?

*V:* Well, normally we study foreign languages at secondary schools starting from the 5<sup>th</sup> form. In addition to ordinary schools there are specialized English language schools where the language is taught thoroughly from the first form. Then we continue to study foreign languages in higher educational institutions.

*A:* What foreign languages are usually taught in your University?

*V:* As a matter of fact, English, German, French and Spanish. But the majority of students master English. Andrew, and what languages are taught in Universities of Great Britain?

*A:* Well, we learn French and German as foreign languages. And how many classes a week have you got?

*V:* We have got an academic hour a week now. It's too small for languages, but I try to work at English on my own.

*A:* And what are you doing on your own?

*V:* I have got a teach-yourself book and some CDs. So now and then I listen to CDs, learn texts and dialogues by heart. I like to read English books in the original. This is the book I am reading at the moment.

*A:* And what kinds of books do you prefer to read?

*V:* I prefer to read fiction, science fiction, adventure and historical books.

**6. Fill in the blanks with suitable words. More than one variant may be possible.**

***English spelling***

English spelling is unpredictable at the best of times, and occasionally totally chaotic – an opinion no doubt shared by British ..... and by foreigners who study English. However, studies of the ..... show that there are only about 400 ..... whose spelling is totally irregular. Unfortunately many of them are ..... the most frequently used in the language. The first problem with ..... arose when the Romans tried to write down Old English words



..... the 23 letter Latin alphabet. Old English at that time ..... nearly 40 vowels and consonants. Another problem came with the Norman ..... and the third with the introduction of the printing press in 1476 and emerging of a standard spelling system. The ..... reflected the speech of the London area. During the 15<sup>th</sup> ..... the pronunciation of vowels changed but because of the printing ..... the standard spelling system never caught up with the ..... . There have been many attempts to reform the ..... spelling system but so far no changes have been made since the 16<sup>th</sup> century, mainly ..... nobody can agree on what the best alternative may be!

## 7. Get some information of the English language and express your thoughts.

### *English language statistics*

English is currently one of the most widely spoken and written languages worldwide, with some 380 million native speakers.

Through the global influence of native English speakers in cinema, music, broadcasting, science, and the Internet in recent decades, English is now the most widely learned second language in the world.

Because a working knowledge of English is required in many fields and occupations, education ministries around the world mandate the teaching of English to at least a basic level.

And there are some other facts about English you might be interested in knowing. In no particular order, here are some of the numbers about English:

- English is the most widespread language in the world and is more widely spoken and written than any other language.
  - Over 400 million people use the English vocabulary as a mother tongue, only surpassed in numbers, but not in distribution by speakers of the many varieties of Chinese.
  - Over 700 million people, speak English, as a foreign language.
  - Did you know that of all the world's languages (over 2,700) English is arguably the richest in vocabulary; and that the Oxford English Dictionary lists about 500,000 words, and there are a half-million technical and scientific terms still uncatalogued.
  - Three-quarters of the world's mail, telexes and cables are in English.
  - More than half of the world's technical and scientific periodicals are in English.
  - English is the medium for 80% of the information stored in the world's computers.
  - English is the language of navigation, aviation and of Christianity; it is the ecumenical language of the World Council of Churches.



- Five of the largest broadcasting companies in the world (CBS, NBC, ABC, BBC and CBC) transmit in English, reaching millions and millions of people all over the world.

The main language used throughout the world on the internet is English. The media that make up the Internet are overwhelmingly American in origin, so it is no wonder that the mother tongue of the Web is English. Four factors determine the degree to which a given language finds use on the Internet:

1. the number of users of the language;
2. the extent of its use as an official language;
3. the economic power of the language and;
4. the volume of information disseminated in that language.

Today, English reigns supreme in all four respects. It is studied as a foreign language throughout the world and employed by a majority of Internet users. Of the 163 member nations of the U.N., more use English as their official language than any other. The easiest way to calculate the economic influence of a language may be to add up the gross domestic products (GDP) of all the nations where it is spoken. People who count English as their mother tongue make up less than 10% of the world's population, but possess over 30% of the world's economic power. Therefore, in terms of the quantity of transmitted information, English is the leader by far. After English, 26 nations in the U.N. cite French as their official tongue, 21 Spanish and 17 Arabic. Each of these three languages forms a sizable linguistic constituency on the Internet.

*Decide which of the following statements are true or false.*

T / F	Statements
	English is one of the most widely spoken languages worldwide, with some 500 million native speakers.
	English is now the most widely learned second language in the world.
	The Oxford English Dictionary lists about 500,000 words.
	Three-quarters of the world's mail, telexes and cables are in French.
	People who count English as their mother tongue make up less than 21% of the world's population.
	English is the medium for 80% of the information stored in the world's computers.

### 8. Writing options. Try to make a story on the offered topics.

1. Can you give at least 5 reasons why people learn foreign languages? Why do you think some people don't want to learn foreign languages?
2. What do people need to be good language learners?
3. How do you use the Internet to learn English?
4. What foreign languages would you like to know? Why?
5. How do you plan to use the foreign languages you are learning now in your future job?
6. What do you think changes more with time: grammar, vocabulary or pronunciation?
7. Which country is the best place to study English?
8. Do you agree that all the languages are interesting and beautiful in their own way? Why do you think so?
9. Do you think that English will completely dominate all the other languages in future? If yes, how will it affect the world?

## HUMOUR TIME

*Teacher:* Maria please point to America on the map.

*Maria:* This is it.

*Teacher:* Well done. Now class, who found America?

*Class:* Maria did.

\*\*\*\*\*

A Scotsman who was driving home one night, ran into a car driven by an Englishman. The Scotsman got out of the car to apologize and offered the Englishman a drink of whisky. The Englishman was glad to have it. "Go on," said the Scot, "have another drink."

\*\*\*\*\*

The Englishman drank gratefully. "But don't you want one, too?" he asked the Scotsman. "Perhaps," replied the Scotsman, "after the police have gone."

\*\*\*\*\*

*Teacher:* Tell me a sentence that starts with an "I".

*Student:* I is the...

*Teacher:* Stop! Never put "is" after an "I". Always put 'am' after an "I".

*Student:* OK. I am the ninth letter of the alphabet.

\*\*\*\*\*

A student, who is studying English as a foreign language, was confused when he saw the words “open here” on a box of laundry soap, so he asks the clerk, “Can’t I wait until I get home to open it?”

## PART II

# GRAMMAR THEORY



### *The Article (Артикль)*

*Артикль* – це службова частина мови, що вживається з іменниками. В англійській мові є два артиклі – означений (definite – *the*) та неозначений (indefinite – *a, an*).

Артикль *a, an* (перед іменниками, що починаються на голосний, наприклад: *an apple, an hour*) походить від слова *one* – один і вживається з іменниками, про які йде мова вперше.

Артикль *the* вживається з іменниками, про які вже йшла мова, або з назвами предметів – єдиних у своєму роді. Наприклад: *I have a house. The house I live in is made of bricks.*

#### Пам'ятка:

Якщо перед іменником стоїть прикметник, артикль уживають перед прикметником: *This is a book. This is an interesting book.*

#### **Уживання неозначеного артикля *a (an)*:**

1. Уживають лише перед злічуваними іменниками, що стоять в однині.
2. Перед назвами професій: *She is a doctor.*
3. Перед деякими числівниками: *a million, a hundred, a thousand, a half, a third.*
4. В окличних реченнях після слова *What*: *What a fine day!*
5. Після слів *such, quite*: *It was such a cold weather yesterday! He is quite a child.*
6. Зі словами *few, little*: *We had a few books.*

#### **Уживання означеного артикля *the*:**

1. Уживають, якщо іменник означає єдиний у своєму роді об'єкт: *the Sun, the Earth, the East, the North, the West.*
2. Якщо іменник означає предмет, про який йде мова в конкретній ситуації: *Put the pen on the table.*
3. Перед порядковими числівниками: *My flat is on the second floor.*
4. Для утворення найвищого ступеня порівняння прикметників / за умови вживання Present Perfect Tense Active Voice: *It's the biggest bear I've ever seen in my life!*
5. Перед назвами морів, річок, каналів, океанів, пустель, гір: *The Alps, the Atlantic Ocean, the Black Sea, the Dniipro.*
6. Перед назвами країн, регіонів, груп островів, що вжито в множині: *the USA, the Bahamas, the Netherlands, the Congo, the Sudan, the Caucasus, the Crimea.*
7. Перед назвами газет і журналів: *the Guardian, the Times.*

#### Пам'ятка:

#### **Словосполучення з артиклем *the*:**

to (at) the cinema / shop / theater / market;

to the left / right; in the middle / corner, *npome* in front;

in the morning / afternoon / evening; *npome* at night / at half past five / at a quarter past five;

to (in) north / south / west / east.

#### **Відсутність артикля**

1. Артикль не вживають, якщо перед іменником стоїть присвійний / вказівний займенник: *This is my book.*
2. Якщо перед іменником стоїть іменник в присвійному відмінку: *My son's hair is red.*
3. Якщо перед іменником стоїть заперечення *no*: *There's no peaches left in the fridge.*
4. Якщо після іменника стоїть кількісний числівник: *Open your books at page ten.*
5. Перед назвами наук, навчальних дисциплін: *I study English / She learns History.*
6. Перед назвами місяців, днів тижня: *in September / on Friday.*

7. Перед власними іменами: Smith, Nick, George, *проте*: the Browns / the Whites (сім'я Браунів, Уайтів – усі члени родини).
8. Перед іменниками, що не можна перерахувати: peace, freedom, happiness, air, love, water.

**Пам'ятка:**

**Відсутність артикля у словосполученнях:**

at / for / after / before breakfast, lunch, dinner, supper;

to have breakfast / lunch / dinner / supper;

(to go to) at school / work / home;

to play football / chess / guitar, *проте* to play the piano / the violin.

## ***Noun. Plural of Nouns (Іменник. Множина іменника)***

*Іменник* – це самостійна частина мови, що називає предмет і відповідає на запитання хто, що. Наприклад: a pen, a table, an engineer, a book.

### **Number (Число)**

Іменники в англійській мові поділяють на злічувані (countable) та незлічувані (uncountable). Вони мають форми однини (singular) та множини (plural).

Злічувані іменники означають предмети, які можна порахувати: *a chair, a question*.

Незлічувані іменники – це назви речовин та багатьох абстрактних понять, які не можна порахувати: *water, milk, friendship, freedom*.

**Способи утворення множини іменника:**

однина	множина	правила утворення множини іменника
student	students	1. Додаванням закінчення <i>-s</i> до однини іменника.
place	places	
name	names	
bus	buses	2. Додаванням закінчення <i>-es</i> до іменника в однині, що закінчується на <i>-s, -ss, -x, -sh, -ch, -o</i> .
class	classes	
bush	bushes	
branch	branches	
hero	heroes	
box	boxes	
Винятки: photo – photos / piano – pianos / radio – radios		
city	cities	3. Шляхом заміни <i>y</i> на <i>i</i> з попереднім приголосним та додаванням закінчення <i>-es</i> ; якщо <i>y</i> передує голосний – змін немає.
property	properties	
key	keys	
way	ways	4. Шляхом заміни <i>f</i> на <i>v</i> та додаванням закінчення <i>-s, -ss</i> .
wife	wives	
leaf	leaves	
wolf	wolves	
knife	knives	
Винятки: roof – roofs / chief – chiefs / kerchief – kerchiefs / safe – safes		
man	men	5. Шляхом додавання закінчення <i>-en</i> та зміни кореневого голосного.
woman	women	
foot	feet	
tooth	teeth	
goose	geese	
mouse	mice	
louse	lice	
ox	oxen	
child	children	
phenomenon	phenomena	6. Іменники, запозичені з грецької та латинської мов, збереглися в англійській мові без змін.
datum	data	
radius	radii	
nucleus	nuclei	
crisis	crises	
basis	bases	
analysis	analyses	7. У складних іменниках форми множини набуває лише головний іменник; якщо складний іменник утворений з інших частин
daughter-in-law	daughters-in-law	
school-mate	school-mates	
forget-me-not	forget-me-nots	

merry-go-round	merry-go-rounds	мови, то закінчення –s додають у кінці слова.
----------------	-----------------	-----------------------------------------------

Іменники *sheep / deer / swine / fish* та назви деяких порід риб мають однакову форму в однині та в множині.

Іменники, що виражають абстрактні поняття, уживають тільки в однині: *chalk / silver / peace / courage / advice / knowledge / information / news / progress / money*.

Іменники, що складаються з двох рівних або подібних частин, уживають тільки в множині: *spectacles / trousers / scissors / goods / clothes / contents / wages*.

#### Пам'ятка:

this is – these are / that is – those are / there is – there are / it is – they are

#### **Case (Відмінок)**

В англійській мові є два відмінки іменників: загальний (the Common Case) і присвійний (the Possessive Case).

Присвійний відмінок відповідає на запитання *whose*, у його формі вживають переважно іменники, що означають людей і тварин. Такий відмінок утворюється додаванням до іменника в однині апострофа та закінчення –s або за допомогою ***of-phrase***.

однина	множина	утворення за допомогою <b>of-phrase (одн / мн)</b>
the child's ball	the children's balls	ball of the child / balls of the children
the woman's friend	the women's friends	friend of the woman / friends of the women
my uncle's car	my uncles' cars	car of my uncle / cars of my uncles
sister's problem	sisters' problems	problem of sister / problems of sisters

## Adjective. Degrees of Comparison of Adjectives (Прикметник. Ступені порівняння прикметників)

Прикметник – це самостійна частина мови, що виражає ознаку, якість або властивість предмета і відповідає на запитання який, яка.

В англійській мові розрізняють прості прикметники (Simple Adjectives) – good, red, new, unkind, похідні (Derived Adjectives) – beautiful, foolish, hopeless і складні (Compound Adjectives) – snow-white, deaf-mute, cold-hearted, easy-going, four-wheeled.

За граматичними ознаками прикметники поділяють на якісні (Qualitative Adjectives) – вказують на якість, ознаки та властивості речей: *grey, big, clever* та відносні (Relative Adjectives) – вказують на якість і ознаки речей: *a wooden bench, a difficult task*.

Прикметники в англійській мові не змінюються ні за числами, ні за родами, ні за відмінками: *a round table, young men, an old carpenter*. Вони змінюються лише за ступенями порівняння. Якісні прикметники в англійській мові мають основну форму (positive degree), вищий ступінь порівняння (comparative degree) та найвищий (superlative degree).

### Способи утворення ступенів порівняння прикметників

прикметник	основна форма (Positive Degree)	вищий ступінь (Comparative Degree)	найвищий ступінь (Superlative Degree)
<i>- er / - est</i>			
1. Односкладові	short big	shorter bigger	the shortest the biggest
2. Двоскладові, що закінчуються на <i>-er, -y, -ow, -le</i>	early clever simple narrow	earlier cleverer simpler narrower	the earliest the cleverest the simplest the narrowest
3. Двоскладові з наголосом на другий склад	polite severe	politer severer	the politest the severest
<i>more / the most</i>			
1. Багатоскладові	important handsome attractive easy-going	more important more handsome more attractive more easy-going	the most important the most handsome the most attractive the most easy-going
Винятки:	much / many little good bad far	more less better worse further	the most the least the best the worst the furthest

### Інші способи вираження порівняння

- Для порівняння двох предметів однакової якості прикметник в основній формі ставлять між парним сполучником **as...as**. Щоб уникнути повторення іменника, вживають займенник *one*.  
*e.g. This house is as big as that one. This lady is as attractive as that one. I don't know whom I like more.*
- Для вираження нерівного ступеня якості вживають сполучник **not so...as**.  
*e.g. Our project is not so profitable as theirs. His answer is not so sure as hers.*
  - Після вищого ступеня вживають сполучник *than* (ніж).  
*e.g. This summer is hotter than the last one. This language is more difficult to learn than that one.*



3. Порівняльний сполучник **the...the** в поєднанні з прикметником або з прислівником у вищому ступені перекладають *що...то*.  
*e.g. The more I practice the better I speak this language. The more he looked at her the more he liked her.*
4. Для посилення вищого ступеня вживають прислівники **much** / **far**, які ставлять перед прикметником у вищому ступені і перекладають *значно, більше*.  
*e.g. This story is much (far) more interesting than that one. This trunk is much (far) heavier than that one.*

## Pronoun (Займенник)

Займенники – це слова, які не називають предмет, особу, якість та явища, а тільки вказують на них. Їхнє значення залежить від контексту: *Where is she? – She is in the room.*

В англійській мові займенники поділяють на:

1. personal (особові): I / he / she / it / we / you / they;
2. possessive (присвійні): my / his / her / its / our / your / their;
3. reflexive (зворотні): myself / himself / herself / itself / yourself / ourselves / themselves;
4. reciprocal (взаємні): each other (implies only two) / one another (implies more than two persons);
5. demonstrative (вказівні): this (these) / that (those) / such / the same;
6. interrogative (питальні): who / whose / what / which;
7. defining (означальні): each / every / everyone / everything / all / either / both / other / another;
8. indefinite (неозначені): some / somebody / something / someone / any / anybody / anything / anyone / one;
9. negative (заперечні): no / none / neither / nobody / no one / nothing.

### Personal Pronouns (Особові займенники)

Називний відмінок (Nominative Case)	Об'єктний відмінок (Objective Case)
I – я	me – мене / мені
he – він	him – його / йому
she – вона	her – їй / її
it – він / вона / воно	it – його / йому / їй / її
you – ти, ви	you – вас / вам / тебе / тобі
we – ми	us – нам / нас
they – вони	them – їх / їм

*e.g. I'm speaking to him / He is discussing the matter / Did you invite them to the party? / They are thinking about her.*

### Possessive Pronouns (Присвійні займенники)

Залежна форма (Conjoint Form)	Незалежна форма (Absolute Form)	Українські відповідники
my	mine	мій / моя / моє / мої
his	his	його (чоловічий рід)
her	hers	її
its	----	його (середній рід), її
our	ours	наш / наша / наше / наші
your	yours	ваш / ваша / ваше / ваші / твій / твоя / твоє / твої
their	theirs	їхній / їхня / їхнє / їхні

*e.g. Where are all our things? – Mine are there. They use their notes. It's no business of yours.*

### Reflexive Pronouns (Зворотні займенники)

Види зворотних займенників подано вище. *You call yourself a gentleman. / He doesn't like to talk about himself. / I've seen it myself. / She told herself that it was true. / They did it themselves.*

### Reciprocal Pronouns (Взаємні займенники)

Види взаємних займенників подано вище. *We loved each other very much. / We respect and trust each other. / They were looking at one another with great interest.*

### Demonstrative Pronouns (Вказівні займенники)

Види вказівних займенників подано вище. *This watch is dear. / These raw materials come from abroad. / It is the same boy who showed us the way. / Why do you ask me such a question?*

### **Interrogative Pronouns (Питальні займенники)**

Види питальних займенників подано вище. *Who told you about it? / Whom do you trust? / What's he doing? / Which of them is a doctor? / Whose money is this?*

### **Defining Pronouns (Означальні займенники)**

Види означальних займенників подано вище. *All the teachers were present. / Each has his own place. / We jog a kilometer every day. / Everybody has already come. / On either side of the river lies a valley. / The other questions may be asked. / This pen won't write. Give me another.*

### **Indefinite Pronouns (Неозначені займенники)**

Види неозначених займенників подано вище. *They've got some money to buy this thing. / Have you got any ideas to discuss? / Is there anybody here? / We haven't got any sugar left. / He got frightened because somebody knocked on his door. / Something's wrong with my eyes, I don't see anything. / They talk to us as they don't know anybody here. / One must keep one's word.*

### **Negative Pronouns (Заперечні займенники)**

Види заперечних займенників подано вище. *She knows nothing. / No dictionary could help him as he was not smart enough. / I was ringing but no one answered. / None of the rooms were aired. / Neither of us mentioned him. / It was nobody's house.*

## Verb. Auxiliary Verbs to be, to have, to do (Дієслово. Допоміжні дієслова бути, мати, виконувати)

Дієслово – це повнозначна, самостійна частина мови, яка означає дію (*to build, to run*), стан (*to be, to sleep*), відчуття (*to feel, to smell*), процеси мислення (*to consider, to think*) і відповідає на запитання *що робити*. Дієслово в англійській мові має найбільшу кількість форм.

### Auxiliary Verbs to be, to have, to do

Verb	Present Simple	Past Simple	Future Simple	Past Participle
<i>to be</i>	am / is / are	was / were	will be (all persons)	been
<i>to have</i>	have / has	had (all persons)	will have (all persons)	had
<i>to do</i>	do / does	did (all persons)	will do (all persons)	done

Verb	Affirmative form (Present / Past / Future)	Interrogative form (Present / Past / Future)	Negative form (Present / Past / Future)
<i>to be</i>	<i>I'm a manager. / He (she, it) was at home then. / They will be our friends soon.</i>	<i>Was I (he, she, it) a teacher in the past? / Were you (we, they) ready when I came? / Will you come for tea?</i>	<i>She isn't your girlfriend. / They weren't pilots. / We won't arrive tomorrow.</i>
<i>to have</i>	<i>I (you, we, they) have a dog. / He had a present for me. / I'll have some money next week.</i>	<i>Do you have a car? (Does he have a cat?) / Did she have a phone? / Will they have their own house?</i>	<i>I don't (he doesn't) have an answer. / We didn't have it in time. / She won't have this cake</i>
<i>to do</i>	<i>I (you, we, they) do it regularly. / They did it yesterday. / We'll do it right soon.</i>	<i>Do you often do this job? (Does he do these exercises?) / Did they do it together? / Will you do it next week?</i>	<i>They don't do this work. / I didn't do this wrong. / He won't do that project.</i>

### Construction there is / there are

У речення з такими конструкціями вказується на наявність або на відсутність якогось предмета (явища, особи) у певному місці чи в певний час. Такі речення починаються словом *there*, яке не має самостійного значення, а лише вводиться дієсловом і українською мовою не перекладається або перекладається як *є, має місце, перебуває, стоїть*. До того ж переклад слід починати з кінця.

*e.g. There is a piano in the room in the room. – У кімнаті є (стоїть) піаніно (Affirmative form, Present Simple)*

*There are apples on the table.*

*There was a girl in green dress on the stage. (Affirmative form, Past Simple)*

*There were a lot of spelling mistakes in your composition.*

*There will be much noise about this accident. (Affirmative form, Future Simple)*

*Is there (are there) / was there (were there) / will there be problem(s) with this matter? (Interrogative form, Present / Past / Future Simple)*

*There isn't (there aren't) / there wasn't (there weren't) / there won't be any question(s) asked at the conference. (Negative form, Present / Past / Future Simple)*

В англійській мові розрізняють чотири групи часових форм дієслова: Indefinite Group of Tenses (неозначена група часів), Continuous Group of Tenses (тривала група часів), Perfect Group of Tenses (перфектна / доконана група часів), Perfect Continuous Group of Tenses (перфектно-тривала група часів).

Зведена таблиця часових форм дієслова

	<b>Simple</b> <b>...verb</b>	<b>Continuous</b> <b>be+ing</b>	<b>Perfect</b> <b>have+V<sub>III</sub>(ed)</b>	<b>Perfect Continuous</b> <b>have been+V<sub>ing</sub></b>
<b>Present</b>	<b>ask(s)</b>  <i>*постійна, повторювана дія</i> <i>*факт</i> <i>*майбутня дія (дієслова руху)</i>  usually / generally always / never often / seldom sometimes / every	<b>am / is / are asking</b>  <i>*дія (процес), що відбувається в момент мовлення</i> <i>* заздалегідь запланована майбутня дія</i>  now at present at the moment	<b>have / has asked</b>  <i>*закінчена дія, пов'язана з теперішнім; результат</i>  never / ever just / already / not yet lately / recently this week / today by now	<b>have / has been asking</b>  <i>*дія (процес), що почалася в минулому, досі триває або щойно закінчилася</i>  for a month for a long time since 5 o'clock how long / since when
<b>Past</b>	<b>asked took</b>  <i>*дія (послідовність дій) у минулому</i>  yesterday last / ago	<b>was / were asking</b>  <i>*дія (процес), що відбувається в момент мовлення в минулому</i>  at 5 yesterday from 5 to (till) 6 yesterday for 3 days last week all day long / the whole day when we came	<b>had asked</b>  <i>*дія, завершена до певного моменту в минулому</i> <i>*узгодження часів</i>  by 5 o'clock yesterday before he came by the end of last year	<b>had been asking</b>  <i>*дія (процес), яка почалася до певного моменту в минулому і продовжувалася в той момент</i>  <b>He had been working</b> for 2 hours, when my brother came
<b>Future</b>	<b>will ask</b>  <i>*майбутня (незапланована) дія</i> <i>*if / when clauses+Present Simple</i>  tomorrow next / in soon	<b>will be asking</b>  <i>* дія (процес), що відбувається в момент мовлення в майбутньому</i>  at 5 tomorrow from 5 to (till) 6 tomorrow for 3 days next week all day long tomorrow when he comes	<b>will have asked</b>  <i>* дія, завершена до певного моменту в майбутньому</i>  by 5 o'clock tomorrow when he comes by next summer	<b>will have been asking</b>  <i>*дія (процес), яка почнеться до певного моменту в майбутньому і триватиме в той момент</i>  <b>When you come, I'll have been working</b> for 2 hours

## ***Indefinite Group of Tenses***

Неозначену групу часів вживають для вираження дії, що відбувається в теперішньому, минулому чи майбутньому часі, але не вказує на її характер, тривалість, завершеність чи передування іншій дії або певному моменту в минулому чи в майбутньому. Дієслова в неозначених часах можуть перекладатися українською мовою як дієсловами доконаного, так і недоконаного виду.

### ***Present Indefinite (Simple) / Теперішній неозначений час***

#### **I Formation (Утворення)**

Утворюється за допомогою інфінітива основного дієслова без частки *to*, в третій особі однини (*he, she, it*) до основи дієслова додається закінчення *-s*. Дієслово *to be* змінюється відповідно (див. н. Дієслово)

**<sup>to</sup> V, V<sub>s</sub> / to be – am, is, are**

*I always drink black coffee in the morning. / He (she, it) often thinks about her. (Affirmative form)*

*Do you usually take a taxi to work? / Does he (she, it) know (no –s comes) anything about the country? (Interrogative form)*

*We don't (do+not) play tennis in the evening. / He (she, it) doesn't (does+not) read (no –s comes) much of classical literature. (Negative form)*

#### **II Usage (Вживання)**

1. Для вираження звичайної, повторюваної дії в теперішньому:  
*He gets up early as he is a taxi-driver. / Heavy trucks make a lot of noise.*
2. Дії, яка характеризує предмет постійно:  
*His dogs always attack the neighbors. / She misses you much when you leave.*
3. Загальновідомих істин:  
*The Earth goes round the Sun. / A year has 12 months. / Water boils at 100° C.*
4. Запланованої майбутньої дії з дієсловами, що означають рух:  
*They move out tomorrow. / Do you leave this country next week?*

#### **III Time-markers (Обставини часу, часові маркери)**

Usually / often / always / seldom / sometimes (from time to time, occasionally) / rarely / constantly / never / every (day, week, month, year, century, weekend, time, summer, fall, etc.)

### ***Past Indefinite (Simple) / Минулий неозначений час***

#### **I Formation (Утворення)**

В англійській мові під час вивчення Past Simple слід виокремлювати дві категорії дієслів: правильні (regular) та неправильні (irregular). Правильні дієслова утворюють Past Simple додаванням закінчення *-ed* до основи дієслова без частки *to*, *e.g. to play – played / to travel – traveled*, неправильні дієслова утворюють Past Simple по-різному (Список неправильних дієслів наведено нижче), *e.g. to see – saw / to catch – caught*.

➤ дієслово **to be** змінюється відповідно. (див. н. Дієслово)

**<sup>to</sup> V<sub>II</sub> (ed) / to be – was, were**

*Yesterday she ate all the sweets at home. / He was a good football player when he was young. (Affirmative form)*

*Did you sleep (V<sub>I</sub>) well last night? / Where did they travel (V<sub>I</sub>) last summer? (Interrogative form)*

*We didn't (did+not) buy (V<sub>I</sub>) anything because we had no money left. / I didn't call (V<sub>I</sub>) you because I lost your phone number. (Negative form)*

#### **II Usage (Вживання)**

1. Для вираження одноразової дії в минулому:  
*We entered the house in silence. / He met us at the station in time.*
2. Ряду послідовних дій у минулому:

*He shut the window, switched off the light and went upstairs. / She took the dress, tried it on and paid cash.*

3. Повторюваної дії в минулому:

*I called her every day. / He made an entry in his diary every night.*

### III Time-markers (Обставини часу, часові маркери)

Yesterday / the day before yesterday / last (night, week, month, year, century, summer, fall, weekend, etc.) / (a night, week, month, year, century, weekend, etc. ) ago

### List of irregular verbs

Infinitive	Past Simple	Past Participle (Participle II)	Translation
to be	was / were	been	бути
to beat	beat	beaten	бити
to bear	bore	born	нести, родити
to become	became	become	ставати
to begin	began	begun	починати
to bend	bent	bent	згинати(ся)
to bet	bet	bet	робити ставки, битися об заклад
to bite	bit	bitten	кусати
to blow	blew	blown	дути
to break	broke	broken	розбивати, ламати
to bring	brought	brought	приносити
to build	built	built	будувати
to burst	burst	burst	розриватися, вибухати
to buy	bought	bought	купувати
to catch	caught	caught	ловити, спіймати
to choose	chose	chosen	вибирати
to come	came	come	приходити
to cost	cost	cost	коштувати
to cut	cut	cut	різати
to deal	dealt	dealt	мати справу
to dig	dug	dug	копати
to do	did	done	робити
to draw	drew	drawn	малювати (олівцем)
to drink	drank	drunk	пити
to drive	drove	driven	їхати (за кермом)
to eat	ate	eaten	їсти
to fall	fell	fallen	падати
to feed	fed	fed	годувати
to feel	felt	felt	відчувати
to fight	fought	fought	битися, боротися
to find	found	found	знаходити
to fly	flew	flown	літати
to forbid	forbade	forbidden	забороняти
to forget	forgot	forgotten	забувати
to forgive	forgave	forgiven	пробачати
to freeze	froze	frozen	замерзати
to get	got	got / gotten	отримувати, діставати
to give	gave	given	давати
to go	went	gone	йти, їхати
to grow	grew	grown	рости
to hang	hung	hung	повисіти (стратити)

to have	had	had	мати
to hear	heard	heard	чути
to hide	hid	hidden	ховатися
to hit	hit	hit	вдарити, влучити
to hold	held	held	тримати, проводити
to hurt	hurt	hurt	кривдити, завдавати болю
to keep	kept	kept	тримати, зберігати
to know	knew	known	знати
to lay	laid	laid	класти
to lead	led	led	вести
to leave	left	left	залишати
to lend	lent	lent	позичати (комусь)
to let	let	let	пускати, дозволяти
to lie	lay	lain	лежати
to light	lit	lit	освітлювати, запалювати
to lose	lost	lost	втратити
to make	made	made	робити
to mean	meant	meant	означати, мати намір
to meet	met	met	зустрічати
to pay	paid [peɪd]	paid [peɪd]	платити
to put	put	put	класти
to read	read [red]	read [red]	читати
to ride	rode	ridden	їхати (верхи, на велосипеді)
to ring	rang	rung	дзвонити
to rise	rose	risen	вставати, підніматися
to run	ran	run	бігти
to say	said [seɪd]	said [seɪd]	говорити, сказати
to see	saw	seen	бачити
to seek	sought	sought	шукати
to sell	sold	sold	продавати
to send	sent	sent	посилати
to set	set	set	ставити, встановлювати
to sew	sewed	sewn / sewed	шити
to shake	shook	shaken	трясти
to shine	shone	shone	світити, сяяти
to shoot	shot	shot	стріляти, проростати
to show	showed	shown	показувати
to shrink	shrank	shrunk	скорочуватися, зсідатися
to shut	shut	shut	закривати
to sing	sang	sung	співати
to sit	sat	sat	сидіти
to sleep	slept	slept	спати
to speak	spoke	spoke	говорити
to spend	spent	spent	витрачати
to split	split	split	розщеплювати, ділити
to spread	spread	spread	поширювати
to spring	sprang	sprung	стрибати, виникати
to stand	stood	stood	стояти
to steal	stole	stolen	(у)красти
to stick	stuck	stuck	приклеювати, встромляти
to sting	stung	stung	жалити
to stink	stank	stunk	смердіти
to strike	struck	struck	бити, вдарити, бастувати
to swear	swore	sworn	клястися



to sweep	swept	swept	мести
to swing	swung	swung	гойдатися
to take	took	taken	брати
to teach	taught	taught	вчити
to tear	tore	torn	рвати
to tell	told	told	розповідати
to think	thought	thought	думати
to throw	threw	thrown	кидати
to understand	understood	understood	розуміти
to wake	woke	woken	прокидатися, будити
to wear	wore	worn	носити
to win	won [wʌn]	won [wʌn]	вигравати
to write	wrote	written	писати

## ***Future Indefinite (Simple) / Майбутній неозначений час***

### **I Formation (Утворення)**

Утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова *will* (застаріле *shall*) для всіх осіб та інфінітива основного дієслова без частки *to*.

**will+<sup>to</sup> V<sub>I</sub>**

Скорочена форма:

I / he / she / it / you / we / they will → I'll / he'll / she'll / it'll / you'll / we'll / they'll

*He'll be here soon. / I will remember this day in my life forever. (Affirmative form)*

*Will you come to my place tomorrow? / When will my grandparents plant a new garden? (Interrogative form)*

*They won't (will+not) meet any more as they are apart. / They won't stay for dinner with us because they must leave earlier. (Negative form)*

### **II Usage (Вживання)**

1. Для вираження постійної або одноразової спонтанної дії в майбутньому:  
*Oh, I've left the door open. I'll go and shut it. / 'What would you like to drink?' 'I'll have a lemonade, please.' / She'll find a new boyfriend soon. / Will you finish this book next month? / I'll call you tomorrow, cheer up.*
2. Для вираження припущень чи планів на майбутнє з уживанням фраз типу I think (I don't think) I'll / I believe I'll / I suppose I'll:  
*I have a headache. I think I'll stay at home this evening. / I don't think I'll go out tonight. I have some work to do. / I suppose it won't take long.*
3. Англійське речення складається з двох частин – головного і підрядного. У підрядних реченнях умови (Condition) після сполучника *if* та підрядних реченнях часу (Time) після сполучників *till / until, unless* (негативне значення сполучників), *after, before, when, as soon as, as long as, on condition that, provided, in case* вживається **Present Simple**. У головному реченні вживається **Future Simple**. Якщо підрядне речення умови і часу стоїть на першому місці, воно відділяється від головного комою. Кома не ставиться, якщо порядок речень не порушено.

**will+<sup>to</sup> V<sub>I</sub> / <sup>to</sup> V, V<sub>s</sub> (don't / doesn't / am, is, are)**

*I'll give you a candy if you are good. / He'll inform me when they arrive. / If he agrees, I'll let you know. / We'll meet when you are at home. / There won't be a flood any more as soon as we call a roofer. / If we don't get this money in time, we'll become bankrupts. / I'll stay angry unless you visit me.*

### **III Time-markers (Обставини часу, часові маркери)**

Tomorrow / the day after tomorrow / soon / next (week, month, year, decade, century, weekend, summer, autumn, etc.) / in (через)

## Continuous Group of Tenses

Тривала група часів виражає дію як процес, що відбувається (триває) в момент мовлення або в теперішній період часу (Present Continuous), тривала в якийсь момент чи період часу в минулому (Past Continuous), триватиме в певний момент або період часу в майбутньому (Future Continuous).

### Present Continuous (Progressive) / Теперішній тривалий час

#### I Formation (Утворення)

Утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова *to be* у Present Simple та дієприкметника теперішнього часу (Present Participle / Participle I) основного дієслова.

**am, is, are+V<sub>ing</sub>**

Скорочена форма:

I am / he, she, it is / you, we, they are doing → I'm / he's, she's, it's / you're, we're, they're doing

*Mom is talking over the phone. / They are training now. (Affirmative form)*

*Are you hurrying to work? / Is dad smoking in his study? (Interrogative form)*

*I'm not listening to you. / You may speak loud. The child isn't (is+not) sleeping yet. / They aren't (are+not) staying here any more. (Negative form)*

#### II Usage (Вживання)

1. Для вираження дії, що відбувається в момент мовлення:

*Why are you wearing that funny hat? / What a smell! – Something's burning!*

2. Для вираження тривалої дії, необов'язково в момент мовлення:

*He is always grumbling. / She has a good sense of humor. She's constantly laughing.*

3. Запланованої майбутньої дії:

*I'm leaving tonight. / They are getting married in June. / We are planning tennis tomorrow.*

Дієслово *to go* у Present Continuous з інфінітивом іншого дієслова означає «маю намір, збираюся щось зробити». Таке поєднання може вживатися також і у Past Continuous Tense (див. далі)

**am, is, are going+to do smth**

*We are going to make an apple pie tonight. / I'm going to stay in Scotland for two weeks. / I've heard she's going to travel round the world. / They are going to cross the road to get to the river. / It's cloudy. It's going to rain soon. / I feel terrible. I think I'm going to be sick.*

#### Пам'ятка:

Дієслова, що не вживаються у формі Continuous:

to believe	to be	to feel	to like	to own
to know	to have	to want	to think	to contain
to understand	to see	to wish	to late	to depend
to recognize	to hear	to desire	to hope	to belong

Проте, якщо дієслова *to have*, *to think*, *to admire* вказують на дію як процес, то вони можуть вживатися у формі Continuous.

*I am having two classes of Math today. / I am constantly thinking about you. / When I look at this masterpiece, I am admiring it.*

#### III Time-markers (Обставини часу, часові маркери)

Now / right now / at present / at the (this) moment

### Past Continuous (Progressive) / Минулий тривалий час

#### I Formation (Утворення)

Утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова *to be* у Past Simple та дієприкметника теперішнього часу (Present Participle / Participle I) основного дієслова.

**was, were+V<sub>ing</sub>**

*She was typing the documents yesterday from 5 to 7 p.m. / While I was working in the garden I hurt my back. (Affirmative form)*

*What were you doing at 10 o'clock last night? / Was it raining all the day yesterday? (Interrogative form)*

*She wasn't wearing a dress at the party. / I wasn't listening to the professor because it's not interesting. (Negative form)*

#### **was, were going+to do smth**

*They were going to swim the river when somebody shouted 'Crocodiles!' / He was going to travel by train but then he decided to take a car.*

### **II Usage (Вживання)**

1. Для вираження тривалої дії в певний момент у минулому:

*I was playing tennis yesterday from 6 to (till) 8 p.m. / He was sailing along the shore at 9 p. m. yesterday.*

2. Для вираження тривалої дії в минулому, перерваної одноразовою дією, де дієслово виражене в Past Simple:

*He burnt (Past Simple) his hand when he was making (Past Continuous) coffee. / It was snowing heavily when I got up. / She was taking a shower when the phone rang.*

3. Для вираження двох одноразових тривалих дій у минулому, з'єднаних сполучником **while**:

*He was taking a photo of me **while** I wasn't looking. / She was overhearing us **while** were talking.*

### **III Time-markers (Обставини часу, часові маркери)**

*Yesterday from 3 to (till) 5 / yesterday at 6 / yesterday all the evening, afternoon, all day long / when somebody did something*

## ***Future Continuous (Progressive) / Майбутній тривалий час***

### **I Formation (Утворення)**

Утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова *to be* у Future Simple та дієприкметника теперішнього часу (Present Participle / Participle I) основного дієслова.

#### **will be+V<sub>ing</sub>**

*I think it will be raining all day tomorrow. / It's late autumn, soon the leaves will be falling. (Affirmative form)*

*Will she be studying law when we come? / Will he be interviewing a celebrity when I decide to interrupt him? (Interrogative form)*

*I won't be speaking out at the conference from 5 to 6 tomorrow. / I won't be packing because my trip is cancelled. (Negative form)*

### **II Usage (Вживання)**

Уживається для вираження тимчасової дії в певний момент мовлення у майбутньому

*From 7 to (till) 8 p.m. I'll be watching football match on television. / I'll be shopping in the city center. Can I get you anything? / You'll recognize her when you see her. She'll be wearing a yellow hat. / At this time tomorrow he'll be working. / This time next week I'll probably be lying on a beautiful beach. / Next June we'll be digging new potatoes at granny's.*

- Правило вживання Present Simple у підрядних реченнях умови і часу з часами групи Future подано вище (Future Simple п. 3, вживання)

*Will you be passing the post office when you go out? / Will you be missing me when I'm away?*

### **III Time-markers (Обставини часу, часові маркери)**

*At 5 o'clock tomorrow / from 6 to (till) 7 on Sunday / when I come (subordinate clauses of time and condition)*

## Perfect Group of Tenses

Перфектні (доконані) часи виражають дію, що відбулася до певного моменту чи періоду в теперішньому часі (Present Perfect), минулому (Past Perfect), майбутньому (Future Perfect). Часи цієї групи виражають наявність якогось результату дії, пов'язаної з подальшими подіями.

### Present Perfect

#### I Formation (Утворення)

Утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова *have / has* (have – I, you, we, they; has – he, she, it) та дієприкметника минулого часу (Past Participle / Participle II) основного дієслова.

**have / has + V<sub>III</sub>(ed)**

Скорочена форма:

I, you, we, they have done / he, she, it has done → I've, you've, we've, they've done / he's, she's, it's done

*He has lost his key. / Ow, I've burnt myself! (Affirmative form)*

*Look at your face! Have you ever shaven? / Who has broken my vase? It looks horrible! (Interrogative form)*

*I haven't (have+not) done this yet. / He hasn't (has+not) gone to Italy yet. (Negative form)*

#### II Usage (Вживання)

1. Вживається для вираження дії, яка почалася в минулому і закінчилася в теперішньому з **результатом**:

*I'm a little frightened for I have lost my way. / Thanks for invitation, but I've seen this film already.*

2. Present Perfect найчастіше вживається з:

- прислівниками **never / ever / just / already / not yet / lately / recently / up to now / up to the present**:

*I have never seen him. / Have you ever eaten this fish? / I've just arrived. / We have already painted his yacht. / They haven't discussed this matter yet. / Have you heard from your sister lately? / I haven't slept much recently. / He has been ill up to now (up to the present);*

- **this morning (week, month, year) / today**:

*Have you met her this week? / How many cigarettes have you smoked today?;*

- прийменниками **for, since**

*I haven't seen him for ages. / He hasn't seen his relatives since he left for Africa. / I haven't been here since my childhood;*

- із висловами: **this (it) is the first time**:

*This is the first time he has driven a car. / It's the first time I've flown.*

3. Present Perfect не вживається в реченнях такого типу:

*Що ви сказали? – What did you say? / Я не розчув вашого запитання. – I didn't hear your question. / Я забув. – I forgot. / Тепер зрозуміло. – Now I understand. / Де ви купили цю книгу? – Where did you buy this book?*

#### III Time-markers (Обставини часу, часові маркери)

Never / ever / just / already / not yet / lately / recently / up to now / up to the present / this morning (week, month, year) / today / for / since / this (it) is the first time

### Past Perfect

#### I Formation (Утворення)

Утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова *had* для всіх осіб та дієприкметника минулого часу (Past Participle / Participle II) основного дієслова.

**had + V<sub>III</sub>(ed)**

Скорочена форма:

I / you / we / they / he / she / it had done → I'd / you'd / we'd / they'd / he'd / she'd / it'd done  
*When I arrived at the party, Tom had already gone home. / I had finished my work yesterday by 5. (Affirmative form)*

*Had he gone to bed before I arrived? / Had she done her report yesterday by the evening? (Interrogative form)*

*My house was dirty because I hadn't (had+not) cleaned it for weeks. / I was very nervous because I had never christened a baby before. (Negative form)*

## II Usage (Вживання)

1. Для вираження дії, яка відбулася раніше від іншої минулої дії, позначеної дієсловом у Past Simple:  
*When I got home, I found that someone had broken into my flat and stolen my fur coat. / Bill had no longer had his car, he had sold it.*
2. Для вираження минулої дії, що вже закінчилася до певного моменту в минулому. Цей момент позначається такими словосполученнями, як: *by 2 o'clock, by that (certain) time, by the evening, etc.*  
*They had got married by that time. / She had replied his message only by the next day.*
3. Вживається зі сполучниками **hardly / scarcely / nearly / barely** (щойно, як тільки-но), де виконується інверсія (перестановка підмета та присудка місцями):  
*Hardly had we entered the shop, when a shop-assistant came up to us. / Scarcely had he returned home when it started to rain.*

## III Time-markers (Обставини часу, часові маркери)

*By 2 (3, 4...) o'clock yesterday / by that (certain time) yesterday / by the evening yesterday / ...(when I...), etc.*

## Future Perfect

### I Formation (Утворення)

Утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова *have* для всіх осіб у Future Simple та дієприкметника минулого часу (Past Participle / Participle II) основного дієслова.

**will have+V<sub>III</sub>(ed)**

*He will have spent all his money by the end of his holiday. / A child will have gone to bed when I come. (Affirmative form)*

*Will they have moved to their new house by the end of the month? / Will you have made a decision tomorrow by 2? (Interrogative form)*

*I hope you won't (will+not) have forgotten me by then. / They won't (will+not) have finished a new subway station by June. (Negative form)*

### II Usage (Вживання)

Вживається для вираження майбутньої дії, що закінчиться до певного моменту або до початку іншої дії в майбутньому (у підрядних реченнях умови і часу; дивись Future Simple п. 3, вживання)

*I'll have translated this article by the next Monday. / He'll have finished his report by tomorrow. / She'll have typed these documents by the time her boss comes. / I'll have made an excellent plum pie when you come. / The train will have left by the time we arrive.*

### III Time-markers (Обставини часу, часові маркери)

*By 2 (3, 4...) o'clock tomorrow / by that (certain time) tomorrow / by the evening tomorrow / ...(when I...), etc.*

## ***Perfect Continuous Group of Tenses***

Часи групи Perfect Continuous виражають дію, яка почалася до моменту мовлення (Present Perfect Continuous Tense) або до моменту мовлення в минулому чи в майбутньому (Past Perfect Continuous Tense і Future Perfect Continuous Tense) і триває до цього моменту.

### ***Present Perfect Continuous (Progressive)***

#### **I Formation (Утворення)**

Утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова *to be* у Present Perfect (*have / has been*) та дієприкметника теперішнього часу (Present Participle / Participle I) основного дієслова.

**have / has been+V<sub>ing</sub>**

*It has been raining for two hours. / He's out of breath because he's been running too fast. (Affirmative form)*

*Has this boy been crying that his eyes are red and wet? / How long have you been smoking? (Interrogative form)*

*I haven't (have+not) been drinking orange juice for many years because I'm allergic to it. / She hasn't (has+not) been playing tennis since she was eight. (Negative form)*

#### **II Usage (Вживання)**

Вживається для вираження дії, що почалася в минулому і тривала протягом певного періоду, усе ще продовжується в цей момент або щойно закінчилася. Зазвичай вживається з обставинами часу **for / since**:

*I have been working in this office for 10 years. / I have been learning Spanish since we last met. (перекладаємо українською мовою теперішнім часом, дія і досі триває) – Я працюю в цій фірмі 10 років. / Я вивчаю іспанську мову від нашої останньої зустрічі.*

*It's wet outside. It has been raining hard. / Your clothes are dirty. Have you been fighting? (перекладаємо українською мовою минулим часом, акцент на результаті) – На вулиці волого, йшов дощ. / Твій одяг брудний. Ви билися?*

*That man over there is red. I think he's been sunbathing. / His hands are covered with oil because he's been fixing his car in the garage. / She's been looking for a new job since September. / Sorry, I'm late. How long have you been waiting for me here? / This lady has been selling washing machines for half of her life.*

#### **III Time-markers (Обставини часу, часові маркери)**

For / since / how long / since when (у питальних реченнях)

### ***Past Perfect Continuous (Progressive)***

#### **I Formation (Утворення)**

Утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова *to be* у Past Perfect (*had been* для всіх осіб) та дієприкметника теперішнього часу (Present Participle / Participle I) основного дієслова.

**had been+V<sub>ing</sub>**

*The doctor was tired because he had been operating for several hours. / He'd been smoking for 30 years when he decided to give it up. (Affirmative form)*

*How long had you been listening to hard rock music before your neighbor complained? / Had she been sleeping hard that she didn't hear the phone? (Interrogative form)*

*We couldn't go skiing because it hadn't (had+not) been snowing. / My car was rusty. I hadn't been using it for half of a century. (Negative form)*

#### **II Usage (Вживання)**

Вживається для вираження тривалої дії, яка почалася до якогось моменту в минулому, продовжувалася в цей момент або закінчилася безпосередньо перед ним.

*We had been climbing for six hours when at last we reached the top of the mountain. / Outside everything was in deep snow. It had been snowing hard all night. / Girls were exhausted because they'd been chatting for the whole night. / They had been living in the south of France when he died. / The orchestra had been playing for ten minutes when somebody began shouting. / We had*

*been walking along the road for 20 minutes when a car stopped and the driver offered us a lift. / He was on his hands and knees on the floor as he'd been looking for his cigarette lighter.*

Із дієсловами, що не мають форми Continuous (дивись вище п. Present Continuous, вживання) замість Past Perfect Continuous вживається Past Perfect.

*When we came to visit her, she had been (Past Perfect) ill for some days already. / When we met I had a feeling that I had known (not ~~I had been knowing~~) her all my life.*

### III Time-markers (Обставини часу, часові маркери)

For / since / how long / since when (у питальних реченнях у минулому)

## ***Future Perfect Continuous (Progressive)***

### I Formation (Утворення)

Утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова *to be* у Future Perfect (*will have been* для всіх осіб) та дієприкметника теперішнього часу (Present Participle / Participle I) основного дієслова.

**will have been+V<sub>ing</sub>**

*By the next September she will have been teaching History for 30 years. / They'll have been solving this problem for 3 months by tomorrow. (Affirmative form)*

*Will his parents have been working in South Africa for 2 years when he finishes school? / Will she have been painting the third portrait by the time he's back? (Interrogative form)*

*I won't (will+not) have been advertising these goods for several months when they appear on the market. / We won't (will+not) have been living here for 10 years when we move here. (Negative form)*

### II Usage (Вживання)

Вживається для вираження тривалої дії, яка почнеться до якогось моменту в майбутньому, триватиме в цей момент або закінчиться безпосередньо перед ним (у підрядних реченнях умови і часу; дивись Future Simple п. 3, вживання)

*By the end of this month they'll have been reconstructing this church for 25 years. / If nobody stops him, he'll have been grumbling for hours. / How long will they have been showing this film unless you bring a new one?*

Із дієсловами, що не мають форми Continuous (дивись вище п. Present Continuous, вживання) замість Future Perfect Continuous вживається Future Perfect

*We won't have seen (not ~~won't have been seeing~~) the earth before we land. / They will have been married (Future Perfect) for 25 years by next April.*

### III Time-markers (Обставини часу, часові маркери)

By the next August / by that time tomorrow / by the next year...when



## Passive Voice

### I Formation (Утворення)

В англійській мові дієслова вживаються в активному (the Active Voice) і пасивному стані (the Passive Voice).

Активний стан дієслова вживається тоді, коли підмет речення означає особу або предмет, що виконує дію. *He wrote this letter yesterday (Past Simple Active).*

Пасивний стан вживається тоді, коли дія спрямована на певну особу або предмет. Виконавець дії вводиться сполучником *by*. *This letter was written yesterday by him (Past Simple Passive).*

Пасивний стан дієслів утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова *to be* у відповідному часі активного стану та Participle II (Past Participle) основного дієслова.

**to be+V<sub>III(ed)</sub>**

### II Usage (Вживання)

Пасивний стан дієслів вживається у всіх часах активного стану окрім Future Continuous та часових форм групи Perfect Continuous.

*This newspaper is sold everywhere. / This house has been already sold. (Affirmative form)*

*Were these invitations being sent out when we arrived? / Will this be done soon? (Interrogative form)*

*The car hadn't been bought yesterday by 3. / Roads won't have been fixed by the time he comes. (Negative form)*

#### Indefinite Group:

Tense	Formation	Example
Present Indefinite Passive	<b>am / is / are+V<sub>III(ed)</sub></b>	<i>This music is too loud. It is heard everywhere. / Foreign passport and visa are required if you go abroad.</i>
Past Indefinite Passive	<b>was / were+V<sub>III(ed)</sub></b>	<i>We couldn't enter as the door was shut. / We were asked our names and addresses during interrogation.</i>
Future Indefinite Passive	<b>will be+V<sub>III(ed)</sub></b>	<i>His complaints will be sent to the head office. / The meeting will be postponed because of his illness.</i>

#### Continuous group:

Present Continuous Passive	<b>am / is / are being+V<sub>III(ed)</sub></b>	<i>Her stolen car is being searched by the police now. / At present the questions of salary rise are being discussed by the government.</i>
Past Continuous Passive	<b>was / were being+V<sub>III(ed)</sub></b>	<i>These cars were being repainted when he came to garage. / The grass on the lawn was being cut down by the gardener yesterday all the evening.</i>

#### Perfect Group:

Present Perfect Passive	<b>have / has been+V<sub>III(ed)</sub></b>	<i>An electrical fault has been caused by the fire. / These products have always been sold with great success.</i>
-------------------------	--------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Past Perfect Passive	<b>had been+ V<sub>III(ed)</sub></b>	<i>The room looked better because it had been cleaned by someone. / The office had been redecorated before manager arrived.</i>
Future Perfect Passive	<b>will have been+ V<sub>III(ed)</sub></b>	<i>Military service will have been abolished soon. / Things will have been packed by the time he's back.</i>

**Пам'ятка:**

Під час вживання Passive Voice з модальними дієсловами допоміжне дієслово *to be* не змінює своєї форми, а Participle II (Past Participle) основного дієслова змінюється відповідно, e.g. *This equipment must be bought before we start the production. / This question could be discussed earlier if you were more attentive. / She's nice, she should be invited to the party. / The flight may be delayed, let's go by train.*

## Sequence of Tenses. Indirect Speech

В англійській мові у складнопідрядному реченні використовується правило узгодження часів у головному та підрядному реченні, що стосується переважно минулого часу. В українській мові узгодження часів немає. Час дієслова-присудка в підрядному реченні залежить від часу дієслова-присудка головного речення.

Існує два способи передачі слів мовця: пряма та непряма мови. Під час передачі прямої мови ми цитуємо слова мовця без змін, використовуючи лапки.

*e.g. He said, 'I'm going to the bank'*

У непрякій мові ми передаємо точне значення ствердження, не цитуючи дослівно мовця, дотримуючись часових змін. Підрядне речення в непрякій мові вводиться сполучником **that**, який можна опустити в розмовній мові; лапки в непрякій мові не використовуються.

*e.g. He said (that) he was going to the bank.*

*She said, 'I have some candy in my bag' – She said (that) she had some candy in her bag.*

*They said, 'We'll invite all our friends to the party' – They said (that) they would invite all their friends to the party.*

### Зміна граматичних часів під час передачі непрямої мови

Direct Speech (Пряма мова)	Indirect Speech (Непряма мова)
Present Simple (I do)	Past Simple (I did)
Present Continuous (I'm doing)	Past Continuous (I was doing)
Present Perfect (I have done)	Past Perfect (I had done)
Present Perfect Continuous (I have been doing)	Past Perfect Continuous (I had been doing)
Past Simple (I did)	Past Perfect (I had done)
Past Continuous (I was doing)	no changes / Past Perfect Continuous
Past Perfect (I had done)	no changes
Past Perfect Continuous (I had been doing)	no changes

*He said, 'I live in London.' (Present Simple) – He said (that) he lived in London. (Past Simple)*

*The man said, 'I have locked the door.' (Present Perfect) – The man said (that) he had locked the door. (Past Perfect)*

### Зміна обставин часу під час передачі непрямої мови

Direct Speech (Пряма мова)	Indirect Speech (Непряма мова)
today	that day
yesterday	the day before
tomorrow	the next day, the following day
ago	before
this (week, month, year, Sunday)	that (week, month, year, Sunday)
here	there
tonight	that night
last (week, month, year)	the (week, month, year) before
next	the following
the day after tomorrow	in two days

*She said, 'I was here ten years ago.' – She said (that) she had been there ten years before.*

*He said, 'I will arrive next Friday.' – He said (that) he would arrive the following Friday.*

➤ змін не відбувається, коли мовець говорить про істини, що все ще існують.

*e.g. She said, 'New York is bigger than London.' – She said (that) New York is bigger than London. / He said, 'The Earth moves round the Sun.' – He said (that) the Earth moves round the Sun.*

➤ деякі модальні дієслова потребують часових змін:

*will – would / can – could / may – might / must – had to (no changes) / could – no changes / should – no changes*

➤ коли мовець звертається до певної особи, дієслово *say* (to smb) змінюється на *tell*.

e.g. She said to Peter, 'I'm tired.' – She told Peter (that) she was tired. / He said to mum, 'I want some ice-cream.' – He told mum (that) he wanted some ice-cream.

### Reporting Commands (Передача команд у непрякій мові)

1. Під час передачі команд дієслово *say* (to smb) змінюється на *tell*. Після дієслова *tell* вживається ім'я адресованої людини та інфінітив.  
e.g. He said, 'Close the door, Marty.' – He told Marty to close the door. / She said, 'Leave the room, Jane.' – She told Jane to leave the room.
2. Негативні команди виражаються через формулу 'not+Infinitive'.  
e.g. She said, 'Don't eat too much cookies, Sarah.' – She told Sarah not to eat too much cookies. / He said, 'Don't move, guys!' – He told guys not to move.

### Indirect Questions (Непрямі запитання)

Під час передачі непрямих запитань змінюються часи та займенники.

1. У загальних запитаннях вживається сполучник **if / whether** (*чи*), відбуваються відповідні часові зміни зі збереженням прямого порядку слів у реченні.  
e.g. I asked, 'Has the doctor arrived?' – I asked **if (whether)** the doctor had arrived. / She asked, 'Are you listening to me?' – She asked **if (whether)** I was listening to her.
2. Питальні слова (**who, when, where, why, how, etc.**) не змінюються в непрямих спеціальних запитаннях, допоміжні дієслова для утворення запитань усуваються, відбуваються відповідні часові зміни зі збереженням прямого порядку слів у реченні.  
e.g. She asked, 'Where is the dictionary?' – She asked **where** the dictionary was. / They asked, 'When did you come?' – They asked **when** I had come.

### Пам'ятка:

- Передача деяких конструкцій у непрякій мові:  
'Let's go to the cinema', Peter said. – Peter **suggested going** to the cinema. / 'All right', Jane said. – Jane **agreed**. / 'Oh, no', Ann said. – Ann **refused**.
- Список дієслів, які використовуються замість дієслова 'said' у непрякій мові, дивись у додатку 2 'Verbs to use instead of 'SAID' in reported speech'.

## Conditional Clauses (if-clauses)

В англійській мові дієслово може вживатися в дійсному, наказовому або в умовному способах.

Дійсний спосіб (Indicative Mood) вживається тоді, коли той, хто говорить, зображає дію як реальну, тобто таку, яка в дійсності відбувається, відбувалася або відбуватиметься.  
*e.g. I live in the suburbs. / He learned German at school.*

Наказовий спосіб (Imperative Mood) виражає наказ або прохання виконати дію.  
*e.g. Don't go there. / Close your books.*

Умовний спосіб (Subjunctive Mood) виражає нереальну дію, тобто таку, що могла б відбутися за певних умов, а також необхідну, бажану або нездійсненну. Під час перекладу умовного способу українською мовою вживається форма дієслова в минулому часі, а також частка **б (би)**.

В англійській мові розрізняють кілька типів умовних (підрядних) речень (Conditional Clauses).

1. **First Conditional (Real Condition)** Умовні підрядні речення першого типу виражають реальну умову для виконання дій чи фактів головного речення, що стосуються теперішнього та майбутнього часу.

**will (can, may, must)+V<sub>I</sub> / if+Present Simple**

*We'll buy a new car if we get a loan. / We can play tennis if my headache disappears. / If we don't invite George to the party, he will get mad. / I may call you if you are at home.*

➤ Перший тип умовних речень використовується для вираження команд.

*If you go shopping, buy some soap for me. / Take some sandwiches for me if you come earlier to a café.*

2. **Second Conditional (Unreal Condition Present / Future)** Умовні підрядні речення другого типу виражають неймовірні або малоімовірні припущення, що належать до теперішнього або до майбутнього часу.

**would (could, might)+V<sub>I</sub> / if+Past Simple (were)**

*If I found £100 in the street, I would keep it. / I'd be frightened if someone pointed a gun on me. / What would you do if you won a million dollars? / You'd feel better if you stopped smoking.*

➤ Другий тип умовних підрядних речень використовується для вираження порад. У підрядних реченнях дієслово **to be** має єдину форму **were** для всіх осіб в однині та множині.

*If I were you (If I were in your shoes), I'd do the same. / If he were me, he would never abandon this girl. / If she were a president, she'd improve life of people. / If I were you, I'd never buy this horrible rusty car.*

➤ Другий тип умовних підрядних речень використовується після '**wish**', що перекладається як *школа, як би мені хотілося*

*I wish you were here. / I wish I had a car. / I wish I hadn't told you the truth. / I wish I could speak Japanese. / I wish he were smarter.*

### Пам'ятка:

У додаткових підрядних реченнях, які залежать від дієслова **to wish**, вживається **would+Infinitive**, якщо ми хочемо висловити бажання про те, щоб ситуація змінилася або зараз, або в майбутньому, хоча не дуже сподіваємося на це. Здебільшого зміна ситуації не залежить від особи, що висловлює побажання.

**I wish+subject+would+infinitive**

*I wish he would ring me up. / I wish she would be kind to visitors. / I wish he would agree with me.*

3. **Third Conditional (Unreal Condition Past)** Умовні підрядні речення третього типу виражають нереальні умови для дій, виражених у головному реченні, стосуються минулого часу й не можуть бути виконані.

**would (could, might) have+V<sub>III</sub> / if+Past Perfect**

*I would have gone out if I hadn't been so tired. / If we had played better, we might have won. / She would have never fallen if it hadn't been so slippery. / They wouldn't have been late if they had taken a taxi. / I wish I hadn't drunk so much yesterday. I have a hangover today.*

4. **Mixed Type** Змішані випадки вживання часів в умовних підрядних реченнях трапляються та перекладаються відповідно з контекстом.

*If she **is** as clever as you say she is, she **would have been** rich by now.* (First / Third Conditional)  
*If you **hadn't reminded** me before, I **would forget** about it now.* (Third / Second Conditional) *He **wouldn't be** in prison now if he **hadn't stolen** the money last year.* (Second / Third Conditional)

5. **Zero Conditional** В умовних підрядних реченнях такого типу як у головному, так і в підрядному реченнях відсутня умова і вживається Present Simple.

**Present Simple / if+Present Simple**

*Water **freezes** if the temperature **is** below zero. / If the camera **is** on, the red light **appears**. / She always **complains** if someone **offends** her. / This machine **doesn't go** if it **has** no oil.*

Condition (умова)		Main Clause (головне речення)	Subordinate Clause (підрядне речення)	Translation (переклад)
<b>Real</b>		We'll stay at home I'll come over He won't go on a picnic	if it looks like rain if I have more time if he's busy	<b>єн</b>
<b>Unreal</b>	<b>Present / Future</b>	I could come over You wouldn't think so I'd give this tool to you I would go there by myself I wish I wish	if I had more time if you knew him better if I had it if I were you I had a chance to go there he would present me with a rose	<b>би</b>
	<b>Past</b>	You would have seen him We could have gone to Egypt	you had gone there if it hadn't been so hot last summer	

## Modals and their equivalents

В англійській мові є група дієслів (*can, may, must, ought, should, need*), які називають модальними. Ці дієслова не мають усіх основних форм, властивих іншим дієсловам, і тому їх ще називають недостатніми (Defective Verbs).

Модальні дієслова не вживаються самотійно, а лише в поєднанні з інфінітивом іншого дієслова: *e.g. I can play tennis. / We must leave now, it's late.*

Модальні дієслова не виражають дії або стану, а лише можливість, необхідність, бажаність, імовірність, сумнів, дозвіл, заборону, здатність виконання дії, позначеної інфінітивом.

### Властивості модальних дієслів

1. Після модальних дієслів інфінітив вживається без частки *to*: *e.g. He can dance. / You may come in.*
2. Модальні дієслова утворюють питальну і заперечну форми без допоміжних дієслів: *e.g. Can you speak German? / I shouldn't do this now.*
3. У третій особі однини закінчення *-s* не додається: *e.g. He reads. – He can read. / She never helps. – She can't help.*

### Contracted negative forms of modals:

can not – can't (could not – couldn't) / may not – mayn't / must not – mustn't / should not – shouldn't / ought not – oughtn't

Modal Verb	Equivalent	Present	Past	Future	Meaning	Example
<i>can</i>	to be able to	can am / is / are able to	could was/ were able to	----- will be able to	1) можу, вмію (фізична здатність) 2) дозвіл / заборона / прохання	1) <i>I can do it now. / I was able to pick up that bag.</i> 2) <i>You can go there. / You can't use this tool. / Can (Could) you show me that book?</i>
<i>may</i>	to be allowed to	may am / is / are allowed to	might was / were allowed to	----- will be allowed to	1) можеш, можете (дозвіл)	1) <i>You may take my dress for this party. / He is allowed to drive a car on his own.</i>
<i>must</i>	have to to be to	must have / has to am / is / are to	----- had to was / were to	----- will have to -----	1) повинен, мусиш (обов'язок)	1) <i>She must go there tomorrow. / I don't have to stay here. / They are to come at seven. / He was to wait for me at the airport.</i>
<i>should</i>	-----	should	-----	-----	1) порада / рекомендація / інструкція	1) <i>You should do it. / You shouldn't have done it.</i>
<i>ought to</i>	-----	ought to	-----	-----	1) моральний обов'язок	1) <i>A child ought to be in bed, it's too late. / He ought to be at home now, he is being waited for.</i>

### Пам'ятка:

Модальні дієслова в поєднанні з різними формами інфінітива можуть виражати:

### Can

➤ **could+Perfect Infinitive**

*She could have gone earlier, but she didn't.* – Вона могла б піти раніше, але не пішла.

*He could have got it in time, but he failed.* – Він міг би отримати це вчасно, але йому не вдалося.

➤ **сумнів / здивування**

*Can she know English?* – Невже вона знає англійську? / *Can she have said it?* – Невже вона це сказала? / *Can he be working now?* – Невже він зараз подорожує?

➤ **здивування з відтінком невіри / малої ймовірності**

*He can't have done this.* – Не може бути, щоб він це сказав. / *She can't have been jogging so long.* – Не може бути, щоб вона так довго бігала.

**May**

➤ **припущення з відтінком невпевненості**

*He may be at home now.* – Можливо, він зараз удома. / *They may have told him the truth.* – Можливо, вони сказали йому правду. / *He may be practicing now.* – Можливо, він зараз тренується.

➤ **несхвалення / докір**

*She might be more serious with her work.* – Вона могла б бути більш серйозною на роботі. / *He might have helped us.* – Він міг би нам і допомогти.

**Must**

➤ **припущення з відтінком впевненості**

*He must be about sixty now.* – Йому, напевне, зараз близько шістдесяти. / *He must have met them at the station already.* – Він, напевне, уже зустрів їх на вокзалі



## PART III

### GRAMMAR PRACTICE (EXERCISES)

#### Article



#### 1. Insert articles *a / an, the* where possible.

- Ann started \_\_\_\_\_ school when she was seven years old.  
There was \_\_\_\_\_ new school built of bricks.
- Last year we had \_\_\_\_\_ rainy summer.  
John and Marry met in \_\_\_\_\_ summer.
- He started as \_\_\_\_\_ waiter in the nearest café.  
\_\_\_\_\_ waiter, bring us two coffees.
- The girl's name was \_\_\_\_\_ Alice and she lived in a large house.  
She felt like \_\_\_\_\_ Alice in Wonderland.
- Wait till \_\_\_\_\_ father comes.  
You feel like \_\_\_\_\_ father, Mr. Mann. You are a good man.
- He had \_\_\_\_\_ substantial dinner and felt better after it.  
They had a drink before \_\_\_\_\_ dinner.
- I usually go to school by \_\_\_\_\_ car.  
He'd like to have \_\_\_\_\_ new car, but can't afford it.

#### 2. Complete the sentences using *a / an, the* where necessary.

- Please, turn on \_\_\_\_\_ light.
- He was \_\_\_\_\_ famous writer.
- \_\_\_\_\_ father and \_\_\_\_\_ son were both \_\_\_\_\_ soldiers.
- May I have \_\_\_\_\_ word with you, \_\_\_\_\_ doctor?
- Robin Hood is said to have robbed \_\_\_\_\_ rich and given \_\_\_\_\_ money to \_\_\_\_\_ poor.
- He went to \_\_\_\_\_ theatre last night.
- The story is \_\_\_\_\_ dialogue between \_\_\_\_\_ husband and \_\_\_\_\_ wife.
- Jane was in \_\_\_\_\_ bed with \_\_\_\_\_ severe cold.
- Whom did you meet on \_\_\_\_\_ road?
- It was very warm and quiet, so we decided to sit in \_\_\_\_\_ garden.

#### 3. Supply *a / an, the* where possible.

- Kate is \_\_\_\_\_ teacher. Her parents were \_\_\_\_\_ teachers too.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Chemistry was my favorite subject at \_\_\_\_\_ school.
- There is \_\_\_\_\_ concert hall not far from our house. \_\_\_\_\_ concert hall is \_\_\_\_\_ largest in our city.
- My friends are planning \_\_\_\_\_ holiday together.
- When I was \_\_\_\_\_ child I used to collect \_\_\_\_\_ stamps.
- You need \_\_\_\_\_ visa to visit \_\_\_\_\_ Great Britain.
- There was \_\_\_\_\_ lot of snow on \_\_\_\_\_ ground.
- How well can \_\_\_\_\_ cat see in \_\_\_\_\_ dark?
- I love \_\_\_\_\_ flowers. He bought me \_\_\_\_\_ few flowers.
- Does Helen speak \_\_\_\_\_ French?
- This cloth costs ten pounds \_\_\_\_\_ meter.
- She doesn't want to go to \_\_\_\_\_ hairdresser's again.
- Where's Tom? He's in \_\_\_\_\_ dean's office.
- When did you see him \_\_\_\_\_ last?
- She was \_\_\_\_\_ last to be invited to the office.

#### 4. Choose the correct answer, pay attention on the usage of a definite article.

- We'd love to travel down \_\_\_\_\_ .

A. Volga     B. the Volga

2. \_\_\_\_\_ consists of Great Britain and Northern Ireland.  
A. *United Kingdom*    B. *the United Kingdom*
3. Our hotel was not far from \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. *Hyde Park*    B. *the Hyde Park*
4. \_\_\_\_\_ is in \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. *The lake Baikal*    A. *Siberia*  
B. *Lake Baikal*    B. *the Siberia*
5. \_\_\_\_\_ is a world language.  
A. *English*    B. *The English*
6. \_\_\_\_\_ don't eat with knives and forks, they use chopsticks.  
A. *Japanese*    B. *The Japanese*
7. The ocean between America and Asia is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. *Pacific*    B. *the Pacific*
8. We were invited by \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. *Fergusons*    B. *the Fergusons*

### 5. Translate into English.

1. За столом ми ніколи не розмовляємо.
2. Я зрозумів це з першого погляду.
3. Вона читає цю книжку в оригіналі.
4. Текст на переклад був дуже важкий для студентів.
5. Це дуже просте запитання. І навіть дитина може відповісти на нього.
6. Рояль – мій улюблений музичний інструмент.
7. Який чудовий день!
8. Вода замерзла. Вода – це рідина.
9. Поверніть праворуч і ви побачите місцеву бібліотеку.
10. Посеред кімнати стоїть великий круглий стіл.
11. Яка найдовша річка у світі?
12. Він перейшов вулицю не в тому місці.



### Revision Test on Article

#### Fill in the gaps with appropriate articles.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ youngest brother is at \_\_\_\_\_ school now. If you want to go to \_\_\_\_\_ school, you must take \_\_\_\_\_ bus number 6.
2. In \_\_\_\_\_ winter we go to \_\_\_\_\_ bed earlier than in \_\_\_\_\_ summer.
3. I want to have \_\_\_\_\_ room with a comfortable bed.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ bed on \_\_\_\_\_ left is mine.
5. I usually have \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast at 8 o'clock.
6. Can you play \_\_\_\_\_ piano?
7. Will you play \_\_\_\_\_ chess with me?
8. What \_\_\_\_\_ lovely song!
9. \_\_\_\_\_ earth goes round \_\_\_\_\_ sun.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ USA is \_\_\_\_\_ 4-th largest country in the world after \_\_\_\_\_ Russia, Canada and \_\_\_\_\_ Republic of \_\_\_\_\_ China.

# Noun

## 1. Make the following nouns plural.

Car, potato, dictionary, baby, roof, child, man, boy-friend, toothpaste, boy, sheep, person, mouse, mother-in-law, shelf, fox, fish, year, money, man-servant, day, knife, tape-recorder, information, address, institute, hair, foot, story, wolf.

## 2. Choose the correct verb is / are. Mind the noun (singular or plural).

1. Ladies and gentlemen. Here \_\_\_\_\_ the news.
2. Where \_\_\_\_\_ my jeans?
3. Further information \_\_\_\_\_ available in the office.
4. The stairs \_\_\_\_\_ over there, Sir.
5. The furniture in our classroom \_\_\_\_\_ uncomfortable.
6. The USA \_\_\_\_\_ a very nice country.
7. Your sunglasses \_\_\_\_\_ on the table.
8. Homework \_\_\_\_\_ boring.
9. The scissors on the table \_\_\_\_\_ mine.
10. Physics \_\_\_\_\_ not easy.

## 3. Make selected nouns plural. Don't forget to make other changes in the sentences.

1. His *child* studies very well. 2. This *man* works at our office. 3. There is a new *house* in our street. 4. This *story* is very interesting. 5. The *roof* of the house is covered with snow. 6. I have hurt my *foot*. 7. That *car* has been sold. 8. He keeps his toys in the *box*. 9. In our country a *woman* is equal to a *man*. 10. Put this *knife* on the table.

## 4. Choose the correct word in brackets.

1. My hair (is, are) clean.
2. Can I borrow your scissors? Mine (is, are) not sharp enough.
3. There (is, are) hair in my soup.
4. I'd like 3 (dozen, dozens) of eggs.
5. Knowledge (is, are) power.
6. I need my glasses. Where (is, are) the glasses?
7. The police (is, are) looking for the stolen car.
8. Money (is, are) not everything.
9. Last Saturday we went fishing, but we didn't catch many (fish, fishes).
10. Some people (is, are) always late.
11. Mathematics (is, are) an exact science.
12. The (mouse, mice) were caught.
13. The news (is, are not) very bad today.

## 5. Choose the correct form of the compound noun.

1. Cinderella had two cruel \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. step-sisters    B. steps-sisters
2. There were ten \_\_\_\_\_ in the choir.  
A. woman-singers    B. women-singers
3. \_\_\_\_\_ are so beautiful.  
A. Forgets-me-not    B. Forget-me-nots
4. She had two \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. brothers-in-law    B. brother-in-laws
5. Both of his grannies are \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. housewifes    B. housewives
6. Letters, newspapers and magazines are delivered by \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. postmen    B. postman
7. There had been no \_\_\_\_\_ till the second half of the 19<sup>th</sup> century.  
A. women-doctors    B. woman-doctors

1. Our two \_\_\_\_\_ are crying all the time.  
a) babies                                      b) babys                                      c) babyes
2. It is rather dangerous to walk on \_\_\_\_\_ after the rain.  
a) roofs                                      b) roofes                                      c) rooves
3. Dentists recommend using \_\_\_\_\_ twice a day: in the morning and in the evening.  
a) tooth's paste                                      b) toothpaste                                      c) teetpaste
4. \_\_\_\_\_ are flowers of life.  
a) childs                                      b) children                                      c) childrens
5. Those were the happiest days of our \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) lifes                                      b) lives                                      c) lifees
6. Rock music of the 1970s is an extremely interesting cultural \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) phenomen                                      b) phenomena                                      c) phenomenon
7. I don't like going by car. If I have a chance, I always go on \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) foot                                      b) feet                                      c) foots

a) mouses                      b) mices                      c) mice

a) Leaf                      b) Leaves                      c) Leafs

a) is                      b) are                      c) am

# Degrees of Comparison of Adjectives

## 1. Fill in all the gaps with the correct forms of the adjectives.

**Model:** \_\_\_\_\_ - *newer* - \_\_\_\_\_ = *new* – *newer* – *the newest*

1) _____ - longer - _____	6) _____ - _____ - the flattest
2) _____ - _____ - the worst	7) popular - _____ - _____
3) modern - _____ - _____	8) _____ - happier - _____
4) _____ - _____ - the nicest	9) many / much - _____ - _____
5) _____ - _____ - the nearest	10) _____ - _____ - the cleverest

## 2. Fill in the missing words into the gaps. Mind the first two words in each task.

1) strong - stronger; good - _____	6) more interesting - most interesting; worse - _____
2) the coldest - colder; the happiest - _____	7) hard – the hardest; new - _____
3) nice - nicer; bad - _____	8) the most expensive - expensive; the cleanest - _____
4) angry - angrier; much - _____	9) fast – the fastest; old - _____
5) more boring - boring; sunnier - _____	10) the shortest - short; the most difficult - _____

## 3. Complete the sentences.

- This book is.....than that one. (interesting)
- I believe this exercise is..... of all. (easy)
- Does she feel .....today? (good)
- She is .....girl I have ever seen. (pretty)
- Nick is ..... child in the family. (old)
- It's .....picture I have ever taken. (bad)
- Today people aren't very polite. In the past they were ..... (polite)
- Ukraine isn't very big. France is..... (big)
- My chair isn't very comfortable. Yours is ..... (comfortable)
- Football is .....than tennis. (popular)

## 4. Supply *as...as*, *not so...as*, *less*.

- He is \_\_\_\_\_ tall \_\_\_\_\_ his father.
- My Granny is \_\_\_\_\_ old \_\_\_\_\_ yours.
- His novels are \_\_\_\_\_ interesting than his stories.
- My bedroom is \_\_\_\_\_ light \_\_\_\_\_ our living-room.
- Sugar is \_\_\_\_\_ sweet \_\_\_\_\_ honey is.
- These shoes are \_\_\_\_\_ comfortable than those ones.
- Our city is \_\_\_\_\_ large \_\_\_\_\_ Moscow.
- The girl is \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful \_\_\_\_\_ her mother.
- The Thames is \_\_\_\_\_ long \_\_\_\_\_ the Dnieper.
- This TV show was \_\_\_\_\_ amusing than the one last Saturday.
- The boy is \_\_\_\_\_ intelligent than his brother.
- A mouse is \_\_\_\_\_ big \_\_\_\_\_ an elephant.

## 5. Read the conversation with Todd. He compares the places he visited last year. Can you complete any of the sentences?

Melbourne was interesting, but for me, Paris was \_\_\_\_\_ interesting \_\_\_\_\_ Melbourne, and in some way Dubai was the \_\_\_\_\_ interesting of all because it was so different \_\_\_\_\_ any other places I know. It was also the \_\_\_\_\_ dry, and \_\_\_\_\_ modern. It was hot in Melbourne but not \_\_\_\_\_ hot \_\_\_\_\_ in Dubai. Dubai was \_\_\_\_\_ hot! Melbourne is \_\_\_\_\_ old \_\_\_\_\_ Dubai but

not \_\_\_\_\_ old \_\_\_\_\_ Paris. Paris was the \_\_\_\_\_ old city I visited, but it has some great modern buildings, too. It was the \_\_\_\_\_ romantic place. I loved it.

#### 6. Translate into English.

1. Що більше ми навчаємося, то більше ми знаємо.
2. Яка кімната в цьому будинку найменша?
3. Ваша дочка старша за мою на два роки.
4. Цей підручник набагато важчий, ніж той.
5. Він стає слабшим і слабшим.
6. Ви знаєте англійську краще за мене.
7. Як дістатися до найближчої станції метро?
8. Ця квартира краща за ту?
9. Найдовший день року – 21 червня.
10. Катя розумніша за Олену. Вона завжди готова відповісти на запитання викладача.



#### Revision Test on Adjective

##### Choose the correct variant.

1. My wife is \_\_\_\_\_ than your wife.  
a) the most beautiful                      b) beautifuller                      c) more beautiful
2. You are \_\_\_\_\_ person that I know.  
a) luckier                      b) the luckiest                      c) the luckiest
3. The situation is \_\_\_\_\_ than I thought.  
a) more bad                      b) badder                      c) worse
4. Concord was \_\_\_\_\_ plane in the world.  
a) fast                      b) fastest                      c) the fastest
5. This room is not so \_\_\_\_\_ as that one on the first floor.  
a) the most comfortable                      b) more comfortable                      c) comfortable
6. It is \_\_\_\_\_ to go for a walk, than to watch TV at home.  
a) good                      b) the best                      c) better
7. The 22nd of December is \_\_\_\_\_ day in the year.  
a) the short                      b) the shorter                      c) the shortest
8. This is \_\_\_\_\_ theatre in London.  
a) an older                      b) the oldest                      c) the eldest
9. I'm getting \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ .  
a) the fattest and the fattest                      b) fatter and fatter                      c) fat and fat
10. Let's go by train. It's much \_\_\_\_\_ .  
a) cheap                      b) cheaper                      c) the cheapest

## ***Pronoun***

### **1. Use the correct personal pronouns. Watch the words in brackets.**

**Model:** \_\_\_\_ often reads books. (*Lisa*) – *She* often reads books.

1. \_\_\_\_ is dreaming. (*George*)
2. \_\_\_\_ is green. (*the blackboard*)
3. \_\_\_\_ are on the wall. (*the posters*)
4. \_\_\_\_ is running. (*the dog*)
5. \_\_\_\_ are watching TV. (*my mother and I*)
6. \_\_\_\_ are in the garden. (*the flowers*)
7. \_\_\_\_ is riding his bike. (*Tom*)
8. \_\_\_\_ is from Bristol. (*Victoria*)
9. \_\_\_\_ has got a brother. (*Diana*)
10. Have \_\_\_\_ got a computer, Mandy?

### **2. Put in *my / our / your / his / her / their / its*.**

1. I like *my* job.
2. Do you like ..... job?
3. Does your father love ..... car?
4. I know Mr. Watson, but I don't know ..... wife.
5. Put on ..... coat when you go out. It's very cold.
6. .... favourite sport is tennis. I play a lot in summer.
7. My sister plays tennis too but ..... favourite sport is athletics.
8. We're staying at a very nice hotel. .... rooms are very comfortable.
9. Mr. and Mrs. Baker live in London but ..... son lives in Australia.
10. John is a teacher but ..... sister is a nurse.
11. Do you think that most people are happy in ..... jobs?
12. I gave the money to my mother and she put it in ..... bag.
13. I often see that man but I don't know ..... name.
14. They've got two children but I don't remember ..... names.
15. The company has offices in many places but ..... head office is in New York.

### **3. Choose the right word.**

1. Is this your / yours book?
2. It's their / theirs problem, not our / ours.
3. Are these your / yours shoes?
4. Is this camera my / mine?
5. That's not your / yours umbrella. Your / yours is yellow.
6. They know our / ours address but we don't know their / theirs.
7. They've got two pets but I've forgotten their / theirs names.
8. My / mine room is bigger than her / hers, but her / hers is nicer.

### **4. Put in the relative pronouns *who, which* or *whose* where necessary.**

**Model:** *Peter is the boy \_\_\_\_ rides the blue bike. – Peter is the boy who rides the blue bike.*

1. This is the boy \_\_\_\_ had an accident.
2. Yesterday I saw a car \_\_\_\_ was really old.
3. Mandy is the girl \_\_\_\_ I met on Friday.
4. I haven't seen Frank, \_\_\_\_ brother is five, for a long time now.
5. The robber stole the car \_\_\_\_ the lady parked in front of the supermarket.
6. This is the man \_\_\_\_ house is on fire.
7. Can I talk to the girl \_\_\_\_ is sitting on the bench?
8. The book \_\_\_\_ you gave me is great.
9. She likes hamburgers \_\_\_\_ are hot.
10. Bill Clinton, \_\_\_\_ was President of the USA, has only one daughter.



**5. Supply *anybody* / *anyone*, *nothing*, *anything*, *nobody* / *no one*, *somebody* / *someone* or *something* in these sentences.**

1. There's **nothing** in the clothes basket. It's empty.
2. I've tried phoning, but every time I phone there's \_\_\_\_\_ in.
3. I've prepared \_\_\_\_\_ for dinner which you'll like very much.
4. I've never met \_\_\_\_\_ who is as obstinate as you are.
5. Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ to start with before you order the main course?
6. I know \_\_\_\_\_ who can help you.
7. He sat at the table, but he didn't have \_\_\_\_\_ to eat.
8. Is there \_\_\_\_\_ here who can speak Japanese?
9. Is there \_\_\_\_\_ in the clothes basket? – No, it's empty.
10. Does \_\_\_\_\_ want a second helping?

### 6. Translate into English.

1. Він зламав мій олівець, а потім віддав свій.
2. Вона розповіла мені вчора про свою подорож до Варшави.
3. Я сам дам відповідь на лист.
4. Ви бачили цей фільм? Так, я бачив його вчора.
5. Я нікуди не збираюсь їхати цього літа.
6. Він приніс нам ці підручники і попросив нас повернути їх наступного дня.
7. Якийсь чоловік хоче бачити вас. Я ніколи не бачила цього чоловіка раніше.
8. Я вважаю, що ви можете зробити це самі.
9. Скажіть, щоб вони прийшли сюди після занять. Я хочу пояснити їм їхні помилки в граматичних вправах.
10. Я піду до нього о 8 годині. Я сподіваюсь, що застану його вдома в цей час.



**Which form of the personal pronoun can substitute the underlined phrase in the sentence? Choose the correct one.**

1. The teacher always gives the students homework.  
a) me                                  b) them                                  c) you
2. I am reading the book to my little sister.  
a) her                                  b) us                                  c) him
3. The boys are riding their bikes.  
a) it                                  b) them                                  c) her
4. My father is writing a letter to John.  
a) me                                  b) her                                  c) him
5. I don't know the answer.  
a) she                                  b) her                                  c) it
6. Sally is going to Anne.  
a) her                                  b) him                                  c) me
7. Open the window, please.  
a) it                                  b) them                                  c) us
8. Can you tell the people the way to the airport, please?  
a) you                                  b) them                                  c) us
9. The books are for Peter.  
a) him                                  b) her                                  c) you
10. Can you help my sister and me, please?  
a) her                                  b) me                                  c) us

## Verbs to be, to have, to do

### 1. Put in the following forms of *to be* (*am, is, are*) into the gaps in the text.

Peter Baker \_\_\_\_\_ from Manchester, but Paul and John \_\_\_\_\_ from London. Manchester and London \_\_\_\_\_ cities in England. Hamburg \_\_\_\_\_ a city in Germany. Sandra \_\_\_\_\_ at school today. Jack and Peter \_\_\_\_\_ her friends. They \_\_\_\_\_ in the same class. Mr. and Mrs. Baker \_\_\_\_\_ on a trip to the USA to visit their cousin Anne. She \_\_\_\_\_ a nice girl. Peter says, "My grandfather \_\_\_\_\_ in hospital. I \_\_\_\_\_ at home with my grandmother." What time \_\_\_\_\_ it? It \_\_\_\_\_ 8 o'clock. \_\_\_\_\_ you tried? No, I \_\_\_\_\_ not.

### 2. Supply *am, is, are, was, were* or *weren't*.

1. Her family name is now Jones, but it **was** Smith before she got married.
2. The name of the country \_\_\_\_\_ previously Rhodesia, but it \_\_\_\_\_ now Zimbabwe.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ hungry. – You can't be. We only had breakfast an hour ago.
4. She \_\_\_\_\_ a very nice woman, but her late husband \_\_\_\_\_ a very unpleasant man.
5. I'm sure the twins \_\_\_\_\_ 18 today: they \_\_\_\_\_ 17 last year.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Fred and Carmen at home when you called? – No, they \_\_\_\_\_, but they \_\_\_\_\_ home now.
7. It \_\_\_\_\_ quite foggy tonight, but it \_\_\_\_\_ far worse last night.
8. My ambition \_\_\_\_\_ to start my own window-cleaning business, but it didn't work out.

### 3. Decide which tense / number of the expression *there is / are* fits in the sentence below.

1. There \_\_\_\_\_ much information yet about the end-of-year tests. Do you know when they will be?
1. There \_\_\_\_\_ no snow here at Christmas since 1999.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ there any more cake? – No, I've eaten it all!
3. \_\_\_\_\_ there any books you'd like to borrow? – Thanks, but I've read them all already.
4. There \_\_\_\_\_ a man on the phone. He wants to speak to you.
5. Sorry, I'm late. There \_\_\_\_\_ ice on the road and everyone was driving very slowly.
6. Have you done all your shopping yet? There \_\_\_\_\_ many days left until Christmas.
7. There \_\_\_\_\_ so many mistakes in your written work if you check it more carefully.
8. There \_\_\_\_\_ quite a lot of mistakes in your work. Have you checked it?
9. \_\_\_\_\_ there an accident on the motorway this morning? – Yes, a truck had broken down and was blocking 2 lanes.

### 4. Make good sentences with *have* and its forms + the words in brackets.

1. (a meal) **We had an awful meal at the Station Hotel .**
2. (a dream) \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. (a haircut) \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. (a sense of humour) \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. (a good trip) \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. (a lovely day) \_\_\_\_\_ .
7. (a pain) \_\_\_\_\_ .

### 5. Complete the following sentences by using the right form of *to have* (*have, has, had*).

1. Jack \_\_\_\_\_ fun at the party last Saturday.
2. I'm sorry, but I \_\_\_\_\_ to go now.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ you ever been to Canada?
4. Dave \_\_\_\_\_ passed his driving test.
5. Can I \_\_\_\_\_ the bill, please?
6. The match \_\_\_\_\_ already started when we arrived.
7. They \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast at 6:30 this morning.
8. Do you \_\_\_\_\_ a brother?
9. My boss never \_\_\_\_\_ time.
10. Doris \_\_\_\_\_ been waiting for Pam for 20 minutes now.

**6. Complete the following sentences by using the right form of *to do* (*do, don't, does, doesn't, did, didn't, done*).**

1. My mother has \_\_\_\_\_ the shopping.
2. Walter \_\_\_\_\_ fly to Rome, he flies to Venice.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ you recycle inkjet cartridges?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ drink and drive.
5. When \_\_\_\_\_ the first lesson start?
6. Yesterday Rick \_\_\_\_\_ forget his homework.
7. What have you \_\_\_\_\_ with your money, Jack?
8. Last week we \_\_\_\_\_ write a test.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Amy come to school by bike every morning?
10. Have you ever \_\_\_\_\_ anything silly?



### **Revision Test on *be, to have, to do***

**Fill in the blanks with *am / is / are / have / has / do / does*.**

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ not young.
2. Where \_\_\_\_\_ the Masons buy this antique sofa?
3. That man \_\_\_\_\_ a teacher.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ late.
5. She \_\_\_\_\_ got a pink bag.
6. He usually \_\_\_\_\_ sugar with his coffee.
7. The girl \_\_\_\_\_ a puppy.
8. My father \_\_\_\_\_ 55 years old.
9. What \_\_\_\_\_ Sandra sell?
10. She \_\_\_\_\_ a pretty bedroom.

## ***Indefinite (Simple) group***

### ***Present Indefinite (Simple)***

#### **1. Replace the infinitive in brackets by the Present Indefinite Tense (I do).**

1. It (to awake) my interest to economics. 2. She always (to get) good marks in English. 3. My studies (to begin) at half past eight. 4. I (to think) economy is a promising field. 5. Hard work usually (to lead) to good success. 6. My working day (to last) six hours. 7. He (to speak) English quite fluently. 8. Everybody (to know) that they (to work) for this company. 9. The swimming pool (to open) at 9.00 and (to close) at 18.30 every day. 10. What time (the banks / close) in Britain? 11. The sun (to rise) in the East. 12. Bad students never (to work) hard. 13. It often (to snow) in winter. 14. She (to say) she (to hear) nothing. 15. My friend (to go) there nearly every week.

#### **2. Choose the correct verb in each sentence.**

1. She (*get up, gets up*) at 7:00. 2. They (*eat, eats*) breakfast at 7:30 in the morning. 3. He (*drink, drinks*) coffee. 4. They (*leave, leaves*) for work at 8:00. 5. She (*walk, walks*) to work. 6. She (*work, works*) from 9:00 to 5:00. 7. They (*go, goes*) to school in the evening. 8. They (*get, gets*) home from school at 10:00. 9. He (*watch, watches*) TV after school. 10. They (*go, goes*) to sleep at 12:00.

#### **3. Complete the sentences. All of them are negative. Use *don't / doesn't* + one of these verbs: *cost, drive, go, know, play, see, sell, smoke, wash, wear*.**

1. "Have a cigarette". "No, thank you. I \_\_\_\_". 2. They \_\_\_\_ newspapers in this shop. 3. She has a car, but she \_\_\_\_ very often. 4. I like films, but I \_\_\_\_ to the cinema very often. 5. He smells because he \_\_\_\_ very often. 6. It's a cheap hotel. It \_\_\_\_ much to stay there. 7. He likes football, but he \_\_\_\_ very often. 8. I \_\_\_\_ much about politics. 9. She is married, but she \_\_\_\_ a ring. 10. He lives near our house, but we \_\_\_\_ him very often.

#### **4. Put the words in these questions in correct order. Then, write short answers.**

**Model:** *Don / bus / work / to / Does / ? / the / take.*

***Does Don take the bus to work? – Yes, he does.***

1. wear / ? / suit / a / Does / Paul / work / to. 2. Michael / does / ? / alone / live. 3. together / Michael / Don / and / Do / ? / drive. 4. Do / to / school / ? / the / take / the / bus / boys. 5. ? / work / Susan / Does / her / house / near. 6. have / Kim / children / and / four / ? / Do / Don. 7. the / ? / the / third / boys / live / Do / floor / on. 8. stay / Kim / ? / home / Does. 9. jeans / boys / ? / school / Do / wear / to / the.

#### **5. Translate into English.**

1. Кожного дня я їду на роботу автобусом, проте інколи викликаю таксі, коли запізнююся. 2. Кожної п'ятниці вони йдуть з друзями до місцевої кав'ярні попиту кави з молоком та поговорити. 3. У вас дуже гарна вимова. Ви багато над нею працюєте? – Зовсім ні, я просто спілкуюся з носіями мови. 4. Я не розумію цього правила. 5. Твій друг займається спортом? 6. Мій брат не хоче вступати до університету. Він хоче працювати. 7. Коли ми робимо помилки, наш професор виправляє нас. 8. Моя сестра добре співає і танцює. 9. Спочатку подумай, а потім скажи. 10. У погану погоду я не виходжу на прогулянку. 11. Я не люблю чай із лимоном, я люблю з молоком, як англійці. 12. Взимку темніє дуже рано. 13. Я не пам'ятаю нові слова. 14. Деякі наші студенти живуть у гуртожитку, а деякі винаймають житло. 15. Тобі не знадобиться багато часу, щоб дістатися до коледжу.



### **Revision Test on Present Indefinite**

#### **Choose the correct variant.**

1. Boris \_\_\_\_ early in the morning.

a) gets up

b) get ups

c) get up

2. We \_\_\_\_\_ much about China.  
 a) don't know                      b) doesn't know                      c) aren't know
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Jane Smith \_\_\_\_\_ English?  
 a) Is . . . speak                      b) Does ... speak                      c) Do ... speak
4. Everybody in our family \_\_\_\_\_ Mummy about the house: Dad \_\_\_\_\_ the dog and I \_\_\_\_\_ the flowers.  
 a) helps, walks, waters                      b) helps, walks, water                      c) help, walks, water
5. We \_\_\_\_\_ a car, but we are going to buy it.  
 a) don't have                      b) aren't have                      c) hasn't
6. Don't give him cigarettes. He \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 a) isn't smoke                      b) doesn't smoke                      c) don't smokes
7. Pete \_\_\_\_\_ the unknown words in the dictionary.  
 a) looks up                      b) look ups                      c) look up
8. We don't know the way to the station, \_\_\_\_\_ we?  
 a) do                      b) don't                      c) are
9. Usually the wind \_\_\_\_\_ from the North in these parts.  
 a) blow                      b) does blow                      c) blows
10. Mary lives in the country, \_\_\_\_\_ she?  
 a) isn't                      b) does                      c) doesn't

## Past Indefinite (Simple)

### 1. Complete these sentences. Use the verbs from the box in Past Indefinite.

*to clean, to die, to enjoy, to finish, to happen, to live, to open, to play,  
to rain, to smoke, to start, to stay, to want, to watch*

1. Yesterday evening I *watched* TV.
2. I ..... my teeth three times yesterday.
3. Bernard ..... 20 cigarettes yesterday evening.
4. The concert last night ..... at 7.30 and ..... at 10 p.m.
5. The accident ..... last Sunday afternoon.
6. When I was a child, I ..... to be a doctor.
7. Mozart ..... from 1756 to 1791.
8. We ..... our holiday last year. We ..... at a very good hotel.
9. Today the weather is nice, but yesterday it .....
10. It was hot in the room, so I ..... the window.
11. The weather was good yesterday afternoon, so we ..... tennis.
12. William Shakespeare ..... in 1616.

### 2. Supply the past forms of the irregular verbs in italics.

1. I often *see* Giulio. I *saw* him again only yesterday.
2. As teenagers, we always ..... each other very well. We still *understand* each other now.
3. I hardly ..... Ray's wife. Did you *know* her at all?
4. We always *meet* on Sunday. We ..... last Sunday as usual.
5. I often *find* things on the beach. I ..... this very old bottle yesterday.
6. Someone's always *leaving* that window open. Who ..... it open this time?
7. I ..... a lot of letters when I was young. I hardly ever *write* letters now.
8. I *have* the same car now that I ..... five years ago.
9. Where did you *eat* last night? – We ..... at a restaurant.
10. I don't *keep* pets now, but I ..... a dog when I was a boy.

### 3. Give complete answers to the questions using the time references in brackets.

**Model :** *How long ago did you work as a civil servant? (five years ago)*

*I worked as a civil servant five years ago.*

1. When did you last play football? (when I was 14)
2. When did the Carters leave for their summer holidays? (last night)
3. What time did John arrive? (at 4 p.m.)
4. When did you last see 'Gone with the Wind'? (last year)
5. How long did you wait at the airport? (till they arrived)
6. When did Sally tell you about her engagement? (when she was here)
7. When did Alice speak about her last trip? (when we met at a café)

### 4. Put the correct forms of the Past Indefinite Tense (I did) of the verbs in brackets.

#### Lizardman

Christopher Davis, a young driver from South Carolina, (to claim) **claimed** a monster (to attack) \_\_\_\_\_ him while he was driving along a lonely road. The monster (to be) \_\_\_\_\_ seven feet tall and (to have) \_\_\_\_\_ red eyes and green, scaly skin. It (to chase) \_\_\_\_\_ Christopher's car and (to jump) \_\_\_\_\_ on the roof. Many people (to believe) \_\_\_\_\_ the story and the newspapers (to call) \_\_\_\_\_ the monster 'Lizardman'. Seventy hunters recently (to set out) \_\_\_\_\_ to trap Lizardman and a local radio (to offer) \_\_\_\_\_ \$1 million to anyone who (to capture) \_\_\_\_\_ him dead or alive. Lizardman had so much publicity that



thousands of people (to visit) \_\_\_\_\_ South Carolina to find him. No one has found him yet. As everyone knows, monsters may or may not exist, but they are very good for the tourist industry.

### 5. Correct the following sentences.

1. I did went to the movies last night. 2. She didn't ate at the Chinese restaurant. 3. When they visited San Francisco? 4. What you did buy abroad? 5. Why she called her mother this morning? 6. He had not any money. 7. Where fell you? 8. You didn't finished your dinner. 9. Did she drank a glass of milk? 10. Where was she find the ring?

### 6. Use *there was / there were* and the past tense of the following verbs: *sing, draw, feed, keep, put, win* in these short conversations.

1. A: How was the concert? B: We enjoyed it. \_\_\_\_\_ a very good singer. She \_\_\_\_\_ four songs.
2. A: That's a wonderful drawing. Who \_\_\_\_\_ it? B: I did. \_\_\_\_\_ two older men sitting near me on the train. I started to draw them on the train. I finished the picture at home. A: You're really talented!
3. A: Where did you buy that cowboy hat? B: I didn't buy it. I \_\_\_\_\_ it. A: When? B: Last Saturday. \_\_\_\_\_ a carnival. I guessed the number of balls in the box.
4. A: We took the children to the Zoo on Sunday. B: Did they like it? A: Yes, they loved it! \_\_\_\_\_ lions, tigers and monkeys. Paul and Jane \_\_\_\_\_ the monkeys on peanuts and the monkeys clapped their hands.
5. A: Did you listen to the news last night? B: No, I didn't A: \_\_\_\_\_ a con man in Texas. He became friends with older women. They gave him their money to invest, but he \_\_\_\_\_ their money for himself instead. B: That's terrible. A: The police found out about him from the children of one of the women. The police arrested him and \_\_\_\_\_ him in jail.

### 7. Translate into English.

1. Учора він грав у теніс, але не виграв у свого суперника. 2. Я дзвонив тобі вчора ввечері, але ніхто не відповів. 3. Минулого року вони купили нове авто і тепер багато подорожують по країні. 4. Минулого тижня йому довелося їхати на роботу громадським транспортом через сильну ожеледицю. 5. Нам були потрібні гроші, тому ми продали дідусеве авто. 6. Він упав зі сходів і забив ногу. 7. Це гарна сорочка. Де ти таку купив? 8. Чому ти був таким злим учора, коли ми зустрілися? 9. Нам пощастило з погодою під час поїздки за кордон. 10. Він почав працювати в ранньому віці.



### Revision Test on Past Indefinite

#### Choose the correct variant.

1. Mary \_\_\_\_\_ many mistakes in her test paper.  
a) make                      b) made                      c) makes
2. They didn't \_\_\_\_\_ to the movie yesterday.  
a) went                      b) gone                      c) go
3. How much \_\_\_\_\_ Moris \_\_\_\_\_ for his cell phone?  
a) does ... paid              b) did ... pay              c) did ... paid
4. Our cousin \_\_\_\_\_ to see us on Tuesday.  
a) did not came              b) did not comes              c) did not come
5. She \_\_\_\_\_ me their family album with many pictures.  
a) showed                      b) show                      c) shown
6. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ how to answer the teacher's question?  
a) Did ... knew              b) Does ... know              c) Did ... know
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ to learn English a few months ago.  
a) start                      b) started                      c) starts
8. Jane \_\_\_\_\_ at a party last night.  
a) sang                      b) sing                      c) sung
9. I didn't like this letter and \_\_\_\_\_ it into pieces.  
a) tear                      b) tore                      c) torn

10. She \_\_\_\_\_ her favorite pen.

a) lose

b) losing

c) lost



## ***Future Indefinite (Simple)***

### **1. Put the following sentences in the Future Indefinite Tense.**

1. They came by car. 2. Did you easily find this street? 3. I helped her with her home-reading. 3. He lives on the outskirts of a little town by the sea. 5. Do you study English at the Institute? 6. Where did you buy such a lovely dress? 7. It rains at this time of year. 8. What does your decision depend on?

### **2. Insert the missing conjunctions in the following sentences. Use conjunctions: *when, till, before, after, as soon as, while, if*.**

1. I will believe it ... I see it. 2. You must wait ... the light changes to green. 3. I will be ready ... you count ten. 4. He will ring up for the taxi ... you finish packing. 5. I will tell you a secret ... my brother goes out. 6. We will be starting immediately ... you finish your dinner. 7. I don't think he will write ... he arrives. 8. I will always remember you ... I live. 9. I will be preparing breakfast ... you are taking a shower. 10. I will put on my raincoat ... it starts to rain. 11. He'll tell you ... you ask him. 12. ... you stay in the reading-hall I'll be working in the laboratory. 13. He will stay here ... you come. 14. ... they show me their homework, I will correct it.

### **3. Complete the sentences. Use *will* + one of these verbs: *carry, do, eat, send, show, sit, stay*.**

1. My case is very heavy. I \_\_\_\_\_ it for you. 2. Enjoy your stay. Thank you. I \_\_\_\_\_ you a postcard. 3. I don't want this banana. Well, I'm hungry. I \_\_\_\_\_ it. 4. Are you coming with me? No, I don't think so. I \_\_\_\_\_ here. 5. Did you phone Jack? Oh, no, I forgot. I \_\_\_\_\_ it now. 6. Do you want a chair? No, it's okay. I \_\_\_\_\_ on the floor. 7. How do you use this camera? Give it to me and I \_\_\_\_\_ you.

### **4. Complete the sentences. Use *I think I'll ...* or *I don't think I'll* and one of the following verbs: *buy, go, have, play*.**

1. It's cold. \_\_\_\_\_ out. 2. I'm hungry. \_\_\_\_\_ something to eat. 3. I feel tired. \_\_\_\_\_ tennis. 4. This camera is too expensive. \_\_\_\_\_ it.

### **5. Open the brackets using Present (I do) / Future Indefinite (I will do).**

1. Today after I (get) out of class, I (go) to a movie with some friends. 2. When you (arrive) in Stockholm, call my friend Gustav. He (show) you around the city and help you get situated. 3. A: Do you know what you want to do after you (graduate) ?  
B: After I (receive) my Master's from Georgetown University, I (go) to graduate school at UCSD in San Diego. I (plan) to complete a Ph.D. in cognitive science. 4. If it (snow) this weekend, we (go) skiing near Lake Tahoe. 5. Your father (plan) to pick you up after school today at 3:00 o'clock. He (meet) you across the street near the ice cream shop. If something happens and he cannot be there, I (pick) you up instead. 6. If the people of the world (stop, not) cutting down huge stretches of rain forest, we (experience) huge changes in the environment during the twenty-first century. 7. If Vera (keep) drinking, she (lose, eventually) her job. 8. I promise you that I (tell, not) your secret to anybody. Even if somebody (ask) me about what happened that day, I (reveal, not) the truth to a single person. 9. She (make) some major changes in her life. She (quit) her job and go back to school. After she (finish) studying, she (get) a better-paying job and buy a house. She is going to improve her life! 10. Tom (call) when he (arrive) in Madrid. He (stay) with you for two or three days until his new apartment (be) available.

### **6. Translate into English.**

1. Він почне свою лекцію об 11 годині. 2. Коли ти будеш вивчати другу іноземну мову? 3. Хто прибере в моїй кімнаті? 4. Я впевнений, що фільм тобі сподобається. 5. Можливо, я побачу тебе завтра. 6. Вони повернуться додому завтра вранці. 7. Якщо ти подивишся на себе в дзеркало, ти зрозумієш, що я маю на увазі. 8. Коли я подзвоню завтра Марго, я повідомлю їй гарну новину. 9. Коли ти мені зателефонуєш? 10. Ми поїдемо влітку до

бабусі, чи не так? 11. Він буде готовий так скоро, як будеш готова ти. 12. Я перескладу цей іспит восени.

**7. Put down five types of questions to the following sentences.**

1. I like coffee very much, but my friend doesn't drink it at all. 2. She often brings work home from the office. 3. The sun sets early in winter. 4. The room was empty, but there was a smell of cigarettes. 5. The boy looked very red from the sun. 6. My father didn't go to New York last summer. 7. You will recognize her when you see her again. 8. I will give your laptop back in a month. 9. They won't take extra lessons in English.



**Revision Test on Future Indefinite**

**Choose the correct variant.**

1. The match \_\_\_\_\_ at half past nine, so I will be at home by ten o'clock.  
a) will finish                      b) finishes                      c) is finishing
2. Unless you work hard you \_\_\_\_\_ your exams.  
a) don't pass                      b) won't pass                      c) doesn't pass
3. Jack won't be able to do this work unless you \_\_\_\_\_ him.  
a) helps                      b) help                      c) will help
4. Will you call on us when you \_\_\_\_\_ back from London?  
a) will come                      b) comes                      c) come
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ his certificate in a week.  
a) receive                      b) will receive                      c) receives.
6. Steve will probably phone us this evening if he \_\_\_\_\_ at home.  
a) will be                      b) be                      c) is
7. I'll take care of my little sister as soon as she \_\_\_\_\_ to my place.  
a) comes                      b) come                      c) will come
8. He won't answer this question till he \_\_\_\_\_ the work.  
a) finish                      b) finishes                      c) will finish
9. He \_\_\_\_\_ in a day or two.  
a) comes                      b) will come                      c) came
10. We'll all miss you when you \_\_\_\_\_ away.  
a) is                      b) are                      c) will be

## ***Continuous Group***

### ***Present Continuous***

#### **1. Open the brackets using Present Continuous (I'm doing).**

1. He (not to work), he (to watch) the TV program. 2. Kitty (to eat) her porridge. 3. Look, the sun (to rise). 4. John (to polish) his boots and his sister (to press) her dress. 5. It (to rain)? Yes, it (to rain) very hard. 6. The delegation (to leave) Moscow tomorrow. 7. Somebody (to talk) in the next room. 8. Who (to make) such a noise? 9. What you (to read) now? 10. The weather is fine. The sun (to shine) and the birds (to sing). 11. Somebody (to knock) at the door. 12. You (to go) anywhere tonight? 13. Why you (to speak) so fast? You (to make) a lot of mistakes. 14. Who you (to wait for)? 15. I can't hear what they (to talk) about.

#### **2. Translate the words given in brackets using Present Continuous.**

1. Excuse me, what language (ти розмовляєш)? 2. (Діти грають у футбол) in the yard now. 3. Let's go home. (стає прохолодно). 4. (Чому вони сміються)? Did I say anything funny? 5. Our parents (повертаються) from Turkey. 6. At the moment John (пролітає) over the ocean. 7. Can you hear those people? (Про що вони говорять)? 8. Look! Somebody (несе твою валізу). 9. Don't rush us. (Ми працюємо) as fast as we can. 10. Hurry! The bus (наближається).

#### **3. Use the verbs given in brackets in Present Indefinite (I do) / Present Continuous (I'm doing).**

1. Why you (to walk) so fast today? You usually (to walk) quite slowly. – I (to hurry), I am afraid to miss the train. 2. Cuckoos (not to build) nests. They (to use) the nests of other birds. 3. I always (to buy) lottery tickets but I seldom (to win). 4. You can't have the book now because my brother (to read) it. 5. Some people (to do) everything with their left hand. 6. Who (to make) the terrible noise? – It's my son. 7. How you (to feel)? 8. Switch on the light. It (to get) dark. 9. You (to understand) the rule? 10. The sun (to set) late in summer. 11. What you (to look for)? - We (to look for) our grandmother's spectacles. 12. I (not to know) what he (to want). 13. What time she (to come) here as a rule? 14. Look, snow still (to fall). 15. It often (to rain) in October.

#### **4. Complete the sentences with Present Indefinite (I do) / Present Continuous (I'm doing) forms of the following verbs.**

*belong, need, see, take, bite, play, shine, understand, drive, prefer, sing, watch, look, rain, snow, write*

1. Look outside. It \_\_\_\_\_. Everything is beautiful and all white. 2. My father \_\_\_\_\_ the 8:15 train into the city every weekday morning. 3. On Tuesdays and Thursdays, I walk to work for the exercise. Every Monday, Wednesday, and Friday, I \_\_\_\_\_ my car to work. 4. A: Charlie, can't you hear the telephone? Answer it! B: You get it! I \_\_\_\_\_ my favorite TV show. I don't want to miss anything. 5. A: What kind of tea do you like? B: Well, I'm drinking black tea, but I \_\_\_\_\_ green tea. 6. I'm gaining weight around my waist. These pants are too tight. I \_\_\_\_\_ a larger pair of pants. 7. A: Dinner's ready. Please call the children. B: Where are they? A: They \_\_\_\_\_ a game outside in the street. 8. It's night. There's no moon. Emily is outside. She \_\_\_\_\_ at the sky. She \_\_\_\_\_ more stars than she can count. 9. Michael has a good voice. Sometimes he \_\_\_\_\_ with a musical group in town. It's a good way to earn a little extra money. 10. A: Ouch! B: What's the matter? A: Every time I eat too fast, I \_\_\_\_\_ my tongue. 11. Alicia always \_\_\_\_\_ in her diary after dinner. 12. Thank you for your help in algebra. Now I \_\_\_\_\_ that lesson. 13. This magazine isn't mine. It \_\_\_\_\_ to Colette. 14. I can see a rainbow because the sun \_\_\_\_\_ and it \_\_\_\_\_ at the same time.

#### **5. Translate the following sentences into English. Pay attention to the use of the Present Continuous to express an action in the near future.**

1. Ми зараз дуже заклопотані, оскільки від'їжджаємо завтра. 2. Поїзди відходять і прибувають через 5 хвилин. 3. Делегація англійських освітян прилітає (to arrive by plane) сьогодні

ввечері до Києва. 4. Моя сестра приїжджає в суботу. Я мушу її зустріти. 5. У понеділок я складаю іспит з історії Англії. 6. Студенти складають екзамени двічі на рік. 7. Моя подруга влаштовує сьогодні вечірку. 8. Коли вони влаштовують вечірку, вони, як правило, запрошують усю нашу родину.

**6. Open the brackets using Present Indefinite (I do) / Present Continuous (I'm doing).**

1. Every Monday, Sally (drive) her kids to football practice. 2. Usually, I (work) as a secretary at ABT, but this summer I (study) French at a language school in Paris. That is why I am in Paris. 3. Shhhhhh! Be quiet! John (sleep). 4. Don't forget to take your umbrella. It (rain). 5. I hate living in Seattle because it (rain, always). 6. I'm sorry I can't hear what you (say) because everybody (talk) so loudly. 7. Justin (write, currently) a book about his adventures in Tibet. I hope he can find a good publisher when he finishes. 8. Jim: Do you want to come over for dinner tonight? Denise: Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. I (go) to a movie tonight with some friends. 9. The business cards (be, normally) printed by a company in New York. Their prices (be) inexpensive, yet the quality of their work is quite good. 10. This delicious chocolate (be) made by a small chocolatier in Zurich, Switzerland.



## Revision Test on Present Indefinite / Present Continuous

**Choose the correct variant.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ in St. Petersburg?  
a) Do ... live                      b) Are ... living
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ not \_\_\_\_\_ a lesson of English now.  
a) do ... have                      b) are ... having
3. Look! Sam \_\_\_\_\_ with his dog!  
a) walks                          b) is walking
4. They \_\_\_\_\_ to travel to Prague.  
a) go                                b) are going
5. What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ to say?  
a) do ... want                      b) are ... wanting
6. He \_\_\_\_\_ to walk in the park.  
a) likes                          b) is liking
7. When \_\_\_\_\_ you usually \_\_\_\_\_?  
a) do ... get up                      b) are ... getting up
8. She \_\_\_\_\_ to college every day.  
a) goes                          b) is going
9. Where \_\_\_\_\_ you usually \_\_\_\_\_ your summer holidays?  
a) do ... spend                      b) are ... spending
10. I am busy. I \_\_\_\_\_ the text.  
a) translate                      b) am translating

## Past Continuous

### 1. Use Past Continuous (I was doing) in the sentences below.

1. I **was not listening**, so I missed what he said (not / to listen). 2. We stayed because we \_\_\_\_\_ ourselves (to enjoy). 3. \_\_\_\_\_ television all evening? (you / to watch) 4. It \_\_\_\_\_ hard all day (to rain). 5. I \_\_\_\_\_ whether you could lend me some money (to wonder). 6. \_\_\_\_\_ when I left? (you / still / to work) 7. I lived in France at the time you \_\_\_\_\_ in Spain (to live). 8. \_\_\_\_\_ when I rang you? (you / to read) 9. Just as I \_\_\_\_\_ to an interesting part of the story, the doorbell rang (to get). 10. He \_\_\_\_\_ all weekend (to garden).

### 2. Complete the sentences in A choosing the most suitable phrase from B.

A	B
1. Tom did his morning exercises _____ .	1. _____ when the accident happened.
2. George was driving the car _____ .	2. _____ from the moment he saw me.
3. She almost got run over _____ .	3. _____ and could not say a word.
4. The family was having a party _____ .	4. _____ when at last I found him.
5. I met the girl _____ .	5. _____ as soon as he heard the news.
6. He took a dislike to me _____ .	6. _____ when she crossed the road.
7. The girl was crying _____ .	7. _____ when the post arrived.
8. The boy was hiding something in the table _____ .	8. _____ who was holding her hat on with one hand.
9. Mary was speaking over the telephone _____ .	9. _____ when she heard a strange sound outside.
10. He left the office at once _____ .	10. _____ at the end of the street.
11. It belonged to a woman _____ .	11. _____ before breakfast.

### 3. Make sentences from the words in brackets. Put the verbs into correct form: Past Indefinite (I did) / Past Continuous (I was doing).

1. (I / fall / asleep / when I / watch / television). 2. (Tom / burn / his hand when he / cook / dinner). 3. (She / walk / along the street / and she / not / see / me). 4. (We / see / James / in the park. He / sit / on the grass and / read / the book). 5. (While / he / consider / that idea / the horses / suddenly / break into a gallop). 6. (We / not / go / out / because it / rain / heavily). 7. (The most extraordinary thing / happen / to him / while / he / have / holiday / in London). 8. (While / I / play / the piano / Joan / read / a newspaper). 9. (My uncle / fall / off the ladder / while / he / paint / the ceiling). 10. (When we / arrive / the family / have lunch).

### 4. Complete the sentences using Past Continuous of the verbs in the box.

*answer, begin, climb, count, drive, eat, look, melt, sing, stand, walk*

1. Fortunately I didn't get wet because I \_\_\_\_\_ under a large tree when it began to rain. 2. I saw Don at the student cafeteria at lunch time. He \_\_\_\_\_ a sandwich. 3. Mr. White asked an interesting question. The professor \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. White's question when Mr. Gray rudely interrupted. 4. Robert didn't answer the phone when Sarah called. He \_\_\_\_\_ his favourite song in the shower and didn't hear the phone ring. 5. A: I saw a whale! B: Really? When? A: This morning. I \_\_\_\_\_ on the beach when I heard a sudden "whoosh!" It was the spout of a huge gray whale. 6. Three people \_\_\_\_\_ the east side of the mountain when the avalanche occurred. All three died. 7. A: Were you on time for the play last night? B: I drove as fast as I could. The play \_\_\_\_\_ just as we walked in the door of the theatre. 8. Robert came in while I \_\_\_\_\_ the money from the day's receipts. I completely lost track and had to start all over again. 9. It was difficult to ski because the temperature was rising and the snow \_\_\_\_\_. 10. A: What do you think was the cause of your accident? B: I know what caused it. Paul \_\_\_\_\_ at the scenery while he \_\_\_\_\_ the car. He simply didn't see the other car pull out from the right.

1. Вчора ввечері йшов дощ, тому я залишився вдома. 2. Він телефонував мені, коли ми вечеряли. 3. Сонце сідало за гори, коли я підійшов до села. 4. Я сиділа біля вікна, коли раптом почула чийсь голоси. 5. Я глянув на Мері, яка все ще тремтіла від холоду. 6. Ми розмовляли про Джиммі, коли він вбіг до кімнати. 7. Увійшовши до будинку, вона побачила чоловіка, який намагався відкрити двері силою. 8. Коли я повернувся, Том лежав на канапі і розмовляв по телефону. 9. Поліція спіймала Дена, коли він грабував крамницю. 10. Лило як з відра, коли ми проходили вздовж вашого будинку.

1. A: What (you, you) do when the accident occurred? B: I (try) to change a light bulb that had burnt out. 2. After I (find) the wallet full of money, I (go, immediately) to the police and (turn) it in. 3. The doctor (say) that Tom (be) too sick to go to work and that he (need) to stay at home for a couple of days. 4. Sebastian (arrive) at Susan's house a little before 9:00 PM, but she (be, not) there. She (study, at the library) for her final examination in French. 5. Sandy is in the living room watching television. At this time yesterday, she (watch, also) television. That's all she ever does! 6. A: I (call) you last night after dinner, but you (be, not) there. Where were you? B: I (work) out at the fitness center. 7. When I (walk) into the busy office, the secretary (talk) on the phone with a customer, several clerks (work, busily) at their desks, and two managers (discuss, quietly) methods to improve customer service. 8. I (watch) a mystery movie on TV when the electricity went out. Now I am never going to find out how the movie ends. 9. Sharon (be) in the room when John told me what happened, but she didn't hear anything because she (listen, not). 10. It's strange that you (call) because I (think, just) about you. 11. The Titanic (cross) the Atlantic when it (strike) an iceberg. 12. When I entered the bazaar, a couple of merchants (bargain, busily) and (try) to sell their goods to naive tourists who (hunt) for souvenirs. Some young boys (lead) their donkeys through the narrow streets on their way home. A couple of men (argue) over the price of a leather belt. I (walk) over to a man who (sell) fruit and (buy) a banana. 13. The firemen (rescue) the old woman who (be) trapped on the third floor of the burning building. 14. She was so annoying! She (leave, always) her dirty dishes in the sink. I think she (expect, actually) me to do them for her. 15. Samantha (live) in Berlin for more than two years. In fact, she (live) there when the Berlin Wall came down.

[illegible]

## ***Future Continuous***

### **1. Open the brackets using Future Continuous (I will be doing).**

1. You (to do) your homework at 5 o'clock. 2. Where the man (to sit) at that time? 3. What he (to do)?  
4. The sun (to shine) at noon. 5. We (to translate) this text from 4 to 5. 6. What you (to do) tomorrow at 6? 7. We (to play) tennis the whole morning tomorrow.

### **2. Open the brackets using Present Indefinite (I do) / Future Indefinite (I will do) / Present Continuous (I'm doing) / Future Continuous (I'll be doing).**

1. Right now, I am watching TV. Tomorrow at this time, I (watch) TV as well. 2. Tomorrow after school, I (go) to the beach. 3. I am going on a dream vacation to Tahiti. While you (do) paperwork and (talk) to annoying customers on the phone, I (lie) on a sunny, tropical beach. Are you jealous? 4. We (hide) when Tony (arrive) at his surprise party. As soon as he opens the door, we (jump) out and (scream), "Surprise!" 5. We work out at the fitness center every day after work. If you (come) over while we (work) out, we will not be able to let you into the house. Just to be safe, we (leave) a key under the welcome mat so you will not have to wait outside. 6. While you (study) at home, Magda (be) in class. 7. When I (get) to the party, Sally and Doug (dance), John (make) drinks, Sue and Frank (discuss) something controversial, and Mary (complain) about something unimportant. They are always doing the same things. They are so predictable. 8. When you (get) off the plane, I (wait) for you. 9. I am sick of rain and bad weather! Hopefully, when we (wake) up tomorrow morning, the sun (shine). 10. If you (need) to contact me sometime next week, I (stay) at the Sheraton in San Francisco.

### **3. Open the brackets using Future Simple (I will do) / Future Continuous (I'll be doing).**

1.  
Sandra: Where is Tim going to meet us?  
Marcus: He (wait) for us when our train arrives. I am sure he (stand) on the platform when we pull into the station.  
Sandra: And then what?  
Marcus: We (pick) Michele up at work and go out to dinner.
2.  
Ted: When we get to the party, Jerry (watch) TV, Sam (make) drinks, Beth (dance) by herself, and Thad (complain) about his day at work.  
Robin: Maybe, this time they won't be doing the same things.  
Ted: I am absolutely positive they (do) the same things; they always do the same things.
3.  
Florence: Oh, look at that mountain of dirty dishes! Who (wash) all of those?  
Jack: I promise I (do) them when I get home from work.  
Florence: Thanks.  
Jack: When you get home this evening, that mountain will be gone and nice stacks of sparkling clean dishes (sit) in the cabinets.
4.  
Doug: If you need to contact me next week, I (stay) at the Hoffman Hotel.  
Nancy: I (call) you if there are any problems.  
Doug: This is the first time I have ever been away from the kids.  
Nancy: Don't worry, they (be) fine.
5.  
Samantha: Just think, next week at this time, I (lie) on a tropical beach in Maui drinking Mai Tais and eating pineapple.

a) will ... take                      b) will ... be taking



## Perfect Group

### Present Perfect Tense

#### 1. Supply Present Perfect of the verbs in brackets.

1. Up to now *I've visited* twenty countries. (to visit)
2. He ..... six letters so far. (to type)
3. .... couscous? (you / ever / to eat)
4. They ..... like this before. (never / to quarrel)
5. I ..... to Marco since 1989. (not / to write)
6. We ..... there since we were young. (not / to be)
7. I saw her in May, but ..... her since. (not / to see)
8. She ..... the same car for fifteen years. (to drive)
9. I ..... them for many years. (to know)
10. She ..... in that shop for ages. (not / to be)
11. They ..... a new car. (to buy)
12. He ..... all over the world. (to travel)
13. .... your promise? (you / to forget)
14. I ..... an elephant. (to ride)
15. She ..... in from Rome. (just / to fly)

#### 2. Make up a question and negation of the following words in brackets.

**Model:** (you / ever / be / to Italy?) – *Have you ever been to Italy?*

*When did you last smoke? (for two years) – I haven't smoked for two years.*

1. (you / ever / be / to South America?) .....
2. (you / read / any English books?) .....
3. (how many times / you / be / in love?) .....
4. (you ever / speak / to a famous person?) .....
5. (you ever / catch fish / in this pond?) .....
6. When did it last rain? (for ages) It ..... for ages.
7. When did you last play tennis? (for a long time) .....
8. When did you last go to Spain? (never) .....
9. When did she last write to you? (since last summer) .....
10. When did you last eat caviar? (never) .....

#### 3. Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

*to break, to buy, to finish, to do, to go (2), to lose, to paint, to read, to take*

1. 'Are they still having dinner?' 'No, they *have finished*.'
2. I ..... some new shoes. Do you want to see them?
3. 'Is Tom there?' 'No, he ..... to work.'
4. '..... you ..... the shopping?' 'No, I'm going to do it later.'
5. 'Where's your key?' 'I don't know. I ..... it.'
6. Look! Somebody ..... that window.
7. Your house looks different. .... you ..... it?
8. I can't find my umbrella. Somebody ..... it.
9. I'm looking for Sarah. Where ..... she .....?
10. 'Do you want the newspaper?' 'No, thanks. I ..... it.'

#### 4. Read the situation and write a suitable sentence or complete it using Present Perfect.

**Model:** *Tom is looking for his key. He can't find it. (to lose) – He has lost his key.*

1. Ann's hair was dirty. Now it is clean. (to wash) .....
2. Tom was 80 kilograms. Now he weighs 70. (to lose weight) .....

3. The car has just stopped because there isn't any more petrol in the tank. (to run out of petrol) .....
4. Yesterday Bill was playing football. Now he can't walk and his leg is in plaster. (to break) .....
5. Ron is phoning Jill again. He has already phoned her twice this evening. It's the third time he .....
6. You're late again. You've already been late once this week. It's the second ..... this week.
7. The car has broken down. It has already broken down twice this month. It's the second.....
8. Ann has just finished drinking a cup of tea. She has already had four cups this morning. It's the fifth .....

**5. Put the verb in the Present Perfect (I have done) / Past Simple (I did).**

1. My friend is a writer. He *has written* (to write) many books.
2. We *didn't have* (not / to have) a holiday last year.
3. *Did you see* (you / to see) Alan last week?
4. I ..... (to play) tennis yesterday afternoon.
5. What time ..... (you / to go) to bed last night?
6. .... (you / ever / to be) to the United States?
7. My hair is clean. I ..... (to wash) it.
8. I ..... (to wash) my hair before breakfast this morning.
9. When I was a child, I ..... (not / to like) sport.
10. Kathy loves traveling. She ..... (to visit) many countries.
11. John works in a bookshop. He ..... (to work) there for three years.
12. Last year we ..... (to go) to Finland for a holiday. We ..... (to stay) there for three months.

**6. Open the brackets using Past Indefinite (I did) / Present Perfect (I have done).**

1. A: Did you like the movie "Star Wars?" B: I don't know. I (see, never) that movie.
2. Sam (arrive) in San Diego a week ago.
3. My best friend and I (know) each other for over fifteen years. We still get together once a week.
4. Stinson is a fantastic writer. He (write) ten very creative short stories in the last year. One day, he'll be as famous as Hemingway.
5. I (have, not) this much fun since I (be) a kid.
6. Things (change) a great deal at Coltech, Inc. When we first (start) working here three years ago, the company (have, only) six employees. Since then, we (expand) to include more than 2000 full-time workers.
7. I (tell) him to stay on the path while he was hiking, but he (wander) off into the forest and (be) bitten by a snake.
8. Listen Donna, I don't care if you (miss) the bus this morning. You (be) late to work too many times. You are fired!
9. Sam is from Colorado, which is hundreds of miles from the coast, so he (see, never) the ocean. He should come with us to Miami.
10. How sad! George (dream) of going to California before he died, but he didn't make it. He (see, never) the ocean.
11. In the last hundred years, traveling (become) much easier and very comfortable. In the 19th century, it (take) two or three months to cross North America by covered wagon. The trip (be) very rough and often dangerous. Things (change) a great deal in the last hundred and fifty years. Now you can fly from New York to Los Angeles in a matter of hours.
12. Johnny, I can't believe how much you (change) since the last time I (see) you. You (grow) at least a foot!
13. This tree (be) planted by the settlers who (found) our city over four hundred years ago.
14. This mountain (be, never) climbed by anyone. Several mountaineers (try) to reach the top, but nobody (succeed, ever). The climb is extremely difficult and many people (die) trying to reach the summit.



**Revision Test on Present Perfect**

**Choose the right option.**

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ there when he was a child.

- a) has lived                      b) lived
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ her since last year.
- a) haven't seen                      b) didn't see
3. They \_\_\_\_\_ a few minutes ago.
- a) left                      b) have left
4. She \_\_\_\_\_ unemployed since she left school.
- a) has not been                      b) was not
5. They \_\_\_\_\_ the contract last week.
- a) finalized                      b) have finalized
6. The film \_\_\_\_\_ yet.
- a) hasn't started                      b) didn't start
7. She \_\_\_\_\_ ill since Thursday.
- a) was                      b) has been
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ the project last night.
- a) have finished                      b) finished
9. Look – someone \_\_\_\_\_ their handbag in the room.
- a) left                      b) has left
10. \_\_\_\_\_ to Rome?
- a) Did you ever go                      b) Have you ever been
11. I can't get into my house because I \_\_\_\_\_ my keys.
- a) lost                      b) have lost
12. Nobody \_\_\_\_\_ the phone when it rang.
- a) answered                      b) has answered
13. I \_\_\_\_\_ up smoking last year.
- a) gave                      b) have given
14. You can't see her because she \_\_\_\_\_ home.
- a) has gone                      b) went
15. \_\_\_\_\_ to the United States?
- a) Did you ever go                      b) Have you ever been

## Past Perfect Tense

### 1. Make sentences from the box.

A	B	C
1. I couldn't answer the questions	because I had  because I hadn't	crashed his car.
2. I was hungry		passed my driving test.
3. My mother was worried		got stuck in a traffic jam.
4. I was late		flown in a plane before.
5. I was pleased		slept badly.
6. I was nervous during the flight		revised for the exam.
7. My father was furious		been in touch for a long time.
8. I was tired		eaten all day.

### 2. Join these pairs of sentences, using the conjunctions in brackets. Change one verb into the Past Perfect (I had done).

**Model:** *I had a bath, I went to bed. (after) – After I'd had a bath, I went to bed.*

1. I read the letter. I threw it away. (when)
2. He passed his driving test, he bought a car. (as soon as)
3. I took the book back to the library. I finished reading it. (when)
4. I didn't go to bed. I did my homework. (until)
5. I spent all my money. I went home. (when)
6. I read the book. I saw the film. (before)
7. Her children left home. She started writing. (after)

### 3. Supply the Past Perfect (I had done) / Past Simple (I did).

1. They **had locked** the gates before I **got** there. (to lock / to get)
2. By the time we ....., the party ..... (to arrive / to finish)
3. I .....the shop as soon as I .....the contents of the box. (to ring / to check)
4. After we .....it on the phone, I .....him a letter about it. (to discuss / to write)
5. We .....a good rest when our guests .....(to have / all leave)
6. When she .....the office this morning, Jim.....(to ring / already / to go out)
7. Before we .....Tim to the theater, he .....a stage play before. (to take / never / to see)
8. I .....the carpet when the dog .....in and .....himself. (just / clean / to come / to shake)
9. He .....to do the job in an hour, but he still .....by 10 o'clock. (to promise / not / to finish)

### 4. Open the brackets using the verbs in Past Simple (I did) / Past Continuous (I was doing) / Past Perfect (I had done)

1. Gerry (to be) at home when you arrived? – No, he (to go) on a date.
2. By 8 p.m. the boss (to sign) the documents and by 8 p.m. the secretary (to make) a report.
3. When he (to see) me, I (to read) the newspaper which I (to buy) in the street.
4. Beth just (to go home) when I (to phone) her.
5. When Alison (to enter) the house she (to see) that her son (to play) with a ball she (to buy) in the shop.
6. They (to arrive) to the theater late. The play already (to begin).
7. When I (to come) in the hall, they (to unpack) the clothes they (to receive) from their foreign friends.
8. Her brother (to be) taken to hospital because he (to have) a car accident.

### 5. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Вона хотіла повернутися в місто, де провела своє дитинство.
2. Коли я визирнув у вікно, я побачив, що в небі яскраво світить сонце, а дощ припинився.
3. Коли ми прибули на

вокзал, поїзд уже поїхав. 4. Не встигли ми зайти до магазину, як до нас підбіг продавець. 5. Моя подруга почувалася погано, тому що отримала сонячний опік. 6. Коли він був молодим, то брав участь у футбольних матчах. 7. Щойно ми переїхали до нового будинку, як до нас завітали сусіди. 8. Коли вона виступала на зборах, хтось шепотів у залі. 9. Охоронець не впізнав людини, яка пограбувала банк.

**6. Make up five types of questions to the following sentences.**

1. She had forgotten me by then. 2. I had never ridden a horse before. 3. By that time lots of things had changed. 4. He had never had such an expensive car before. 5. Hardly had he seen her, he fell in love with her. 6. We had studied German before we went to Berlin. 7. I told I had met her. 8. They had finished the construction by the end of the month.

**7. Open the brackets using Past Indefinite (I did) / Past Perfect (I had done).**

I can't believe I (get) that apartment. I (submit) my application last week, but I didn't think I had a chance of actually getting it. When I (show) up to take a look around, there were at least twenty other people who (arrive) before me. Most of them (fill, already) out their applications and were already leaving. The landlord said I could still apply, so I did.

I (try) to fill out the form, but I couldn't answer half of the questions. They (want) me to include references, but I didn't want to list my previous landlord because I (have) some problems with him in the past and I knew he wouldn't recommend me. I (end) up listing my father as a reference.

It was total luck that he (decide) to give me the apartment. It turns out that the landlord and my father (go) to high school together. He decided that I could have the apartment before he (look) at my credit report. I really lucked out!

**8. Open the brackets using Past Simple (I did) / Present Perfect (I have done) / Past Perfect (I had done)**

1. When I (arrive) home last night, I discovered that Jane (prepare) a beautiful candlelight dinner. 2. Since I began acting, I (perform) in two plays, a television commercial and a TV drama. However, I (speak, never even) publicly before I came to Hollywood in 1985. 3. By the time I got to the office, the meeting (begin, already) without me. My boss (be) furious with me and I (be) fired. 4. When I (turn) the radio on yesterday, I (hear) a song that was popular when I was in high school. I (hear, not) the song in years, and it (bring) back some great memories. 5. Last week, I (run) into an ex-girlfriend of mine. We (see, not) each other in years, and both of us (change) a great deal. I (enjoy) talking to her so much that I (ask) her out on a date. We are getting together tonight for dinner. 6. When Jack (enter) the room, I (recognize, not) him because he (lose) so much weight and (grow) a beard. He looked totally different! 7. The Maya established a very advanced civilization in the jungles of the Yucatan; however, their culture (disappear, virtually) by the time Europeans first (arrive) in the New World. 8. I (visit) so many beautiful places since I (come) to Utah. Before moving here, I (hear, never) of Bryce Canyon, Zion, Arches, or Canyon lands.



## Revision Test on Past Perfect

**Choose the right answer.**

1. I was sure that I \_\_\_\_\_ her before.

- a) had saw                      b) seen                      c) had seen

2. I needed to know what \_\_\_\_\_ to my dog.

- a) has happened                      b) had happened                      c) happened

3. The film \_\_\_\_\_ by the time we got to the cinema.

- a) had start                      b) had started                      c) has started

4. Julia left the restaurant after she \_\_\_\_\_ eating.

- a) had finished                      b) has finished                      c) finished

5. I went to bed after I \_\_\_\_\_ off the television.

- a) switched                      b) has switched                      c) had switched

6. By the time we \_\_\_\_\_, everyone had left.

a) arrived

b) had arrived

c) was arriving

7. I \_\_\_\_\_ a long time ago.

a) finished

b) had finished

c) has finished

8. By that time, everybody \_\_\_\_\_ exhausted.

a) was

b) had been

c) will have been

9. She told me she \_\_\_\_\_ it ages ago.

a) did

b) had done

c) have been doing

10. I \_\_\_\_\_ of it until you mentioned it.

a) didn't hear

b) hadn't heard

c) haven't heard

## ***Future Perfect Tense***

### **1. Put the verbs into the correct form using Future Perfect (I will have done).**

1. By 9 o'clock we ..... (to cook) dinner.
2. They ..... (to eat) by then.
3. In a week he ..... (to cross) the Atlantic by boat.
4. She ..... (to go) home when you come.
5. Jane ..... (not / to finish) her work by the end of this year.
6. Fred ..... (not / to return) from his holiday by Monday.
7. The sun ..... (not / to rise) by 4 o'clock.
8. .... (you / to finish) the washing up by six o'clock?
9. Our boss ..... (not / to leave) the office until you make a right decision.
10. .... (she / to buy) the new car by their wedding anniversary?

### **2. Make the Future Perfect Tense.**

1. I ..... (to leave) by six.
2. .... (you / to finish) the report by the deadline?
3. When ..... (we / to do) everything?
4. She ..... (to finish) her exams by then, so we can go out for dinner.
5. You ..... (to read) the book before the next class.
6. She ..... (not / to finish) work by seven.
7. When ..... (you / to complete) the work?
8. They ..... (to arrive) by dinner time.
9. We ..... (to be) in London for three years by the next week.
10. .... (she / to get) home by lunch time?
11. .... (you / to do) everything by seven?
12. We ..... (not / to eat) before we come, so we'll be hungry.
13. .... (he / to finish) his exams when we go on holiday?
14. .... (we / to arrive) by the time it gets dark?
15. How long ..... (you / to know) your boyfriend when you get married?
16. He ..... (not / to complete) the project by July.
17. I ..... (not / to finish) the essay by the weekend.
18. Why ..... (she / to finish) the cleaning by six?
19. How long ..... (you / to be) in this company when you retire?
20. They ..... (not / to return) by six.

### **3. Using the words in brackets, complete the text below with the Future Simple (I will do) / Future Perfect (I will have done)**

1.

*Margaret:* Do you think everything will be finished when I get back from the store?

*Jerry:* Don't worry. By the time you get back, I ..... (to pick) up the living room and ..... (to finish) washing the dishes. Everything will be perfect when your parents arrive.

*Margaret:* I hope so. They ..... (to arrive) around 6 o'clock.

*Jerry:* Everything ..... (to be) spotless by the time they get here.

2.

*Nick:* I just have two more courses before I graduate from university. By this time next year, I ..... (to graduate), and I will already be looking for a job.

*Stacey:* Does that scare you? Are you worried about the future?

*Nick:* Not really. I ..... (to go) to a career counselor and get some advice on how to find a good job.

*Stacey:* That's a good idea.

*Nick:* I am also going to do an internship so that when I leave school, I ..... (to complete) not only over 13 business courses, but I ..... (to work) also in the real world.

3.

*Stan:* Did you hear that Christine ..... (to take) a vacation in South America this winter?

*Fred:* I can't believe how often she goes abroad. Where exactly does she want to go?

*Stan:* She ..... (to visit) Peru, Bolivia and Ecuador.

*Fred:* At this rate, she ..... (to visit) every country in the world by the time she's 50.

4.

*Judy:* How long have you been in Miami?

*Elaine:* I have only been here for a couple of weeks.

*Judy:* How long do you plan on staying?

*Elaine:* I love Miami, so I ..... (to stay) here for an extended period of time. When I go back home, I ..... (to be) here for more than three months.

*Judy:* Wow, that's quite a vacation!

5.

*Jane:* I can't believe how late we are! By the time we get to the dinner, everyone ..... (to finish) already eating.

*Jack:* It's your own fault. You took way too long in the bathroom.

*Jane:* I couldn't get my hair to look right.

*Jack:* Who cares? By the time we get there, everyone ..... (to leave) . Nobody ..... (to see) even your hair.

4. First, read Jack's itinerary for tomorrow. Then, for each sentence, choose either Future Continuous (I will be doing) or Future Perfect (I will have done) to complete it.

**Model:** At 8 a.m., he will be leaving home. (to leave)

8.00	Leave Home	
8.30	Arrive at Airport	1. By 8.30 a.m. he ..... at the airport. (to arrive).
9.30	Plane Leaves For Paris	2. At 9 a.m. he ..... his plane (to wait for).
11.00	Arrives in Paris	3. At 9.30 a.m. he ..... for Paris (to leave).
1.00	Meeting Starts	4. At 10 a.m. he ..... to Paris (to fly).
3.00	Meeting Finishes	5. At 11.00 a.m. he ..... (to arrive) in Paris.
7.30	Business Dinner	6. At 1.00 p.m. the meeting ..... (to start).
10.00	Leave Restaurant	7. At 7.50 p.m. he ..... his dinner (to eat).
10.30	Arrive at Hotel	8. At 10.00 p.m. he ..... (to leave) the restaurant.
11.00	Go to Bed	9. At midnight he ..... (to sleep).



## Revision Test on Future Perfect

Choose the right option.

- Tino won't be in Italy next month. He \_\_\_\_\_ by then.  
a) will have come back      b) will have came back      c) will have coming back
- The Browns won't be living in the same house a year from now. They \_\_\_\_\_ by then.  
a) will have leave      b) will have left      c) will have leaved
- Gloria won't be working at six o'clock. She \_\_\_\_\_ by then.  
a) will have went home      b) will have gone home      c) will have go home
- Sam won't be sweeping the garage tomorrow. He \_\_\_\_\_ by then.  
a) will have swept it      b) will have swept it      c) will have sweeping
- Jack won't be driving the same car a year from now. He \_\_\_\_\_ by then.  
a) will have solden it      b) will have sold it      c) will have sell it
- Nancy won't be sleeping at eight o'clock in the morning. She \_\_\_\_\_ by then.  
a) will have get up      b) will have gets up      c) will have got up
- Barbara won't be living in an apartment next year. She \_\_\_\_\_ by then.  
a) will have bought a house      b) will have buyed a house      c) will have buys a house



8. Anne won't be single next year. She \_\_\_\_\_ by then.

a) will have found a boyfriend      b) will have find a boyfriend      c) will have finds a boyfriend

9. Johnnie won't be alone next month. He \_\_\_\_\_ by then.

a) will have fell in love      b) will have fall in love      c) will have fallen in love

10. Margaret won't be working at the bookstore in a few years. She \_\_\_\_\_ by then.

a) will have got rich      b) will have gets rich      c) will have get rich

## ***Perfect Continuous Group***

### ***Present Perfect Continuous Tense***

#### **1. Insert 'have' / 'has' according to the person given.**

1. She ..... been asking questions all day long.
2. They ..... been climbing the mountain.
3. We ..... been washing the dishes.
4. You ..... been repairing your computer.
5. I ..... been working.
6. It ..... been snowing.
7. The boy ..... been playing.
8. Cathy ..... been dreaming.
9. The men ..... been digging a hole.
10. Cindy and Bob ..... been studying English.

#### **2. Supply the Present Perfect Continuous (I have been doing) of the verbs in brackets.**

1. I'm tired. I ***have been digging*** in my garden all day. (to dig)
2. How long ..... here? (you / to wait)
3. I ..... here since 6 o'clock. (to stand)
4. How long ..... Chinese? (you / to learn)
5. She ..... English for five years. (to study)
6. You're out of breath .....? (you / to run)
7. We ..... here for twelve years. (to live)
8. Your eyes are red. I think ..... (you / to cry)
9. How long .....? (the children / to sleep)
10. What ..... all afternoon? (you / to do)

#### **3. Use 'since' / 'for' in the offered sentences.**

1. I have been waiting ..... 4 o'clock.
2. Sue has only been waiting ..... 20 minutes.
3. Tim and Tina have been learning English ..... six years.
4. Fred and Frida have been learning French ..... 1998.
5. Joe and Josephine have been going out together ..... Valentine's Day.
6. I haven't been on holiday ..... last July.
7. Mary has been saving her money ..... many years.
8. I haven't been eating anything ..... breakfast.
9. You have been watching TV ..... hours.
10. We have been living here ..... 2 months.

#### **4. Fill in the correct tense Present Simple (I do) / Present Perfect Continuous (I have been doing).**

1. Marvin and Joe ..... (to play) in a football club for two years.
2. They ..... (to practice) four times a week.
3. Marvin ..... (to be) a popular forwarder.
4. He often ..... (to score) goals for his team.
5. At the moment, the training ..... (to be) very hard.
6. For six weeks now, the team ..... (to prepare) for an important match taking place on Sunday.
7. Today, the boys ..... (to do) strength training for forty minutes already.
8. Joe ..... (to like / not) that very much – he ..... (to want) to play football.
9. However, the strength training exercises ..... (to be) also very important for the young players.
10. She ..... (to sing) in the school's choir for five years.

**5. Put the verbs in brackets into Present Perfect (I have done) / Present Perfect Continuous (I have been doing).**

*Robin:* I think the waiter (forget) us. We (wait) here for over half an hour and nobody (take) our order yet.

*Michele:* I think you're right. He (walk) by us at least twenty times. He probably thinks we (order, already) .

*Robin:* Look at that couple over there, they (be, only) here for five or ten minutes and they already have their food.

*Michele:* He must realize we (order, not) yet! We (sit) here for over half an hour staring at him.

*Robin:* I don't know if he (notice, even) us. He (run) from table to table taking orders and serving food.

*Michele:* That's true, and he (look, not) in our direction once.

**6. Use Present Continuous (I'm doing) / Present Perfect Continuous (I've been doing) in the following sentences.**

1. It (rain) all week. I hope it stops by Saturday because I want to go to the beach. 2. Sid: Where is Gary? Sarah: He (study, at the library) for his German test on Wednesday. In fact, he (review) for the test every day for the last week. 3. You look really great! (You, exercise) at the fitness center ? 4. Frank, where have you been? We (wait) for you since 1 p.m. 5. Tim: What is that sound? Nancy: A car alarm (ring) somewhere down the street. It (drive) me crazy – I wish it would stop! It (ring) for more than twenty minutes. 6. Joseph's English (improve, really), isn't it? He (watch) American television programs and (study) his grammar every day since he first arrived in San Diego. Soon he will be totally fluent. 7. Dan: You look a little tired. (You, get) enough sleep lately? Michelle: Yes, I (sleep) relatively well. I just look tired because I (feel) a little sick for the last week. Dan: I hope you feel better soon. Michelle: Thanks. I (take, currently) some medicine, so I should feel better in a couple of days.



**Revision Test on Present Perfect Continuous**

**Choose the most appropriate sentence out of two.**

1. a) *I've worked in the garden all day and now I'm tired.*  
b) *I've been working in the garden all day and now I'm tired.*
2. a) *What have you done? You're all wet.*  
b) *What have you been doing? You're all wet.*
3. a) *I've finished my homework. Now I'm going to watch TV.*  
b) *I've been finishing my homework. Now I'm going to watch TV.*
4. a) *What have you done with my keys? - I haven't seen your keys.*  
b) *What have you been doing with my keys? - I haven't seen your keys.*
5. a) *She's worked in the garden all morning and she's still not finished.*  
b) *She's been working in the garden all morning and she's still not finished.*
6. a) *Why are you sweating? – I've cut the grass.*  
b) *Why are you sweating? – I've been cutting the grass.*
7. a) *How many biscuits have you eaten?*  
b) *How many biscuits have you been eating?*
8. a) *How long have you known her?*  
b) *How long have you been knowing her?*
9. a) *I've had this computer for over 10 years.*  
b) *I've been having this computer for over 10 years.*
10. a) *I've had piano lessons for over 10 years and I'm still not very good.*  
b) *I've been having piano lessons for over 10 years and I'm still not very good.*

## ***Past Perfect Continuous Tense***

### **1. Put the verbs into the correct form of Past Perfect Continuous (I had been doing).**

1. We ..... (to sleep) for 12 hours when he woke us up.
2. They ..... (to wait) at the station for 90 minutes when the train finally arrived.
3. We ..... (to look for) her ring for two hours and then we found it in the bathroom.
4. I ..... (not / to walk) for a long time, when it suddenly began to rain.
5. How long ..... (to learn / she) English before she went to London?
6. Frank Sinatra caught the flu because he ..... (to sing) in the rain too long.
7. He ..... (to drive) less than an hour when he ran out of petrol.
8. They were very tired in the evening because they ..... (to dig) on the farm all day.
9. I ..... (not / to work) all day, so I wasn't tired and went to the disco at night.
10. They ..... (to cycle) all day so their legs were sore in the evening.

### **2. Using the words in brackets, complete the text below with the Past Perfect (I had done) / Past Perfect Continuous (I had been doing).**

I'm sorry I left without you last night, but I told you to meet me early because the show started at 8:00. I ..... (to try) to get tickets for that play for months, and I didn't want to miss it. By the time I finally left the coffee shop where we were supposed to meet, I ..... (to have) five cups of coffee and I ..... (to wait) over an hour. I had to leave because I ..... (to arrange) to meet Kathy in front of the theater.

When I arrived at the theater, Kathy ..... (to pick up) already the tickets and she was waiting for us near the entrance. She was really angry because she ..... (to wait) for more than half an hour. She said she ..... (to give) almost up and ..... (to go) into the theater without us.

Kathy told me you ..... (to be) late several times in the past and that she would not make plans with you again in the future. She mentioned that she ..... (to miss) several movies because of your late arrivals. I think you owe her an apology. And in the future, I suggest you be on time!

### **3. Fill the gaps with the verb in brackets using the Past Continuous (I was doing) / Past Perfect Continuous (I had been doing).**

1. When I asked Carlos if he wanted to go out, he said he couldn't because he ..... an assignment. (to finish)
2. Scarlet came into the room panting. She ..... round the park. (to jog)
3. Scarlet wasn't in. She ..... round the park. (to jog)
4. I ..... a bath when I suddenly had a great idea. (to have)
5. He told me he ..... seriously ..... about finding another job soon. (to think)
6. He ..... about finding a new job for about a year before he finally got round to it. He's happy now. (to think)
7. It was obvious from his outrageous behavior that he ..... . (to drink)
8. I ..... a latte in the Café New York, when I saw a famous actor walk past the window. (to drink)

### **4. Using the words in parentheses, complete the sentences below with the Present Perfect (I have done) / Past Perfect (I had done) / Present Perfect Continuous (I have been doing) / Past Perfect Continuous (I had been doing).**

1. It is already 9.30 p.m. and I ..... (to wait) here for over an hour. If John does not get here in the next five minutes, I am going to leave.
2. I was really angry with John yesterday. By the time he finally arrived, I ..... (to wait) for over an hour. I almost left without him.
3. Did you hear that Ben was fired last month? He ..... (to work) for that import company for more than ten years and he ..... (to work) in almost every department. Nobody knew the company like he did.
4. I ..... (to see) many pictures of the pyramids before I went to Egypt. Pictures of the monuments are very misleading. The pyramids are actually quite small.

5. Sarah ..... (to climb) the Matterhorn, ..... (to sail) around the world, and ..... (to go) on safari in Kenya. She is such an adventurous person.
6. Sarah ..... (to climb) the Matterhorn, ..... (to sail) around the world and ..... (to go) on safari in Kenya by the time she turned twenty-five. She ..... (to experience) more by that age than most people do in their entire lives.
7. When Melanie came into the office yesterday, her eyes were red and watery. I think she ..... (to cry).

**5. Read the story putting the verbs in brackets into Present Continuous (I'm doing) / Past Simple (I did) / Present Perfect Continuous (I have been doing) / Past Perfect Continuous (I had been doing).**

My English is really getting better. I (try) to learn the language since 1985, but only recently have I been able to make some real progress. By the time I started high school in 1988, I (study) the language for almost three years; however, I was only able to introduce myself and utter a few memorized sentences. For a couple more years, I (struggle) through grammar and vocabulary lessons, which made absolutely no difference. Nothing worked, so I decided to study abroad.

I found an exchange program in England that sounded like the perfect answer. I (stay) with a host family for one month. It was a huge disappointment! I (sit) there the whole time staring at the host mother and father hoping that there would be some breakthrough. Nothing.

When I returned, I mentioned to a friend that I (have) problems with the language for years. He recommended that I spend a year in an English speaking country. I decided to go abroad again. I (research) exchange programs for a couple of weeks and finally decided on a school in the United States.

Well, it worked. I (live) and (study) in the U.S. for more than two years. I (stay) here for at least another year before I return home. By then, I should be completely fluent.



**Revision Test on Past Perfect Continuous**

**Write each form of the verb using the phrase 'to eat paste.' The first one is done for you.**

1. *Present Simple: I eat paste every day.*
2. Past Simple: I .....
3. Future Simple: I .....
4. Present Continuous: I .....
6. Past Continuous: I .....
7. Future Continuous: I .....
5. Present Perfect: I .....
6. Past Perfect: I .....
8. Future Perfect: I .....
9. Present Perfect Continuous: I .....
10. Past Perfect Continuous: I .....

## ***Future Perfect Continuous Tense***

### **1. Put the verbs into the correct form of Future Perfect Continuous (I will have been doing).**

1. By the end of the week I..... (to work) here for four months.
2. By the end of this month we ..... (to live) together for six years.
3. By the end of the term she ..... (to study) for nine years.
4. By midnight we ..... (to play) this computer game for 48 hours.
5. She ..... (to talk) on the phone for the last couple of hours.
6. They ..... (to look for) me all night long.
7. He ..... (to play) soccer all day long.
8. You ..... (to watch) TV all the time.
9. He ..... (not / to sleep) all morning.
10. .... (to wait / they) for 2 hours?

### **2. Open the brackets using Future Perfect (I will have done) / Future Perfect Continuous (I will have been doing).**

1. By the time we get to Chicago this evening, we (drive) ... more than four hundred miles. We are going to be exhausted.
2. When Sarah goes on vacation next month, she (study) ... German for over two years. She should be able to communicate fairly well while she is in Austria.
3. I have not traveled much yet; however, I (visit) ... the Grand Canyon and San Francisco by the time I leave the United States.
4. By the time you finish studying the verb tense tutorial, you (master) ... all twelve tenses including their passive forms.
5. Drive faster! If you don't hurry up, she (have) the baby by the time we get to the hospital.
6. I came to England six months ago. I started my economics course three months ago. When I return to Australia, I (study) ... for nine months and I (be) in England for exactly one year.
7. Margie just called and said she would be here at 8 o'clock. By the time she gets here, we (wait) ... for her for two hours.
8. Frank just changed jobs again. If he keeps this up, he (change) ... jobs at least four or five times by the end of the year.
9. Come over to my house around 9 o'clock. By then, I (complete) ... my history essay and we can go see a movie.
10. In June, my grandmother and grandfather (be) ... married for fifty years.

### **3. Read the dialogues opening the brackets in Future Continuous (I will be doing) / Future Perfect Continuous (I will have been doing).**

**1.**

*Simona:* Margaret is really going to speak Spanish well when she gets back from that language school in Mexico.

*Isabelle:* Hopefully! She (take) ... classes for more than six months.

*Simona:* She is going to be able to speak Spanish with some of our Latin American clients.

*Isabelle:* Good. Two clients from Peru (visit) ... us next month when Margaret returns. We need someone to entertain them while they are here.

**2.**

*Jason:* I am leaving!

*Nurse:* If you would please wait, the doctor will be with you in ten minutes. The doctor is having some problems with a patient.

*Jason:* The doctor was having problems with that patient an hour ago. If I wait another ten minutes, I am sure he (have, still) ... problems with her. By the time he's finally ready to see me, I (wait) ... for more than two hours.

**3.**

*Frank:* What are you going to be doing tomorrow at five?

*Debbie:* I (paint) ... my living room walls.

*Frank:* Still? How long have you been working on your living room?

*Debbie:* Forever. By the time I finish, I (redecorate) ... the living room for over a week.

*Frank:* Too bad. I was going to ask if you wanted to see a movie. What about the day after tomorrow?

*Debbie:* Sorry, I (move) ... furniture and (put) ... up drapes.

**4.**

*Mr. Jones:* What are you going to be doing next year at this time?

*Mr. McIntyre:* I (work) ... for a big law firm in New Orleans.

*Mr. Jones:* I didn't know you were leaving Baton Rouge.

*Mr. McIntyre:* I got a great job offer which I just can't refuse. Besides, by the time I move, I (live) ... in Baton Rouge for over twenty years. I think it's about time for a change.



## Revision Test on Future Perfect Continuous

**Make the right choice.**

1. I think I \_\_\_\_\_ this gorgeous car next year.  
a) will buy                      b) will be buying                      c) will have bought
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ his house if he \_\_\_\_\_ abroad to earn enough money.  
a) will fix / is going              b) will be fixing / he was going              c) will fix / goes
3. At this time tomorrow they \_\_\_\_\_ on the ocean beach.  
a) will lie                      b) will be lying                      c) will have been lying
4. Don't worry, I \_\_\_\_\_ everything by the next week.  
a) will have arranged              b) will be arranging                      c) will arrange
5. By the next month they \_\_\_\_\_ for this foreign company for 25 years.  
a) will work                      b) will have been working                      c) will be working
6. There's no sense to hurry. When we \_\_\_\_\_ at the station, the train \_\_\_\_\_ already.  
a) arrives / will go              b) will arrive / will be going                      c) arrive / will have gone
7. Don't try to get to her. I'm sure all the evening tomorrow she \_\_\_\_\_ in the garden.  
a) will dig                      b) will be digging                      c) will have dug
8. I'm convinced they \_\_\_\_\_ soon because they have been dating for 2 years already.  
a) will be getting married      b) will get married                      c) will have got married
9. This fat man is crazy over cookies. He probably \_\_\_\_\_ all of them before guests come.  
a) will eat                      b) will have been eating                      c) will have eaten
10. When I come, she \_\_\_\_\_ for 5 hours in the local park. That's her hobby.  
a) will be jogging              b) will jog                      c) will have been jogging

## Passive Voice

### 1. Write passive sentences in Present, Past, Future Simple.

**Model:** *the story / discuss – The story is discussed. / The story was discussed. / The story will be discussed.*

1. the test / write .....
2. the table / set .....
3. the children / pick up / not .....
4. the cat / feed.....
5. the lights / switch on .....
6. the car / stop / not .....
7. the house / build .....
8. this computer / sell / not .....
9. dinner / serve .....
10. the tables / clean / not .....

### 2. Rewrite the sentences in Passive Voice.

**Model:** *They bought a new house last year. – A new house was bought last year by them.*

1. The manager always welcomes new employees. - .....
2. They're building a new supermarket near the church. - .....
3. They fought the battle in 1623. - .....
4. Someone was cleaning the windows while I was there. - .....
5. Someone has moved my desk! - .....
6. They are taking the refugees to a camp outside the village. - .....
7. Someone had signed all the documents before I arrived.- .....
8. They were questioning us and searching our vehicles at the same time. - .....
9. They will post our letters when the ship arrives at the next port of call. - .....
10. They're opening the case again because they are not satisfied with the verdict. -.....

### 3. Rewrite the sentences in the proper tenses in Passive.

**Model:** *Somebody stole my bag in the shop. – My bag was stolen in the shop.*

*The police have arrested three men. – Three men have been arrested by the police.*

1. The bill includes service. Service.....
2. People don't use this road very often. This road.....
3. They cancelled all flights because of fog. All flights.....
4. Somebody accused me of stealing the money. I.....
5. They are building a new ring-road around the city. A new ring-road.....
6. I didn't realize that someone was recording our conversation. I didn't realize that our conversation .....
7. They have changed the date of the meeting. The date of the meeting .....
8. Brian told me that somebody had attacked and robbed him in the street. Brian told me that he.....

### 4. Put the verbs in brackets into Past Indefinite or Past Continuous Passive.

**Model:** *They (shut) the window. – The window was shut.*

*A beautiful melody (to play). – A beautiful melody was being played.*

1. The student (to ask) to tell the story again.
2. Such mistakes (to make) by even the best students.
3. A modern tune (to play) when we came into the hall.
4. Every morning the workers (to tell) what they had to do.
5. The houses (to build) of stone, brick and wood.
6. At last the problem (to solve) to everyone's satisfaction.
7. A museum (to open) then.
8. A week ago two students of our group (to choose) for jury service.
9. Last Friday he (to meet) at the railway station.
10. When Tom was young, he (to teach) two languages.

### 6. Give the following sentences in Passive Voice.

1. We can solve this problem.



2. People should send their complaints to the head office.
3. Somebody may steal your car if you leave the keys in it.
4. An electrical fault could have caused the fire.
5. They must hold next year's congress in San Francisco.
6. They shouldn't have played football in such bad weather.
7. I can translate this passage in an hour.
8. We can take our car by air-ferry.
9. I really miss Ann. I'm sure we should have invited her to the party.
10. Someone could have seen you if it hadn't been so dark.

### 7. Rewrite the sentences in Active Voice.

1. His honesty was acknowledged by everybody.
2. His decisions are always approved by her.
3. The window has been left open by someone.
4. The documents are being signed by the head now.
5. This car had been sold by them before we arrived.
6. The city will be attacked by the enemies soon.
7. The bike was being fixed by the mechanic when we came in.
8. His actions can't be explained by us.
9. This café is visited by my colleagues.
10. I'm sure this shoplifter has been already caught by the police.

### 8. Translate into English using the verbs in Passive.

1. Протягом року тут вирощували овочі та фрукти.
2. Килими все ще чистять.
3. Вона сказала, що чек загублено.
4. Вашу пропозицію не можна забути.
5. Нас одразу помітили.
6. Його скоро призначать менеджером готелю.
7. Чому ще не складено списки?
8. Злочинця необхідно знайти.
9. Товари потрібно доставити за цією адресою.
10. Цю казку знають усі діти.

### 9. A reporter is talking to Lucy Fame. Complete the interview.



Rep: It's wonderful to interview such a famous person as you.

Lucy: Yes, you are very lucky!

Rep: I know that you **have been interviewed** (interview) many times before.

Lucy: Yes, I have.

Rep: Also, I know that three books \_\_\_\_\_ (write) about you.

Lucy: Yes, they have – and another one \_\_\_\_\_ (write) at the moment.

Rep: A film \_\_\_\_\_ (make)

about your life two years ago, wasn't it?

Lucy: Yes, it was a brilliant film! The leading role \_\_\_\_\_ (play) by a beautiful young actress.

Rep: \_\_\_\_\_ any more films \_\_\_\_\_ (make) in the future?

Lucy: Oh yes, of course!

Rep: Where do you buy your clothes from, Lucy?

Lucy: I don't buy them! They \_\_\_\_\_ (design) especially for me.

Rep: And what about your beautiful house?

Lucy: That \_\_\_\_\_ (build) five years ago by an Italian architect.



Rep: You must make a lot of money.

Lucy: I make lots of money and everybody loves me. Flowers \_\_\_\_\_ (*send*) to my house every day.

Rep: Not by me, that's certain!



### Revision Test on Passive Voice

Choose a proper sentence in passive form.

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. IFL bought Nescafe.<br/>a) Nescafe had been bought by IFL.<br/>b) Nescafe was bought by IFL.<br/>c) Nescafe is bought by IFL.</p> <p>2. Fred asked Simon.<br/>a) Simon was asked by Fred.<br/>b) Simon had been asked by Fred<br/>c) Simon is asked by Fred.</p> <p>3. Caroline paid for the meal.<br/>a) The meal is paid for by Caroline.<br/>b) The meal has been paid for by Caroline.<br/>c) The meal was paid for by Caroline</p> <p>4. Harry will meet you at the airport.<br/>a) You will have been met by Harry at the airport.<br/>b) You will be met by Harry at the airport.<br/>c) You would be met by Harry at the airport.</p> <p>5. Tom respects Lindsay's opinion.<br/>a) Lindsay's opinion would be respected by Tom.<br/>b) Lindsay's opinion was respected by Tom.<br/>c) Lindsay's opinion is respected by Tom.</p> | <p>6. Jane upset me by what she said.<br/>a) I would be upset by what Jane said.<br/>b) I was upset by what Jane said.<br/>c) I would have been upset by what Jane said.</p> <p>7. I'm going to inform John later today.<br/>a) John would be informed by me later today.<br/>b) John was informed by me later today.<br/>c) John is going to be informed by me later today.</p> <p>8. The police arrested 12 people.<br/>a) 12 people were arrested by the police.<br/>b) 12 people have been arrested by the police.<br/>c) 12 people should be arrested by the police.</p> <p>9. Sheila might come to see you tomorrow.<br/>a) You might be visited by Sheila tomorrow.<br/>b) You will might be visited by Sheila tomorrow.<br/>c) You would be visited by Sheila tomorrow.</p> <p>10. Frank Sinatra sang 'My Way...'<br/>a) My Way was sung by Frank Sinatra.<br/>b) My Way had been sung by Frank Sinatra.<br/>c) My Way would be sung by Frank Sinatra.</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## Sequence of Tenses. Indirect Speech

### 1. Choose the correct word from those in brackets to fill the blank in each sentence.

1. He often *says* things like this. (says / tells)
2. She always ..... me her troubles. (says / tells)
3. The children always ..... me if they can go out to play. (tell / ask)
4. They ..... me to leave. (said / asked)
5. 'Don't do that!' she ..... to them. (said / told / asked)
6. 'They've arrived', she ..... (said / told / asked)
7. 'How are you both?' she ..... (told / asked)
8. I ..... that I didn't know what to do. (said / told / asked)
9. She ..... me she didn't know what to do. (said / told / asked)
10. They ..... if I knew what to do. (said / told / asked)

### 3. Turn each direct-speech statements into indirect speech with tense changes.

#### ***Just what the doctor ordered!***



1. 'I've conducted a number of tests,' Dr. Grey said. – ***Dr. Grey said (that) he had conducted a number of tests.***
2. 'I must put you on a very strict diet,' she told me. – .....
3. 'You are putting on a lot of weight,' she said. – .....
4. 'You have gained 5,5 kilos in six months,' she added. – .....
5. 'You gained 10 kilos last year,' she reminded me. – .....
6. 'You will get very fat if you go on like this,' she told me. – .....
7. 'You should eat very little,' she said. – .....
8. 'So I'll have to live on nuts and water,' I said nervously. – .....
9. 'You can live on nuts and water without the nuts,' she said. – .....

### 4. Report these Yes / No questions moving the clauses 'one tense back'.

1. 'Are you hungry?' She asked us ***if / whether we were hungry.***
2. 'Are you enjoying yourself?' He wanted to know.....
3. 'Do you always go to church on Sunday?' He wondered .....
4. 'Have you seen John recently?' She asked me .....
5. 'Has Debbie been working here long?' He wanted to know .....
6. 'Did you study hard for the exam?' She wondered.....
7. 'Will Ted and Alice be at the party?' She asked us.....
8. 'Will you be coming to the concert or not?' He wanted to know.....

### 5. Report these special questions moving the clauses 'one tense back'.

1. 'What's the weather like?' She asked me ***what the weather was like.***
2. 'What does Frank do for a living?' I wanted to know.....
3. 'Why is Maria crying?' She wondered.....
4. 'What kind of holiday has Marco had?' You wanted to know.....
5. 'How long have you both been living here?' They inquired.....
6. 'Where did they go last week?' She wanted to know.....
7. 'Who were you looking for?' He asked me.....
8. 'When will lunch be ready?' You didn't tell me.....
9. 'Which countries will John be visiting?' You didn't say.....
10. 'How can I solve the problem?' I wanted to know.....

### 6. Report the following statements using indirect commands.

1. 'Wait for me,' I said to him. (to tell) – ***I told him to wait for me.***
2. 'Go on holiday when the weather gets warmer,' she told him. (to advise) .....
3. 'Keep out of this room at all times,' she said to them. (to warn) .....
4. 'Remember to post those letters,' she said to me. (to remind) .....
5. 'Don't go into my study,' he said to them. (to ask) .....

6. 'Don't wait for me,' I said to him. (to tell) .....
7. 'Don't go on holiday yet,' she told him. (to advise) .....
8. 'Don't ever enter this room,' she said to them. (to warn) .....

**7. Renew direct speech in the following sentences.**

1. David said he had broken his bike.
2. Tom said he had been working at skating rink for three years.
3. She explained her daughter would go on a trip the following month.
4. James said he liked to see adventure films.
5. His mother told him not to eat ice-cream as he had a sore throat.
6. They told me the train was leaving at the moment.
7. He said he liked me.
8. She wondered whether they could meet next day.
9. He asked me if I was thirsty.
10. She asked me who had been playing this stupid song for half of the day.

**9. Translate the sentences following the rules of Sequence of Tenses.**

1. Вона пообіцяла, що подзвонить. 2. Ми хотіли знати, де він і що робить у цей час.
3. Ніхто з групи не знав, що він такий сильний. 4. Він сказав, що в поганому настрої і не хоче розмовляти. 5. Вона запитала мене, що я робитиму в неділю. 6. Тренер пояснив нам, що це дуже небезпечний вид спорту. 7. Вона попросила офіціанта налити їй чашечку кави.
8. Хірург попросив її асистувати йому. 9. Вона спитала, чи працюватиму я допізна. 10. Провідниця попросила пасажирів пред'явити квиток. 11. Вони хотіли знати, чи я йому довіряю.



**Revision Test on Sequence of Tenses / Indirect Speech**

**Choose the best response.**

1. He will come tomorrow. She told me that he \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.  
a) is coming                      b) will come                      c) would come
2. I see the clouds. He told me that she \_\_\_\_\_ the clouds.  
a) sees                              b) is seeing                      c) saw
3. My mother is taking the bus to work tomorrow. He told me that his mother \_\_\_\_\_ the bus to work tomorrow.  
a) is taking                      b) was taking                      c) will take
4. I will call you. I told her that I \_\_\_\_\_ her.  
a) will call                      b) would call                      c) would have called
5. I have been there. She told me that she \_\_\_\_\_ there.  
a) had been                      b) has been                      c) was
6. I will be studying tomorrow. I told him that I \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.  
a) will be studying              b) would be studying              c) will study
7. Open the window! He asked me \_\_\_\_\_ the window.  
a) to open                      b) open                      c) opened
8. I am happy. She told me that she \_\_\_\_\_ happy.  
a) has been                      b) is                      c) was
9. I have seen that movie. He told me that he \_\_\_\_\_ that movie.  
a) had seen                      b) will have seen                      c) has seen
10. I am flying to India tomorrow. He told me that he \_\_\_\_\_ to India next day.  
a) is flying                      b) was flying                      c) will fly

## Conditional Clauses

### 1. Supply the correct forms of the missing verbs.

1. If it *is* (to be) fine tomorrow, we **will go** (to go) for a picnic.
2. If I ..... (to have) time tonight, I ..... (to finish) the novel I'm reading.
3. If it ..... (to rain) next weekend, we ..... (not / to be able to) plant the vegetables.
4. If he ..... (to be leaving) at 6 o'clock, I ..... (to ask) him to give me a lift.
5. If she ..... (to drive) all that way since the morning, she ..... (to be) tired and hungry.
6. If they ..... (to be working) all afternoon, they ..... probably (to need) a cup of tea.
7. If I ..... (can't finish) the job this weekend, I ... (to try) to get it done during the week.
8. If John ..... (to be picked) for the team, he ..... (to be boasting) about it for weeks!
9. If you ..... (to forget) to phone, they ..... (to go) without you.
10. If we ..... (to stay) in this flat till May, we ..... (to be living) here for twenty years.

### 2. Match the following parts of the sentences.

- |                            |                                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. If I go on a diet,      | a) we'll make a snowman.        |
| 2. If it's sunny tomorrow, | b) I'll buy you some chocolate. |
| 3. If John doesn't hurry,  | c) she'll have to take a taxi.  |
| 4. If it snows,            | d) I'll lose weight.            |
| 5. If there are no buses,  | e) he'll be late.               |
| 6. If you are a good girl, | f) we'll go for a picnic.       |

### 3. Write Type 2 Conditionals to match these situations.

1. I don't have a spare ticket. I can't take you to the concert. –  
***If I had a spare ticket, I could / would take you to the concert.***
2. She drinks too much coffee. She doesn't feel calm. – .....
3. He can't type. He isn't able to operate the computer. – .....
4. They don't understand the problem. They won't find a solution. – .....
5. He sits around too much. He isn't fit. – .....
6. She is not in your shoes. She isn't able to advise you. – .....
7. I'm in a hurry. I won't stay to dinner. – .....
8. He's not a millionaire. He won't buy you a palace. – .....
9. The weather is sunny. We won't stay indoors. – .....
10. I am not fit. I won't go climbing. – .....

### 4. Comment on the following situations with if (expressing regret, etc.).

1. John ate too much birthday cake, so he was sick. –  
***If John hadn't eaten too / so much birthday cake, he wouldn't have been sick.***
2. We came home from our holiday early because we ran out of money. – .....
3. The house didn't burn down because the fire brigade came immediately. – .....
4. The men were wearing protective clothing, so they were all quite safe. – .....
5. I had an accident because I wasn't watching the road. – .....
6. I was sweating because it was so hot. – .....
7. My father didn't earn much money, so life wasn't easy for us. – .....
8. I didn't enjoy school, so I didn't do very well. – .....

### 5. Finish the following sentences.

1. If I had enough money, ***I'd buy a new pair of shoes.***
2. I wouldn't say that to her .....
3. If it doesn't rain soon, .....
4. We'll stay at home .....
5. If you didn't go to the gym so often, .....
6. Unless you invite her to the party, .....
7. She wouldn't have forgotten the appointment .....
8. We would have reached the airport on time .....



## Modals and their Equivalents

### 1. Supply *can*, *may*, *must* and their negative forms where needed.

1. Have you seen my bag? I ..... find it.
2. .... I sit next to you if this seat is free?
3. "Do you know where Jack is?" – "He ..... be in his office busy with important documents. Call there"
4. Come on! We ..... hurry. The train leaves in half an hour.
5. I like this hotel room. You ..... see the mountains from the window.
6. I'm sorry but we ..... come to your party next Saturday.
7. I ..... get up earlier tomorrow. I've lots of work to do.
8. She got this job because she ..... speak five languages.
9. Sue has dislocated her ankle. She ..... come to disco tomorrow.
10. Take your umbrella with you. It ..... rain tonight.
11. The windows are very dirty. I ..... clean them.
12. These cakes are very nice. You ..... have one.
13. This is a secret. You ..... tell anybody.
14. We ..... go to the cinema this week. Would you like with us?
15. You are speaking very quietly. I ..... hear you.

### 2. Rewrite these sentences using *can*, *can't*, *could*, *couldn't*.

1. Do you see that man over there? – *Can you see that man over there?*
2. I smell something burning. – .....
3. I understood what he did. – .....
4. Did you understand what he said? – .....
5. I don't see anyone. – .....
6. I didn't see what happened. – .....

### 3. Supply suitable forms of *to be able to* in these sentences.

1. Our teacher says we *will be able to* speak English fluently in a few months.
2. I've been trying for hours, but so far I (not) ..... get through on the phone.
3. If he had asked me earlier, I ..... help him.
4. I'm sure she would have helped you if she .....
5. I think I ..... play table tennis better after a bit of practice.
6. He has managed to live in England for years without ..... speak English.
7. I'm practicing hard because I want to ..... pass my driving test first time.
8. If I ..... sing, I would have loved to be an opera singer.

### 4. Complete the sentences with *must*, *mustn't*, *needn't*.

**Model:** *We haven't got much time. We must hurry.*

*We've got plenty of time. We needn't hurry.*

1. 'Do you want me to wait for you?' 'No, it's okay. You ..... wait.'
2. Tom gave me letter to post. I ..... forget to post it.
3. You ..... come if you don't want to but I hope you will.
4. 'What sort of house do you want to buy? Something big?' 'Well, it ..... be big – that's not important. But it ..... have a nice garden – it's essential.'
5. We have enough food at home so we ..... go shopping today.
6. This book is very valuable. You ..... look after it very carefully and you ..... lose it.

### 5. Rephrase these notices to give or refuse permission. Begin each sentence with *You...*

**Model:** *Thank you for not smoking. – You may not smoke.*

1. No camping or picnicking. - .....
2. Fishing is strictly forbidden. - .....
3. Campers welcome. - .....
4. Private – Keep Out. - .....

5. Do not lean out of the window. - .....
6. Leave your litter here. - .....
7. No stopping. - .....

**6. Respond to these statements with *should*, *shouldn't*, *shouldn't have done that*.**

1. Your friend is coughing because he smokes too much. – *You should stop smoking.*
2. I had to stop on the motorway. – *You shouldn't have done that.*
3. John read your letter. – .....
4. Your friend has a bad toothache. – .....
5. Frank and Jane sat in the sun all day. – .....
6. Jane left the front door unlocked. – .....
7. Your friend rides a bicycle at night without lights. – .....
8. I borrowed your car this morning. – .....
9. Your friend is going to visit Greece and he doesn't speak Greek. – .....

**7. Translate the sentences using *can* / *could* / *to be able to*, *may* / *might*, *must* / *to be to* / *to have to*, *should* / *ought to*, *need*.**

1. Він уміє так швидко бігати з дитинства! 2. Півгодини я намагався відчинити двері, але не зміг. 3. Коли ти зможеш дати мені її адресу? 4. Мені дозволили керувати дідушеvim раритетним авто. 5. Ти не можеш розмовляти з ним так неввічливо. 6. Батьки сказали, що нам можна ходити на річку без них. 7. Він міг би і подзвонити! 8. У цій гімназії всі учні повинні носити шкільну форму. 9. Кому довелося поїхати з ним? 10. Її можна було часто побачити в цьому ресторані. 11. Їм слід піклуватися про здоров'я. 12. Краще випий гарячого чаю. 13. Їм немає потреби так поспішати. 14. Вони могли і не запитувати: вона сама б усе розповіла. 15. Мені не треба жити в готелі: у мене є родичі в цьому місці.



**Revision Test on Modals and their Equivalents**

**Choose the most appropriate answer.**

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ go there with me. I can handle it myself, it's not difficult.  
a) may not                      b) must not                      c) don't have to                      d) had better not
2. \_\_\_\_\_ opening the door, please?  
a) Can you                      b) Could you                      c) Will you                      d) Would you mind
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ give you a lift to the station. My car broke down yesterday.  
a) must not                      b) should not                      c) may not                      d) can't
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ Tom to help me, but I wanted to do everything myself.  
a) was able to ask                      b) could have asked                      c) should have asked                      d) had to ask
5. He didn't go to the park with us yesterday because he \_\_\_\_\_ write a report.  
a) should                      b) must                      c) had to                      d) could
6. I left my bag here just 5 minutes ago. You \_\_\_\_\_ it!  
a) should have seen                      b) must have seen                      c) were able to see                      d) could see
7. You \_\_\_\_\_ the bills 2 weeks ago!  
a) had better pay                      b) should pay                      c) ought to pay                      d) should have paid
8. I don't know how to help you. Ask Anton for help. He \_\_\_\_\_ be able to find a solution.  
a) must                      b) has to                      c) might                      d) will
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ play tennis when I was younger, but I don't now.  
a) had to                      b) was able to                      c) used to                      d) should
10. You want to call them now? It's already after midnight! They \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) must sleep                      b) should sleep                      c) may sleep                      d) must be sleeping



# SUPPLEMENTARY READING

## ON A RAINY DAY

The weather was bad yesterday. It began to rain early in the morning. We had five umbrellas at home, but when I wanted to take one, I saw they were all broken. I decided to take all the five umbrellas to the umbrella-maker. So I took them there and said. "I will be back for my umbrellas on my way in the evening".

In the afternoon I went to have lunch. I entered the cafe, sat down at the table and began to eat. After a few minutes a young lady came in and sat down at the table. I finished my lunch, got up and collected her umbrella by mistake. But she said. "This isn't your umbrella. It's mine". I saw my mistake and said, "Oh, excuse me, it's yours, of course. I'm very sorry". "That's all right", she said laughing.

In the evening I went to the umbrella-maker and took all my five umbrellas. Then I bought a newspaper and got on a bus. The young lady was on that bus too. She looked at my five umbrellas and said. "Not a bad day for you, eh?"

### I. Say which statements are false or true.

1. The weather was nice yesterday.
2. It began to rain early in the morning.
3. We had no umbrellas at home.
4. All the umbrellas were broken.
5. I decided to take them to the shoemaker.
6. He said they would be ready in the evening.

### II. Choose the correct answer, please.

1. Where did the author go in the afternoon?  
a) to have lunch                      b) to have a snack                      c) to have a drink
2. What did he enter?  
a) a hotel                                  b) a bar                                      c) a cafe
3. What did he do there?  
a) began to eat                          b) began to speak                      c) began to drink
4. Who came in and sat at the table after a few minutes?  
a) a young man                          b) a young lady                          c) an old man
5. What did I take by mistake?  
a) her umbrella                          b) her bag                                  c) her book
6. What did she say?  
a) she said it was hers                  b) she said it was yours                  c) she said it was theirs

### III. Finish the sentences.

1. I saw my mistake and  
a) apologised.                          b) got worried.                          c) laughed.
2. She said that it was  
a) bad.                                      b) all right.                                  c) impolite.
3. In the evening I went  
a) to the dentist.                          b) to the shoemakers. c) to the umbrella maker.
4. I took all my  
a) five umbrellas.                          b) ten umbrellas.                          c) twenty umbrellas.
5. I bought a newspaper and  
a) got on a taxi.                          b) got on a bus.                          c) got on a tram.
6. In the bus I met the same  
a) young lady.                              b) old man.                                  c) young fellow.

## WHY WAS SHE ANGRY?

A young man was in love with a beautiful girl. One day she said to him, "It is my birthday tomorrow". "Oh", said the young man, "I'll send you roses, one rose for each year of your life".

The same evening he went to a florist's. As he knew that the girl was twenty two years old, he paid for twenty two roses and asked the florist to send them to the girl the next day.

The florist knew the young man very well as he had often bought flowers in his shop before. When the young man left the shop, the florist thought:

"This young man is a very good customer. I think that my price was too high. I'll send ten more roses".

He did so. The next morning thirty two roses were sent to the girl. When the young man came to see her she didn't want to speak to him. And he never knew why she was so angry with him.

### I. Say which statements are false or true.

1. A young man was in love with an old lady.
2. She said it would be her birthday next day.
3. The young man said he would send her lilies.
4. The young man came to the florist.
5. He knew the girl was 18.
6. So he ordered twenty two roses.

### II. Choose the correct answer.

1. Why did the florist know the young man?  
a) he had spent his time there  
b) he had given him money  
c) he had bought flowers before.
2. What did the young man pay for?  
a) for 22 roses                      b) for 10 roses                      c) for 25 roses
3. When did he ask the florist to send roses?  
a) the next morning                      b) the next day                      c) the next night
4. What did the florist think?  
a) I'll sell roses                      b) I'll send ten roses more                      c) I'll cut roses
5. What did the florist think about the price?  
a) it was too low                      b) it was too cheap                      c) it was too high

### III. Finish the sentences.

1. The florist thought that the young man was  
a) a very good customer.                      b) a very bad customer.                      c) a usual customer.
2. The florist sent  
a) 10 roses more.                      b) 12 roses more.                      c) 1 rose more.
3. The next morning  
a) 22 roses.                      b) 32 roses.                      c) 40 roses.
4. When the young man came the girl  
a) didn't want to call him.                      b) didn't want to invite him.                      c) didn't want to speak to him
5. And he  
a) never knew.                      b) he knew.                      c) he guessed.

## HONESTY

A man went to an insurance office to have his life insured. The manager of the office asked him how old his parents were when they died.

“Mother had a bad heart and died at the age of thirty. Father died of tuberculosis when he was thirty-five”.

“I am sorry”, said the manager, “we cannot insure your life as your parents were not healthy”.

As the man was leaving the office, depressed, he met a clerk who had overheard the conversation. “You must not be so frank and truthful”, said the clerk, “no office will insure you if you speak like that. Use your imagination a little”.

The man went to another office and was shown into the manager’s room. “Well, young man, how old were your parents when they died?” “Mother was ninety three, and she died from a fall off her bicycle. Father was ninety eight and he died while he was playing football”.

The manager immediately agreed to insure the man’s life.

### I. Say which statements are false or true.

1. A man went to the police.
2. He wanted to have his life insured.
3. The manager asked him about his wife.
4. The manager said he couldn’t insure the man.
5. The man was happy leaving the office.
6. The clerk didn’t hear the conversation.

### II. Choose the correct answer.

1. What did the clerk say to the man?  
a) not to be frank                      b) not to be sad                      c) not to be glad
2. What did the clerk ask the man to use?  
a) his wallet                              b) his money                              c) his imagination
3. Where did the man go?  
a) home                                      b) to another office                      c) to the park
4. Whom was he asked by?  
a) by the manager                      b) by the clerk                              c) by the janitor
5. What did he say about his mother?  
a) she died when she was 95  
b) she died when she was 65  
c) she died when she was 93
6. What did the manager do?  
a) he insured his life                      b) he insured his house                      c) he insured his land

### III. Finish the sentences.

1. The clerk advised  
a) to tell the lie.                              b) to tell the truth.                              c) to tell the tale.
2. He asked the man to use  
a) his relatives.                              b) his imagination.                              c) his speech.
3. When he came to another office he was  
a) met by the director.                      b) met by the watchman.                      c) met by the manager.
4. The manager asked him  
a) how long his cousin lived.  
b) how long his par ents lived.  
c) how long his sisters lived.
5. The man said his parents  
a) lived long.                                      b) lived not long.                              c) died long ago.
6. The manager insured  
a) a letter.                                      b) his minority.                              c) his life.

## FORTUNE AND THE MAN

One day a man was walking along the street. He carried an old bag in his hands. He was wondering why people who had so much money were never satisfied but always wanted more. “As to me”, he said, “if I only had enough to eat, I should not ask for anything else”. Just at this moment Fortune came down the street. She heard the man and stopped.

“Listen”, she said, I want to help you. Hold your bag, and I shall pour diamonds into it. But every diamond which falls on the ground will become dust. Do you understand?” “Oh, yes. I understand”, said the man. He quickly opened his bag and a stream of diamonds was poured into it. The bag began to grow heavy. “Is that enough?” asked Fortune. “Not yet”. The man’s hands began to tremble.

“You are the richest man in the world now”, said Fortune.

“Just a few more, add a few more”, said the man. Another diamond was added and the bag split. All the diamonds fell on the ground and became dust.

Fortune disappeared, leaving the man in the street.

**I. Say which statements are false or true.**

1. One day a lady was walking along the street.
2. He carried a suitcase in his hands.
3. He said that he wanted just a little money.
4. At this moment Mercury came down the street.
5. She heard the man and stopped.
6. She said that she didn't want to help the man.

**II. Choose the correct answer, please.**

1. What did the fortune tell the man?  
a) she wanted to help                      b) she wanted to go                      c) she wanted to spend money
2. What would happen to the diamonds if they fell down?  
a) they would turn into gold                      b) they would turn into dust                      c) they would turn into water
3. What did the man do?  
a) he quickly shut his bag                      b) he quickly opened his bag                      c) he quickly ran away
4. What happened to the bag?  
a) it began to fall down                      b) it began to grow lighter                      c) it began to grow heavy
5. What was with the man's hands?  
a) they began to tremble                      b) they began to get cold                      c) they began to get hot
6. Did he become the richest man in the world?  
a) yes                      b) no                      c) not at all

### III. Finish the sentences.

1. The man opened the bag and
  - a) a stream of diamonds was poured put into it.
  - b) a lot of money was put into it.
  - c) a stream of golden coins was poured into it.
2. The Fortune asked if it was
  - a) too much.
  - b) enough.
  - c) too little.
3. The man was not
  - a) glad.
  - b) satisfied.
  - c) happy.
4. When one more diamond was added the bag
  - a) split.
  - b) opened.
  - c) closed.
5. All the diamonds fell on the ground and
  - a) became water.
  - b) became dust.
  - c) became gold.
6. Fortune disappeared leaving
  - a) the man in the street.
  - b) the bag in the park.
  - c) the gold in the bag

## A SAD STORY

Three men came to New York. They arrived at a very large hotel and took a room there. Their room was on the forty-fifth floor. In the evening the three men went to the theatre and came back to the hotel very late.

“I’m very sorry”, said the clerk of the hotel, but our lifts aren’t working tonight. If you don’t want to walk upstairs to your room we will make beds for you in the hall”.

“No, no”, said one of the three men, “No, thank you. We don’t want to sleep in the hall. We will walk up to our room”.

Then he told his two friends, “It won’t be easy walk up to the forty-fifth floor, but I think I know how to make it easier. On our way to the room I will tell you some jokes. Andy will sing us some songs. Then Peter will tell us some interesting stories”.

So they began to walk upstairs to their room. Tom told them many jokes, Andy sang some songs. At last they came to the thirty-fourth floor. They were tired and decided to have a rest.

“Well”, said Tom, “now it’s your turn, Peter”. “I will tell you a sad story”, said Peter. “We have left the key to our room in the hall”.

**I. Say which statements are false or true.**

1. Three men took a taxi.
2. In the evening the three men went to the theatre.
3. The lifts never stopped working.
4. The men didn't want to sleep in the hall.
5. They began to walk upstairs.
6. They have left the key in the hall.

## II. Choose the correct answer.

1. What did the men take at a hotel?

a) a key                                  b) a book                                  c) a room
2. What floor was their room on?

a) 45                                  b) 54                                  c) 35
3. When did they come back?

a) very early                              b) very late                              c) later than usual
4. What did the clerk suggest?

a) going to the nearest hotel            b) using the lift                        c) making beds in the hall
5. What was the men's decision?

a) to stay in the hall                      b) to work in the hall                  c) to walk upstairs
6. What kind of story did Peter tell them?

a) sad                                  b) funny                                  c) strange

### III. Finish the sentences.

1. In the evening the three men went
  - a) to the cinema.
  - b) to the theatre.
  - c) to the hotel.
2. "I'm very sorry" – said
  - a) the clerk.
  - b) the master.
  - c) the driver.
3. We don't want
  - a) to use the lift.
  - b) to sleep in the hall.
  - c) to speak to you.
4. I know how
  - a) to take it.
  - b) to make a report.
  - c) to make it easier.
5. On our way to the room I'll tell you
  - a) some jokes.
  - b) something new.
  - c) nothing.
6. Who will sing the songs?
  - a) Peter.
  - b) Tom.
  - c) Andy.

## A UNIVERSAL FAVOURITE

Sir Walter Raleigh, an English statesman and navigator, who lived in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, sailed across the sea to America in search of new lands and introduced the potato from America into England. Shortly after getting the first crop, he sent some to a friend.

Next spring the friend planted the potatoes, which soon gave an excellent crop. When the 'potato-plums', as he called them, were ripe, he took some of them to his cook, who fried them in butter, and put sugar and cinnamon over them. In this condition they were set on the dinner-table as a great rarity.

The balls, however, tasted unpleasant, and it was decided that the fruit couldn't ripen in the cold English climate. The gardener was therefore ordered to pull up the plants and burn them, and he did so.

It happened that the gentleman stepped on one of the baked potatoes as it lay in the ashes. When it broke open he noticed that it was white and had an agreeable smell. He tasted it and found it very tasty.

The proper method of cooking the new vegetable was soon learnt, and in a short time it became a universal favorite.

### I. Say which statements are false or true.

1. Sir Walter Raleigh lived in the reign of Queen Elizabeth.
2. He introduced the potato from Africa into England.
3. The potato gave an excellent crop.
4. The potatoes were fried in butter.
5. The balls tasted very pleasant.
6. The proper method of cooking potatoes was soon learnt.

### II. Choose the correct answer.

1. Why did Sir Walter Raleigh sail to America?  
a) in search of money                      b) in search of food                      c) in search of new lands
2. What did he send to his friend?  
a) some money                              b) some potatoes                      c) some books
3. How was the new vegetable called?  
a) potato-apples                              b) potato-plums                      c) potato-berries
4. What did cook add into the potatoes?  
a) salt and pepper                              b) sugar and cinnamon                      c) vinegar and mustard
5. What was decided?  
a) the fruit couldn't ripen                      b) the fruit must be grown                      c) the fruit was overcooked
6. Where did the potatoes lie when the gentleman stopped on them?  
a) on the shelf                              b) under the scarf                      c) in the ashes

### III. Finish the sentences.

1. Sir Walter Raleigh sailed across the sea and introduced  
a) his friend.                              b) new lands.                              c) potato.
2. Shortly after getting the first crop  
a) he sent some to a friend.                      b) he ate it.                              c) he sold it.
3. The potatoes were set on the dinner-table as  
a) a desert.                              b) a great rarity.                              c) first course.
4. It was decided that the fruit  
a) couldn't ripen.                              b) was tasty.                              c) was untasty.
5. The gardener was ordered  
a) to put on the plants.                      b) to pull up the plants.                      c) to push all the plants.
6. He tasted and found it  
a) very tasty.                              b) too sweet.                              c) burnt.

## A CHINESE VASE

When I was a child I often went to see my grandmother. I thought her house was as beautiful as a palace and the garden seemed bigger than a park. As I grew older the house and the garden seemed smaller but I still loved visiting the old lady. There were so many beautiful things in the house.

Sometimes I played with the doll's house which was older than grandmother herself; at other times I looked at books which were more interesting than my children's books at home. I loved her pictures and the old clock, but most of all I loved a big Chinese vase which stood in the hall. It was taller than I, and I couldn't see inside it. I walked round and round it looking at the beautiful ladies, and the birds and flowers and trees, and grandmother often told me stories about these ladies. After I was married I took my two sons to visit their great grandmother. They didn't like the beautiful books and the vase as I did. They preferred playing football in the garden.

Before she died, grandmother gave me the vase I loved so much. It looked beautiful in our modern hall. One day I came home from the shops. My sons met me at the door. They looked guilty. Paul had a ball in his hands. "I am as good as George Best, Mummy", he said. "I got a goal and I broke the vase."

Philip tried to be more diplomatic than Paul. “It doesn’t really matter, does it? You told us it wasn’t new.”

**I. Say if the statements are true or false.**

1. When I was a child I often went to see my aunt.
2. As I grew older the house and the garden seemed smaller.
3. Sometimes I played chess with grandmother.
4. At other times I looked at books which I liked.
5. I loved the jewelry and old marble.
6. Most of all I loved a big Chinese vase.

## II. Choose the correct answer.

- What pictures were on the vase?  
a) stones                      b) dragons                      c) ladies, birds and flowers
- What stories did grandmother tell?  
a) about trees                b) about ladies                c) about dragons
- How many sons did the author have?  
a) two sons                    b) the only son                c) two daughters
- What was the boys' attitude to the house?  
a) they liked it                b) they disliked it             c) they were indifferent
- What did the boys prefer?  
a) to play football            b) to play chess                c) to read books
- What did grandmother give the granddaughter before her death?  
a) the ring                      b) the books                      c) the vase

### III. Finish the sentences.

1. The vase looked beautiful ...  
a) in our modern hall.                      b) in our bedroom.                      c) in our livingroom.
2. One day the lady came home ...  
a) from the circus.                      b) from the shops.                      c) from the theatre.
3. Her sons met her ...  
a) at the door.                      b) near the gate.                      c) in the garden.
4. The boys looked ...  
a) glad.                      b) guilty.                      c) quiet.
5. In his hands Paul had ...  
a) a pen.                      b) a cat.                      c) a ball.
6. He said that he ...  
a) lost money.                      b) broke the window.                      c) broke the vase.

## THE KING WHO WANTED TO BE AN ARTIST

There was a king who thought that he could paint very well. His pictures were bad, but the people to whom he showed them were afraid of the king. They all said that they liked his pictures very much.

One day the king showed his pictures to a great painter who lived in his country and asked: "I want to know what you think of my pictures. Do you like them? Am I a good painter or not?"

The painter looked at the king's pictures and said: "My king. I think that your pictures are bad, and that you will never be a good painter."

The king got very angry and sent the painter to prison.

After two years the king wanted to see the painter again. “I was angry with you,” he said, “because you did not like my pictures. Now forget all about it. You are a free man again and I am your friend.”

For many hours the king talked with the painter, and even asked him to dine. After dinner the king showed his pictures to the painter and asked: "Well, how do you like them now?"

The painter did not answer anything. He turned to the soldier standing near him and said: "Take me back to prison."

**I. Say if the statements are true or false.**

1. There was a king who thought he couldn't paint at all.
2. His pictures were very bad.
3. People loved the king and were not afraid of him.
4. They said they liked his pictures.
5. One day the king showed his pictures to the magician.
6. The great painter said that his pictures were bad.

## II. Choose the correct answer.

- What was the king's reaction on his word?  
a) he got angry                      b) he got happy                      c) he got surprised
- Where did he send the painter?  
a) to the mountains                b) to prison                          c) to the resort
- How much time passed?  
a) two month                          b) five years                          c) two years
- What did the king want after two years?  
a) to see the painter                b) to kill the painter                c) to exile the painter
- What did he ask the painter?  
a) to be glad                          b) to forget all                      c) to forgive
- What did he say to the painter?  
a) he was his friend                b) he was his enemy                c) he was his adviser

### III. Finish the sentences.

1. The king talked with the painter ...  
a) for two days.                      b) for hours.                      c) for the whole night.
2. He invited the painter ...  
a) to dine with him.                      b) to run with him.                      c) to dance.
3. After dinner the king ...  
a) showed his jewels.                      b) showed his clothes.                      c) showed his pictures.
4. He asked the painter again if ...  
a) he liked his pictures.                      b) he liked his pets .                      c) he liked his palace.
5. The painter looked at the king and ...  
a) went away.                      b) didn't say anything.                      c) said what he thought.
6. He asked the soldier to take him ...  
a) home.                      b) to the park.                      c) back to prison.



## THE EVIDENCE WAS NOT STRONG

A man was accused of stealing a pair of trousers. After a long and patient examination he was acquitted, because the evidence against him was not sufficiently strong.

He stayed however in the dock after his acquittal had been pronounced. The lawyer who had defended him, observing that he didn't go away, informed him that he was free to go wherever he wanted. The man shook his head slightly, but remained. By this time the court was nearly empty. Again his lawyer told him that he could go, and asked him why he seemed to be so stupid.

"Just come here for a moment, please, sir," said the man, "and let me whisper in your ear – I can't go till all the witnesses against me have left the court."

"And why may that be?" asked the lawyer.

"Because of the stolen trousers, sir. Don't you understand?"

"Most certainly I don't; what about the trousers?" said the lawyer.

"Only this, sir," whispered the fellow in his lowest tones, "I've got them on."

### I. Say if the statements are true or false.

1. The man was accused of selling pearls.
2. After a long examination the man was acquitted.
3. The man didn't leave the court.
4. The court was full of people.
5. The lawyer informed him about the time.
6. The man wanted to speak in the court.

### II. Choose the correct answer.

1. Why was the man acquitted?  
a) he paid a big sum of money      b) the evidence wasn't strong      c) he was short of money
2. What did the lawyer tell him?  
a) he was found guilty      b) he had to stay in the court      c) he was free to go
3. Why didn't the man leave the court?  
a) he wanted all the witness to leave the court      b) he was afraid      c) he liked to stay there
4. Why did the man seem so stupid?  
a) he was frightened      b) he didn't believe in his release      c) he liked to seem stupid
5. What did the lawyer do in the court?  
a) he defended the man      b) he read the newspaper      c) he talked to his friend
6. What couldn't the lawyer understand?  
a) why the man didn't leave the court      b) why the man whispered in the ear      c) why the man was acquitted

### III. Finish the sentences.

1. The evidence against the man ...  
a) was officially known.      b) was not sufficiently strong.      c) was suddenly known.
2. The man stayed in the dock after ...  
a) his acquittal had pronounced.      b) his report had been finished.      c) he gave the lecture.
3. His lawyer told him that  
a) he should pay money.      b) he could go.      c) he would be imprisoned.
4. The man shook his head ...  
a) but remained.      b) but remembered.      c) but returned.
5. The lawyer asked him why he ...  
a) seemed so stupid.      b) smelt so strong.      c) slept so fast.
6. I can't go till ...  
a) all the witnesses have left the court.      b) all the witnesses have left the court.      c) all the wives have left the court.

## AN ARAB AND HIS SONS

Far to the East there lived in older days an Arab who had 3 sons, whom he dearly loved. He had seventeen beautiful horses, whom he loved, too.

One day the old man became very ill. Feeling that the end was near, he called his sons to give the eldest half of his horses, to the second son, one third, and to the youngest, one ninth.

The sons met to divide the horses but they didn't know how to divide them.

"How can I take one half of seventeen horses?" said the eldest son. "I can't divide a living horse in two." "And how can I," asked the second, "take one third of seventeen horses? But this is what my father wanted me to do."

"I also want to do what my father wanted us to. But what is one ninth of seventeen horses?"

At that moment an old man came riding on a horse. "Maybe he can tell us", they said hopefully. They told their story to him.

The man began to think. Several minutes passed before he spoke. At last he said, "Take my horse and there will be eighteen."

They did so. The eldest son took one half of the horses. Then the second son called the horses which he loved best and the six animals came running to him. And the youngest son took two horses. The sons said to the man: "You divided the horses wonderfully. Say what you want us to give you for it".

"I shall take all the horses that are left", said the old man and he rode away on his own horse.

### I. Say if the statements are true or false.

1. Far to the North lived an Arab.
2. He had 10 sons.
3. Also he had 17 horses.
4. One day he became very rich.
5. He called his sons to tell his will.
6. He was feeling his end.

### II. Choose the correct answer.

1. Why did the sons meet?  
a) to divide the money                      b) to divide the horses                      c) to divide the estate
2. Whom did they see?  
a) a man riding horse                      b) a girl riding a donkey                      c) a boy riding a camel
3. What did they hope?  
a) he would give the money                      b) he would go away                      c) that he would help them
4. What did they tell him?  
a) their story                      b) their legend                      c) their joke
5. What did the man do?  
a) he began to think                      b) he began to run                      c) he began to ride
6. How much time did it pass?  
a) several minutes                      b) an hour                      c) a day

### III. Answer the questions.

1. What did he suggest?  
a) his own bag                      b) his own horse                      c) his own food
2. How many horses did the eldest boy get?  
a) 19                      b) 9                      c) 5
3. How many horses did the second son get?  
a) 5                      b) 6                      c) 7
4. What was the part of the youngest boy?  
a) 2 horses                      b) 3 horses                      c) 10 horses
5. What did the boys say?  
a) it was bad                      b) it was wonderful                      c) it was so so
6. What did the man take?  
a) his own rope                      b) his own saddle                      c) his own horse

## TOO HONEST

Jim was a young man in his early twenties who was apprenticed to a carpenter. He was a good worker, honest and reliable and, above all, he was punctual, so his boss was pleased with him.

But Jim's one great drawback was that he could never tell a lie, no matter how hard he tried, not even a little white one. In fact, he was so honest and shy that he would blush even when he was telling the truth.

One morning, however, he didn't feel like going to work because he had been to a party the night before and it hadn't ended till the early hours of the morning. And so for the first time in his life he decided to take a day off. He rang his boss and pretending to be a woman, he spoke in a high-pitched voice.

“Hello,” he said nervously, “I’m afraid Jim can’t come in to work today. He doesn’t feel very well.”

Poor Jim was thankful his boss couldn't see him just at that moment because his hands were trembling and his face was bright red.

“Thank you for letting me know,” said Mr. Woods, and then, just as he was about to hang up, he said, “Just a minute, who’s speaking, please?” At that moment Jim nearly passed out with shock.

“Oh!” he stammered, and doing his utmost to sound like a woman, he exclaimed in a clear voice, “This is my landlady speaking!”

**I. Say if the statements are true or false.**

1. Jim was a young man in his early twenties.
2. He was a good worker.
3. He didn't have any drawbacks.
4. One morning he didn't feel like going to work.
5. His hands were trembling.
6. He was speaking to his landlady.

## II. Choose the correct answer.

1. How old was Jim?  
a) less than 20                      b) more than 20                      c) 20.
2. What kind of worker was he?  
a) dishonest but reliable            b) honest but unreliable            c) honest and reliable
3. What was his drawback?  
a) he could never say a lie          b) he could be sly                      c) he could never tell ‘die’
4. Why didn’t he feel like going to work one day?  
a) the party hadn’t ended till the early hours of the morning    b) he was the member of the party  
c) he decided to part
5. Whom did he ring?  
a) his boss                                b) his best friend                      c) his landlady
6. What did he exclaim in a clear voice?  
a) This is my landlady speaking      b) This is my lender speaking    c) This is my lady speaking

### III. Finish the sentences.

1. Jim was apprenticed to ...  
a) a car-maker.                      b) a carpenter.                      c) a carpet cleaner.
2. He could never tell a lie no matter how hard he ...  
a) tied .                      b) was tired.                      c) tried.
3. He was so honest that he would ... even when he was telling the truth.  
a) flash                      b) brush                      c) blush
4. He rang his boss pretending to be ...  
a) a woman.                      b) an old man.                      c) unwell.
5. Jim was thankful his boss ...



6. Each took the cap off its head and ...  
a) threw it in the air.                      b) hold it.                      c) threw it on the ground.

### **AN ABSENT-MINDED SCIENTIST**

Sir Isaac Newton was often so deeply interested in difficult problems that he became quite absent-minded. One day a gentleman came to see him, but was told that Sir Isaac was busy in his study and that no one was allowed to disturb him.

As it was dinner-time, the visitor sat down in the dining-room to wait for the scientist. The servant came in and placed on the table a boiled chicken under a cover. An hour passed, but Newton didn't appear. The gentleman, feeling hungry, ate the chicken, and covering up the skeleton, asked the servant to prepare another one for his master.

Before the second chicken was ready, however, the scientist entered the room, apologizing for his delay. Then he added: "As I feel rather tired and hungry, I hope you will excuse me a little longer, while I take my dinner, and then I will be at your service." With these words he lifted the cover, and without emotion turned round to the gentleman and said: "See what a strange set we scientists are! I quite forgot that I had dined already!"

At this moment the servant brought in the other chicken. The visitor explained how matters stood. After a hearty laugh, the hungry scientist sat down to dine.

#### **I. Say if the statements are true or false.**

Sir Isaac Newton was very seldom interested in difficult problems.

The visitor didn't wait for the scientist for a long time.

The gentleman felt hungry.

The scientist entered the room and ate the chicken.

The scientist was pleased with the dinner.

The servant brought in the other chicken.

#### **II. Choose the correct answer.**

1. Why did Isaac Newton become absent-minded?

- a) he was ill                                      b) he was interested in music                      c) he was deeply interested in difficult problems

2. What was the gentleman told when he came to see Isaac Newton?

- a) that the scientist was walking down the river    b) that the scientist was working in his study  
c) that the scientist was eating

3. What did the servant place on the table?

- a) a boiled chicken                                      b) some boiled water                                      c) a boiled sausage

4. How long had the gentleman been waiting?

- a) for an hour                                      b) for ages                                      c) for a day

5. What did the gentleman ask the servant?

- a) to give him something to drink    b) to call the scientist at once    c) to prepare a chicken for Isaac Newton

6. What did Isaac Newton ask the visitor to do when he entered the room?

- a) to wait a little longer                                      b) to have dinner together                                      c) to get away

#### **III. Finish the sentences.**

1. One day Isaac Newton ...

- a) was busy in his study.                                      b) went for a walk.                                      c) was having dinner with a gentleman.

2. The visitor sat down in a dining-room ...

- a) to have a rest.                                      b) to wait for the scientist.                                      c) to wait for the chicken he asked to prepare.

3. An hour passed ...

- a) and a servant appeared.                                      b) but the scientist didn't appear.                                      c) and the visitor left.

4. The scientist entered the room ...

a) saying he wasn't pleased to see the gentleman.    b) asking for a favour.    c) apologizing for his delay.

### **A CONCEITED AMERICAN**

A conceited American visited London where he hired an Englishman to show him around the city.

"How long were they building that?" he asked his guide as they passed a large hotel.

"About six months, I think", answered the guide.

"Six months!" exclaimed the American. "It would take us more than six weeks to build a hotel like that in New York".

They passed a building, which was quite new.

"And how long were they building that?" asked the American.

"About four weeks", answered the guide.

"Four weeks!" exclaimed the American. "In New York we should build a house like that in six days".

Nothing more was said until they reached the Houses of Parliament.

"Well, that's not a bad-looking place", said the American. "How long were they building that?"

"Well, you may not believe me", answered the guide, "but that building was not there when I crossed the bridge last night".

#### **I. Say which statements are false or true.**

1. A well-known American visited London.
2. He hired an Englishman to show him around a city.
3. It would take us 6 years to build a hotel.
4. They passed a building which was quite old.
5. They reached the White House.
6. That building was being built when I crossed the bridge.

#### **II. Choose the correct answer.**

1. Who visited London?  
a) a self-conceited Australian                      b) a self-conceited American                      c) a selfish American
2. Why did he hire an Englishman?  
a) to show him a ticket                      b) to show him around the city                      c) to show him a round stone
3. What did he want to know?  
a) "How long were you there?"                      b) "How long were the buildings?"                      c) "How long were they building that?"
4. How long would it take in New York to build a house?  
a) six years                      b) six days                      c) six weeks
5. What building did they reach at last?  
a) the Empire Building                      b) the Houses of Parliament                      c) the house of the richest man.
6. What was the guide's answer?  
a) That building was under the bridge                      b) That building was there when I crossed the bridge  
c) That building was not there when I crossed the bridge.

#### **III. Finish the sentences.**

1. An American visited London where  
a) he had to show a city to an Englishman.                      b) he heard an Englishman.                      c) he hired an Englishman to show him around the city.
2. He asked his guide as they  
a) passed a large hotel.                      b) paused in front of the hotel.                      c) parked by the hotel.
3. "Six Months" –  
a) exclaimed the American.                      b) explained the American.                      c) expected the American.

4. Nothing more...until they reached the Houses of Parliament  
a) was sad.                                      b) was said.                                      c) was stayed.
5. That's not a bad-looking  
a) place.                                          b) palace.                                          c) plate.
6. You may not  
a) deliver me.                                    b) believe me.                                    c) trust me.

## AN EXPERIENCED TEACHER

It happened in a crowded bus in the rush hour. A boy of about twelve was comfortably seated by the window, watching the changing scenery and pretending not to see old men and women standing near him. A distinguished looking gentleman said to the boy:

- If I give you 10 shillings, my lad, will you stand up and let me have your seat?  
- Sure! - answered the boy without hesitation.

The man took a 10-shilling note out of his wallet and handed it to the boy. The latter took the money and stood up at once.

- The seat is yours! – said the man to an elderly lady who was standing next to him.

She blushed and answered:

- Thank you ever so much, but I couldn't possibly take the seat for which you paid so much!
- Don't worry about that, Madam. You see, I'm an old and experienced teacher. If I gave the boy some money it was to teach him a lesson. Nothing is too expensive.

The lady sat down and said to the boy:

- I say, Bob, have you thanked the gentleman for the 10 shillings he gave you?

**I. Say which statements are false or true.**

1. It happened in a crowded bus in the rush hours.
2. The boy of about eleven was comfortably seated by the window.
3. The man took a 10-shilling note out of his wallet.
4. I'm an old and experienced teacher.
5. He took some money from the boy.
6. The boy thanked the gentleman for his money.

## II. Choose the correct answer.

1. Where did it happen?  
a) in a crowded bus                      b) in a crowd of buses
2. Who was sitting by the window?  
a) an old lady                                b) a gentleman                      c) a boy
3. Who addressed the boy?  
a) a distinguished looking gentleman    b) an old lady                      c) a young boy
4. What did the man do?  
a) he handed the money to the boy        b) he handed in the paper        c) he handled the door
5. Why did he pay the money?  
a) to teach a boy English language        b) to teach a boy a lesson        c) to be taught a lesson
6. What did the lady say to the boy?  
a) "Have you thought about it?"          b) "Has he thanked you?"        c) "Have you thanked  
the gentleman?"

### III. Finish the sentences.

1. The boy was seated pretending  
a) not to thank old men and women. b) not to see old men and women. c) not to sing old men and women.
2. If I give you 10 shillings  
a) will you see me. b) will you sing me. c) will you stand up.
3. The man took a 10-shilling note  
a) out of his wallet. b) out of his pocket. c) out of his packet.
4. The boy took the money

- a) and went away.                      b) and stood up.                      c) and sat down.  
5. Thank you very much but I couldn't  
a) take the seat.                      b) thank you.                      c) take the money.  
6. Have you thanked the gentleman  
a) for the seat.                      b) for the money.                      c) for the song.

## THE INDIAN AND THE SPANIARD

A Spaniard was riding across a deserted country in South America. Suddenly his horse went lame. He felt very nervous because he saw that the horse would never be able to carry him home. A little later he saw an Indian riding a fine fresh horse and asked him to exchange horses. The Indian refused to do this. The Spaniard used force and made the Indian give up his horse. He rode away, leaving his lame horse to the Indian. The Indian followed him until he reached a town where he found the Spaniard.

The Spaniard had to appear before a judge. The Spaniard told the judge that the horse was his own. The Indian asked the judge to send for the horse. This was done, and the Indian, throwing his cloak over the horse's head, said to the judge: "This man says that the horse is his, let him, therefore, tell you which of its eyes is blind".

The Spaniard said at once: "The right one". The Indian, taking off the cloak, exclaimed: "Neither the right eye nor the left; the horse is not blind at all".

The judge had to say that the horse must be returned to the Indian and ordered the Spaniard to pay a large sum of money to the Indian.

**I. Say which statements are false or true.**

1. A Spaniard was riding in Africa.
2. Suddenly his horse went lame.
3. He felt very happy because of that.
4. He saw an Indian riding his horse.
5. The Spaniard proposed to buy a horse.
6. The Indian refused to do this.

**II. Choose the correct answer, please.**

- How did the Spaniard make the Indian give him his horse?  
a) he used force                      b) he used the gun                      c) he used good words
- What did the Spaniard leave to the Indian?  
a) the money                      b) his lame horse                      c) his wallet
- Where did the Indian follow the Spaniard?  
a) to his native town                      b) to the capital city                      c) to his house
- What had the Spaniard to do?  
a) he had to pay the fine                      b) he had to appear before a judge                      c) he had to give the money
- What did the Spaniard prove?  
a) that this horse was his own                      b) that this horse was his father's                      c) that this horse was his uncle's
- What did the Indian ask the judge?  
a) to send for the horse                      b) to send for his wife                      c) to send for his relatives

### III. Finish the sentences.

1. The Indian threw a cloak  
a) over the horse's head.      b) over the horse's back.      c) over the horse's legs.
2. The Indian asked the Spaniard to tell  
a) which of the horse's eyes was blind.      b) which of the horse's eyes was big.      c) which of the horse's eyes was wide.
3. The Spaniard said that it was  
a) the right one.      b) the left one.      c) both.
4. The Indian said that his horse  
a) was blind.      b) wasn't blind at all.      c) was healthy.



5. The judge ordered the Spaniard  
a) to return the cloak.                      b) to return the horse.                      c) to return the shoes.
6. The Spaniard also paid  
a) a large sum of money.                      b) a small sum of money.                      c) a little money.

# MICHAELANGELO

The famous sculptor Michaelangelo lived in Florence. He was well known all over Italy for his beautiful work and the Governor of Florence made up his mind to ask the famous sculptor to make a statue out of a large piece of marble. A sculptor had tried to do this before him, but had only spoiled the marble. Michaelangelo worked for two years, and at last he completed the beautiful statue which he called David. The day the statue was ready a large crowd of people gathered in the square. The Governor of Florence came too. He stood for a long time looking at the statue.

Then he said that he didn't like it, as David's nose was too long.

Michaelangelo made up his mind both to please the governor and not to spoil the statue. He went up to the statue with a handful of marble dust. He pretended to be changing the shape of the nose and at the same time dropped some of the marble dust which he had taken with him. The governor thought that this was marble dust from the statue. When Michaelangelo had finished, the governor said: "That's excellent! Now you have given more life to the face", and the people, who understood what Michaelangelo had done, shouted with joy.

This statue is one of Michaelangelo's best works.

**I. Say which statements are false or true.**

1. The famous sculptor Michaelangelo lived in France.
2. The Governor of Florence asked him to make a statue out of a large piece of marble.
3. Michaelangelo worked for six years.
4. He called the statue David.
5. When the statue was ready a large crowd of lords came.
6. The Governor of Florence came too.

## II. Choose the correct answer.

- Who stood for a long time looking at the statue?
  - a) the King
  - b) the Governor
  - c) the prince
- What didn't the governor like in the statue?
  - a) the nose
  - b) the arm
  - c) the chin
- What did the sculptor have in his hand?
  - a) some marble dust
  - b) some stone dust
  - c) some road dust
- What did he pretend?
  - a) to be changing arms
  - b) to be changing the shape of the nose
  - c) to be changing hair
- What did Michaelangelo do at the same time?
  - a) he dropped the paper
  - b) he dropped some of the marble dust
  - c) he dropped the coin
- What did the governor think?
  - a) that it was marble dust from the nose of the statue
  - b) that it was dust from the road
  - c) that it was dust from the arm of the statue

### III. Finish the sentences.

1. The governor said that David's nose
  - a) was too long.
  - b) too short.
  - c) too turned up.
2. Michaelangelo pretended he changed
  - a) the face of the statue.
  - b) the nose of tine statue.
  - c) the chin of the statue.
3. The governor thought that the sculptor
  - a) changed the nose.
  - b) cut the nose.
  - c) broke the nose.
4. He said that Michaelangelo
  - a) gave more life to the face.
  - b) gave more life to the figure.
  - c) gave more life to the eyes.

5. This statue is one of Michaelangelo's  
a) worst works.                      b) best works.                      c) untalented works.

### THE BEE

There was once a great artist in Belgium who said that his daughter should never marry anyone but an artist. But she loved a blacksmith and the blacksmith was in love with her. When she told him that her father would not allow her to marry anyone but an artist, he left his trade and studied hard in order to become a painter. He was certainly a man of great talent, as in a short time he became a good painter. One day the young painter went to the artist's studio and, finding that the artist was not at home, decided to wait for him. Nobody had seen him come into the studio. He looked round at the pictures. At last he took a brush and painted a bee on the leg of one of the figures and then stood aside to look at it. Suddenly he heard somebody open the door. He quickly put the brush down and turned to the door. The artist was not yet in the room and did not see his visitor put the brush in its place. When he came in he at once saw the bee on the leg of one of his figures: he thought that it was a real bee and tried to brush it off. When the young painter saw this he could not help smiling. The artist smiled too when he saw his mistake and said that it was a wonderful little painting. The young man told him the whole story and soon after that the young painter and the artist's daughter got married.

#### I. Say which statements are false or true.

1. In Belgium lived a great chemist.
2. He wanted his daughter to marry only the artist.
3. The girl loved a weaver.
4. The weaver didn't love her.
5. The boy began to study art.
6. He was a man of great talent.

#### II. Choose the correct answer.

1. What did the blacksmith become soon?  
a) he became a good painter                      b) he became a good sculptor                      c) he became a good mechanic
2. Where did he come one day?  
a) to the artist's house                      b) to the artist's studio                      c) to the artist's garden
3. Who was in the studio?  
a) somebody was there                      b) nobody was there                      c) the artist was there
4. What did the boy decide?  
a) he decided to wait                      b) he decided to sleep                      c) he decided to go
5. Who saw him come into the studio?  
a) everybody                      b) somebody                      c) nobody
6. What did he do with the brush?  
a) he painted a bee                      b) he painted a spot                      c) he painted the fly

#### III. Finish the sentences.

1. Suddenly he heard somebody  
a) shut the door.                      b) open the door.                      c) lock the door.
2. The artist didn't see the visitor  
a) put the brush in its place.                      b) put the brush on the table.                      c) put the brush under the chair.
3. When the artist came in he saw  
a) a fly on the head.                      b) a spot on his body.                      c) a bee on the leg.

4. He thought it was real and tried
  - a) to brush it off.
  - b) to kill it.
  - c) to smash it.
5. The old artist said it was
  - a) a bad joke.
  - b) a wonderful little painting.
  - c) a bad painting.
6. Soon the young painter
  - a) married his daughter.
  - b) left the city.
  - c) became bankrupt.

### **HE WAS AFRAID**

Mr. Smith who lived in one of the suburbs of London was on his way home from the railway station. The road was dark and lonely. He heard footsteps behind him and had an uncomfortable feeling that he was being followed. He increased his speed. The footsteps quickened, too. The man became frightened and ran down the street. The footsteps still pursued him. In desperation he jumped over the fence and, rushing into the churchyard threw himself on one of the graves.

"If he follows me here", he thought fearfully, "there can be no doubt as to his intentions".

The man behind him was following him over the fence. Visions of robbers, maniacs and the like flashed through the frightened man's brain. Quivering with fear he rose and faced the pursuer.

"What do you w-w-want?" he demanded, "wh-wh-why are you following me?"

"I say", asked the stranger, mopping the sweat from his brow, "do you always go home like this? Or are you giving yourself a special treat tonight? I'm going up to Mr. Brown's, and the man at the station told me to follow you, as you lived next door".

#### **I. Say which statements are false or true.**

1. Mr. Smith lived in the suburbs of London.
2. He was on his way to work.
3. The road was dark, and lonely.
4. He heard the song behind him.
5. He had an uncomfortable feeling that he was being followed.

#### **II. Choose the correct answer, please.**

1. What did Mr. Smith hear?
  - a) the footsteps quickened
  - b) the footsteps calmed down
  - c) the footsteps became louder.
2. What happened to Mr. Smith?
  - a) he became angry
  - b) he became frightened
  - c) he got sad
3. What pursued him?
  - a) the footsteps
  - b) the dog
  - c) the girl
4. Where did he jump over?
  - a) over the gate
  - b) over the bush
  - c) over the fence
5. Where did he throw himself?
  - a) on one of the graves
  - b) on the lawn
  - c) on the bench
6. What did the man behind him do?
  - a) was crying
  - b) was shouting
  - c) was following him

#### **III. Finish the sentences.**

1. Visions of . . . flashed through the frightened man's brain.
  - a) robbers, maniacs and the like.
  - b) ghosts and witches.
  - c) killers and assassins.
2. The man was
  - a) trembling from joy.
  - b) quivering with fear.
  - c) trembling from grief.
3. He rose and faced his
  - a) friend.
  - b) neighbour.
  - c) pursuer.
4. He asked the pursuer what
  - a) he wanted.
  - b) he did.
  - c) he threw.
5. The man said he wanted to know
  - a) the address of Mr. Brown.
  - b) the address of Mr. Blue.
  - c) the address of Mr. Green.

## **A SLAVE**

Murillo was a great painter in Spain. He painted beautiful pictures and “he had many students.

Once he came to his studio and found a very beautiful picture there. He asked his students who had painted that picture but nobody answered. Then he asked his slave Sebastian if he had seen somebody in the studio the night before. The slave did not answer. When the night came and everybody went away Sebastian began to paint. He did not think of time. Suddenly he heard a noise behind him. When he turned round he saw Murillo and his students watching him quietly.

“Sebastian”, cried Murillo, “you are a very good painter. How did you learn to paint?”

“I took my lessons from you, master”, the slave answered.

“From me? I have never given you lessons”, said Murillo.

“But you gave lessons to your students, and I heard them”, answered the slave. Murillo was a very honest man. He understood that the slave was a very gifted painter, so he gave him his freedom and began to work with his ‘slave’ who was not a slave any longer.

### **I. Say which statements are false or true.**

1. Murillo was a great painter in Germany.
2. He had many students.
3. Once he came to his studio and found a beautiful sculpture there.
4. He asked everybody but nobody knew.
5. He asked his son Sebastian about it.
6. The slave did not answer.

### **II. Choose the correct answer, please.**

1. What did Sebastian begin to do when the night came?  
a) he began to sleep      b) he began to paint      c) he began to clean the room
2. What didn't he think of?  
a) of time      b) of people      c) of master
3. What did he suddenly hear behind him?  
a) a noise      b) a whistle      c) a creak
4. Whom did he see when he turned round?  
a) slaves      b) Murillo and his students      c) police
5. What did Murillo cry?  
a) you are a bad painter      b) you are not a painter      c) you are a very good painter
6. What did Murillo ask Sebastian?  
a) who was his teacher      b) who was his mother      c) who was his friend

### **III. Finish the sentences.**

1. Sebastian said that Murillo was  
a) his teacher.      b) his advisor.      c) his tutor.
2. Murillo answered that he  
a) had been pleased.      b) had never taught him.      c) had advised him nice advice.
3. Murillo was a  
a) a very dishonest person.      b) a very simple person.      c) a very honest man.
4. He understood that his slave was  
a) a very gifted person.      b) a very clever person.      c) a very stupid person.
5. He gave his slave  
a) the freedom.      b) the money.      c) the house.
6. From that time he began to work with  
a) Raphael.      b) Sebastian.      c) John.

# LITERATURE

1. Войтенко В.В. Разговорный английский. Пособие по развитию устной речи. – М.: Абрис-пресс, 2005. – 480 с.
2. Дроздова Т.Ю., Берестова А.И. Everyday English. – СПб.: Антология, 2007. – 656 с.
3. Дроздова Т.Ю., Берестова А.И., Маилова В.Г. English Grammar: Reference and Practice. – СПб.: Антология, 2003. – 344 с.
4. Карп'юк О.Д. English study. – Тернопіль, 2003. – 228 с.
5. Тучина Н.В., Меркулова Т.К., Кузьміна В.С. Read and Speak English with Pleasure. – К.: Майстер-клас, 2007. – 304 с.
6. Ходаковська О.О. Англійська мова. Граматичний довідник. – Х.: Веста: Вид-во “Ранок”, 2008. – 432 с.
7. Virginia Evans. Successful writing. Proficiency. – Express Publishing, 1998. – 175 p.
8. Murphy Raymond. English Grammar in Use. Cambridge University Press, 1998. – 327 p.
9. Printha Ellis, Ken Wilson, James Taylor. Move Ahead. Student's Book 3. Macmillan Education, 2008. – 128 p.
10. Michael McCarthy, Felicity O'Dell. English Vocabulary in Use. Upper-intermediate&Advanced. Cambridge University Press, 1999. – 300 p.
11. Stuart Redman. English Vocabulary in Use. Pre-intermediate&Intermediate. Cambridge University Press, 1997. – 269 p.
12. John and Liz Soars. New Headway. English Course. Pre-intermediate. Student's Book. Oxford University Press, 2008. – 143 p.
13. Taylore-Knowles, Steve Laser, Pre-FCE. Student's Book. Macmillan, 2008. – 159 p.
14. Mann Malcolm, Taylore-Knowles, Steve Laser, B2-Student's Book. Updated for the received FCE. Macmillan, 2008. – 207 p.
15. Howard Williams, Deirdre, Wilson Ken. Prospects. Upper-intermediate. Macmillan, 2000. – 91 p.
16. L.G. Alexander. Longman English grammar practice (intermediate level). Addison Wesley Longman, New York, 1998. – 296 p.
17. Virginia Evans. Click on Ukraine. Culture clips. Express Publishing, 2005. – 32 p.
18. Мансі Є.О. English: Фонетика, граматика, тексти, діалоги, розмовні теми. – К.: Видавничий центр “Академія”, 2004. – 368 с. (Альма-матер)
19. English Exercises [Електронний ресурс]. – 2010. – Режим доступу: [www.englishexercises.org/](http://www.englishexercises.org/)
20. English Texts [Електронний ресурс]. – 2010. – Режим доступу: [www.englishtexts.ru/](http://www.englishtexts.ru/)
21. Native English [Електронний ресурс]. – 2010. – Режим доступу: [www.native-english.ru/exercises](http://www.native-english.ru/exercises)

# ЗМІСТ

<b>ПЕРЕДМОВА</b>	
<b>ВСТУПНИЙ ФОНЕТИКО-ОРФОЕПІЧНИЙ КУРС</b>	
1. Звуки і букви	
2. Порядок слів у реченні, наголос та інтонація	
3. Типи складів, буквосполучення, дифтонги. Способи їх прочитання	
<b>ЧАСТИНА I. РОЗМОВНІ ТЕМИ</b>	
ВСТУПНИЙ УРОК. Знайомство. Комунікативні фрази	
УРОК 1. Сімейні стосунки	
УРОК 2. Зовнішність. Характер	
УРОК 3. Будинок. Квартира	
УРОК 4. Дати. Час	
УРОК 5. Погода. Пори року	
УРОК 6. Спілкування та технічні засоби	
УРОК 7. Покупки. Магазини	
УРОК 8. Їжа	
УРОК 9. У лікаря	
УРОК 10. Хобі. Розваги	
УРОК 11. У місті	
УРОК 12. Подорож	
УРОК 13. У готелі	
УРОК 14. Свята. Традиції	
УРОК 15. Україна	
УРОК 16. Англомовні країни	
<b>ЧАСТИНА II. ТЕОРЕТИЧНА ГРАМАТИКА</b>	
Артикль	
Іменник. Множина іменника	
Прикметник. Ступені порівняння прикметників	
Займенник	
Дієслово. Допоміжні дієслова бути, мати, виконувати	
Конструкція there is / there are	
Неозначена група часів:	
	Теперішній неозначений час
	Минулий неозначений час
	Майбутній неозначений час
Тривала група часів:	
	Теперішній тривалий час
	Минулий тривалий час
	Майбутній тривалий час
Перфектна група часів:	
	Теперішній доконаний час
	Минулий доконаний час
	Майбутній доконаний час
Перфектно-тривала група часів:	
	Теперішній перфектно-тривалий час
	Минулий перфектно-тривалий час
	Майбутній перфектно-тривалий час
Пасивний стан дієслів	
Узгодження часів. Непряма мова	
Умовні речення	

Модальні дієслова та їхні еквіваленти	
<b>ЧАСТИНА ІІІ. ГРАМАТИЧНІ ТРЕНУВАЛЬНІ ВПРАВИ</b>	
Артикль	
Іменник. Множина іменника	
Прикметник. Ступені порівняння прикметників	
Займенник	
Дієслово. Допоміжні дієслова бути, мати, виконувати	
Неозначена група часів:	
Теперішній неозначений час	
Минулий неозначений час	
Майбутній неозначений час	
Тривала група часів:	
Теперішній тривалий час	
Минулий тривалий час	
Майбутній тривалий час	
Перфектна група часів:	
Теперішній доконаний час	
Минулий доконаний час	
Майбутній доконаний час	
Перфектно-тривала група часів:	
Теперішній перфектно-тривалий час	
Минулий перфектно-тривалий час	
Майбутній перфектно-тривалий час	
Пасивний стан дієслів	
Узгодження часів. Непряма мова	
Умовні речення	
Модальні дієслова та їхні еквіваленти	
<b>ДОДАТКОВЕ ЧИТАННЯ</b>	
<b>СПИСОК ВИКОРИСТАНИХ ДЖЕРЕЛ</b>	